



Boot Version 10.0 for NIC, iSCSI, and FCoE Protocols

User Manual

EMULEX CONFIDENTIAL. Copyright © 2003–2014 Emulex. All rights reserved worldwide. No part of this document may be reproduced by any means or translated to any electronic medium without the prior written consent of Emulex.

Information furnished by Emulex is believed to be accurate and reliable. However, no responsibility is assumed by Emulex for its use; or for any infringements of patents or other rights of third parties which may result from its use. No license is granted by implication or otherwise under any patent, copyright or related rights of Emulex.

Emulex, the Emulex logo, AutoPilot Installer, AutoPilot Manager, BlockGuard, Connectivity Continuum, Convergenomics, Emulex Connect, Emulex Secure, EZPilot, FibreSpy, HBAnyware, InSpeed, LightPulse, MultiPulse, OneCommand, OneConnect, One Network. One Company., SBOD, SLI, and VEngine are trademarks of Emulex. All other brand or product names referenced herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies or organizations.

Emulex provides this manual "as is" without any warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied, including but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Emulex may make improvements and changes to the product described in this manual at any time and without any notice. Emulex assumes no responsibility for its use, nor for any infringements of patents or other rights of third parties that may result. Periodic changes are made to information contained herein; although these changes will be incorporated into new editions of this manual, Emulex disclaims any undertaking to give notice of such changes.

Emulex, 3333 Susan Street

Costa Mesa, CA 92626

Note: References to OCe11100 series products also apply to OCe11100R series products.

Table of Contents

List of Figures	11
List of Tables	16
1. Introduction	17
Overview	17
Abbreviations	18
2. Configuring PXE Boot for the NIC Protocol	22
Pre-OS	22
PXE Boot Process	22
Remotely Installing with PXE for Windows Server 2008, 2008 R2, 2012, and 2012 R2	24
Remotely Installing with PXE for Linux and Citrix Servers	24
Using the PXESelect Utility	25
Navigating the PXESelect Utility	25
Running the PXESelect Utility	25
Setting Up a PXE Bootable Network	26
Personality Option	27
Configuring the Custom Personality Selection	28
Advanced Mode Support	29
Configuring Ports When Multichannel is Disabled or Not Supported	31
Configuring PXE Boot Support	31
Configuring SR-IOV	32
Configuring the PXE VLAN ID and Priority	32
Physically Identifying the Port	33
Erasing Ports and Controller Configuration	33
Configuring Universal Multichannel	34
Configuring Minimum and Maximum Bandwidth	35
Configuring LPVID	35
Configuring Multichannel for IBM Adapters	36
Multichannel Modes	37
Multichannel Configuration	37
PXE Boot Parameters Default Values	39
3. Configuring Boot from SAN for the FCoE Protocol	40
Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2	40
Configuring Boot from SAN on Windows (x86 and x64)	40

Configuring Boot from SAN on Windows (UEFI).....	41
Installing a New Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 UEFI-Aware Operating System on a UEFI-based x64 Server	41
Directing a UEFI-based Server to a Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 Operating System Image (Installed as UEFI-Aware) Already Installed on the SAN	42
GUID Partition Table	42
Installing Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 on an FC Boot Disk (x86, x64, and UEFI).....	43
Linux, Citrix, and VMware.....	44
Configuring Boot from SAN on Linux, Citrix, or VMware (x86 and x64)	44
Configuring Boot from SAN on Linux (UEFI)	44
Solaris	45
Configuring Boot from SAN on Solaris SFS (x86 and x64)	45
Determining LUNs to Select for Boot from SAN	45
Configuring Boot from SAN on Solaris SFS (SPARC)	46
Installing Solaris from a Network Image.....	46
Installing Solaris by Migrating an Image from a Local SCSI Disk	48
Booting Solaris 10 from the Network on SPARC Machines	50
4. Configuring x86/x64 Platforms for the iSCSI Protocol	53
iSCSI Overview	53
Constructing a Basic iSCSI SAN.....	53
Managing an iSCSI Session	54
Logging into an iSCSI Session.....	54
Security.....	54
CHAP Authentication	54
Configuring for the iSCSI Protocol	54
Setting Up Boot from SAN for iSCSI	54
Windows Server	55
Linux and Citrix Servers.....	55
ESXi Server	55
Booting from SAN for iSCSI MPIO	56
Windows Server	56
Linux and Citrix Servers.....	57
ESXi 5.0, 5.1, or 5.5 Server.....	58
5. Using the FCoE Boot BIOS Utility for x86 and x64 Architectures.....	60
Navigating the FCoE BIOS Utility	60
Starting the FCoE BIOS Utility	60

Enabling an Adapter to Boot from SAN.....	61
Scanning for Target Devices	62
Configuring Boot Devices	63
Configuring CEE Parameters	66
Configuring Advanced Adapter Parameters.....	67
Changing the Default AL_PA	68
Changing the PLOGI Retry Timer	70
Enabling or Disabling the Spinup Delay.....	71
Setting Auto Scan	72
Enabling or Disabling EDD 3.0.....	73
Enabling or Disabling the Start Unit Command.....	73
Enabling or Disabling the Environment Variable	74
Enabling or Disabling Auto Boot Sector.....	75
Using Multi-Path Boot from SAN.....	75
Resetting to Default Values	76
6. Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code	78
7. Configuring iSCSI Boot Support with the iSCSISelect Utility	79
Navigating the iSCSISelect Utility	79
Setting Up a Basic iSCSI Boot Configuration.....	79
Booting the System	81
8. Configuring and Managing the iSCSI Initiator with the iSCSISelect Utility	82
Configuring the iSCSI Initiator Name	82
Selecting a Controller	83
Viewing the Controller Properties.....	84
Enabling Boot Support.....	84
Enabling IPv4 Boot Target Discovery using DHCP	85
Enabling the MPIO Port	85
Configuring Network Properties.....	86
Selecting the IP Version.....	87
Configuring VLAN ID and VLAN Priority.....	87
Configuring the IP Address	88
Configuring the IPv4 Address.....	88
Configuring the IPv6 Address.....	89
Configuring a Static IPv4 Address	90
Configuring a Static IPv6 Address	91
Pinging the iSCSI Initiator.....	91

Identifying a Port	92
Erasing the Current Configuration	92
9. Configuring and Managing iSCSI Targets with the iSCSISelect Utility	93
Adding iSCSI Targets	93
Using SendTargets Discovery to Add an iSCSI Target	94
Manually Adding an iSCSI Target	96
Managing an iSCSI Target	97
Viewing Target Information	97
Editing a Target Configuration	98
Setting an ISID Value	99
Enabling CHAP Authentication	99
Pinging a Target	102
Viewing Advanced Target Properties	102
Configuring LUN Settings	103
Removing and Logging Out and In of a Configured Target	103
Booting the System	104
Discovering Targets through DHCP for iSCSI	105
Enabling DHCP Discovery Through the iSCSISelect Utility	107
10. Configuring UEFI for Ethernet	108
Overview	108
Using the Emulex NIC Configuration Utility	109
Navigating the Utility	109
Downloading the Latest Firmware and Boot Code	109
Firmware Components	109
Viewing the Adapter's Firmware and Boot Code Version	109
Downloading Firmware and Boot Code	111
Advanced Mode Support	115
Configuring Personality	116
Configuring the Controller When Multichannel is Disabled or Not Supported	119
Viewing the Configuration	120
Configuring SR-IOV	120
Saving the Current Configuration	121
Configuring Universal Multichannel	122
Viewing the Configuration	125
Configuring Minimum and Maximum Bandwidth	126
Configuring the LPVID	127
Saving the Current Configuration	128
Configuring Multichannel for IBM Adapters	128

Multichannel Modes.....	129
Multichannel Configuration.....	129
Port Management	133
Feature on Demand.....	134
Identifying a Port	135
Erasing Ports and Controller Configuration	135
UEFI NIC Diagnostics.....	137
EFI_DRIVER_DIAGNOSTICS_PROTOCOL.....	137
11. Configuring UEFI for iSCSI.....	139
Overview.....	139
Navigating the Emulex iSCSI Configuration Utility.....	139
Starting the Emulex iSCSI Configuration Utility	140
Configuring MPIO	141
Configuring Boot Support	143
Viewing the Controller Properties	144
Configuring the Network.....	145
Configuring the IP Version.....	146
Configuring an IPV4 Address	147
Automatically Assigning an IP Address through a DHCP Server	147
Manually Assigning an IP Address.....	148
Pinging the iSCSI Initiator.....	148
Configuring an IPV6 Address	149
Automatically Configure an IP Address	149
Configuring the IPv6 Address.....	150
Pinging the iSCSI Initiator.....	150
Configuring VLAN ID/Priority.....	151
Updating Firmware	152
Adding and Configuring Targets	152
Discovering and Adding Boot Targets through DHCP	152
Using SendTargets Discovery to Add an iSCSI Target	153
Manually Adding, Discovering, and Managing Boot Targets	155
Setting a Boot Target	157
Selecting an Authentication Method	158
Pinging a Target.....	159
Viewing Advanced Properties	160
Logging In or Logging Out of a Target	161
Deleting a Target	161
Configuring LUNs.....	162

iSNS Configuration	163
Enabling iSNS Discovery	164
Enabling iSNS Server Discovery via DHCP	164
Configuring the iSNS Server IP Address and TCP Port Number Manually	165
Discovering Targets Using the iSNS Server	167
Erasing the Configuration.....	168
12. Configuring UEFI for FCoE	169
Overview	169
Navigating the Emulex FCoE Configuration Utility	169
Starting the Emulex FCoE Configuration Utility	170
Updating Firmware and Boot Code	171
Enabling an Adapter to Boot from SAN.....	171
Configuring DCBX Mode	173
Configuring CEE FCF Parameters.....	174
Configuring CIN FCF Parameters	176
Scanning for Fibre Devices	177
Adding Boot Devices	177
Deleting Boot Devices	179
Changing Boot Device Order	180
Configuring Adapter Parameters	183
Changing the PLOGI Retry Timer	183
Changing the Maximum LUNs per Target.....	184
Changing Boot Target Scan Method	185
Changing Device Discovery Delay.....	187
Resetting Emulex Adapters to Default Values	188
Displaying Adapter Information	190
13. Troubleshooting	191
Troubleshooting for the NIC Protocol	191
Issues During the PXE Boot Process	191
PXE Error Codes	191
Troubleshooting for the iSCSI Protocol	194
Troubleshooting for the FcoE Protocol	197
Appendix A. Configuring iSCSI through a DHCP Server using	
Vendor-Specific Option 43	198
Overview	198
Format of Vendor-Specific Option 43	198

Description of Parameters.....	198
Example	199
Appendix B. Example for Installing and Configuring Linux or Citrix for PXE Boot and UEFI Boot.....	200
Linux and Citrix PXE Server Remote Installation Procedure	200
PXE Server	201
NFS Server Configuration Script	201
TFTP Server Setup	202
DHCP Server Configuration	203
PXE Boot Server Configuration	204
Copying Files to the TFTP Server with the Graphical Version of the Network Booting Tool	204
Configuring the Host	206
Enabling the PXE Client with a PXE-enabled Adapter	207
Appendix C. Example for Configuring and Booting UEFI NIC.....	208
UEFI NIC Server Configuration Script for SLES11 SPx	208
NFS Server Configuration Script	209
DHCP Server Configuration	210
TFTP Server Setup	211
UEFI NIC Server Configuration Script for RHEL 6.x.....	211
Setup Information.....	211
NFS Configuration.....	211
TFTP Configuration	212
PXE Configuration.....	213
Configuring DHCP	214
Configuring the IBM HS22 Blade with e-Raptor MEZZ	215
Appendix D. Example for Installing and Booting UEFI FCoE.....	223
Appendix E. Loading and Unloading UEFIBoot from the UEFI Shell	225
Loading UEFIBoot from the UEFI Shell	225
Unloading UEFIBoot from the UEFI Shell	225
Appendix F. Dell UEFI	226
Accessing the Main Configuration Page	226
Main Configuration Page	227
Firmware Image Properties Page	229
FCoE Capabilities Page	230
Data Center Bridge (DCB) Settings Page	231
FCoE Configuration Page.....	232

FCoE General Parameters Page	233
NIC Configuration Page	235
iSCSI Configuration Page	237
iSCSI General Parameters Page	238
iSCSI Initiator Parameters Page	240
iSCSI First Target Parameters Page	241
iSCSI Second Target Parameters Page	243
iSCSI Secondary Device Parameters Page	244
Device Level Configuration Page	245
NIC Partitioning Configuration Page	246
Global Bandwidth Allocation Page	247
Partition Configuration Page	248
Appendix G. Configuring PXE Boot for the NIC Protocol on Dell Systems	250
Running the PXESelect Utility	250
Navigating the PXESelect Utility	250
Setting Up a PXE Bootable Network	251
Configuring Ports When NPar Support is Disabled	252
Configuring the Hide Setup Prompt	253
Configuring the Banner Message Timeout	253
Setting the Configured Port Speed	253
Configuring PXE Boot Support	253
Configuring the Boot Retry Count	254
Configuring Wake on LAN	254
Configuring Flow Control	254
Configuring SR-IOV	254
Configuring the PXE VLAN ID and Priority	255
Physically Identifying the Port	255
Erasing Ports and Controller Configuration	256
Configuring NPar Support	256
Selecting the Protocol	258
Configuring Minimum and Maximum Bandwidth	259
PXE Boot Parameters Default Values	259

List of Figures

Figure 2-1	PXE Boot Process	23
Figure 2-2	Controller Selection Menu	26
Figure 2-3	Controller Configuration Menu	26
Figure 2-4	Port Selection Menu	27
Figure 2-5	Controller Configuration Menu - Personality Selection	28
Figure 2-6	Custom Personality Selection on Multichannel Configuration Screen	29
Figure 2-7	Controller Configuration Menu - Advanced Mode Support Selection	30
Figure 2-8	Port Configuration Screen	31
Figure 2-9	Configure PXE VLAN ID/Priority Menu	32
Figure 2-10	Port Identification Screen	33
Figure 2-11	MultiChannel Configuration Screen	34
Figure 2-12	Controller Configuration Screen - IBM Adapters	36
Figure 2-13	IBM Virtual Fabric Mode Configuration Screen	38
Figure 5-1	Emulex Adapter Listing	61
Figure 5-2	Main Configuration Menu	61
Figure 5-3	BIOS Status	62
Figure 5-4	Devices Present on the Adapter	62
Figure 5-5	List of Saved Boot Devices Screen	63
Figure 5-6	Device Selection List Example Screen	64
Figure 5-7	LUN Listing Screen	64
Figure 5-8	Boot Device Selected	65
Figure 5-9	Boot Devices Menu	65
Figure 5-10	Primary Boot Device Set Up Screen	66
Figure 5-11	FCF Listing	66
Figure 5-12	Save Edited Boot Record Dialog Box	67
Figure 5-13	Advanced Adapter Configuration Menu	68
Figure 5-14	Change Default ALPA Screen	68
Figure 5-15	Change the PLOGI Retry Timer Screen	70
Figure 5-16	Enable or Disable Spinup Delay Screen	71
Figure 5-17	Set Auto Scan Menu	72
Figure 5-18	Enable or Disable EDD 3.0 Screen	73
Figure 5-19	Enable or Disable Start Unit Command Screen	74
Figure 5-20	Enable or Disable Environment Variable Screen	74
Figure 5-21	Enable or Disable Auto Boot Sector Format Screen	75
Figure 5-22	Reset Adapter Configuration to Defaults Screen	77
Figure 7-1	iSCSI Initiator Configuration Menu	80
Figure 7-2	Controller Selection Menu	80
Figure 7-3	Controller Configuration Menu	80
Figure 7-4	Controller Properties Screen	80

Figure 7-5	Network Configuration Screen	81
Figure 8-1	iSCSI Initiator Configuration Screen	82
Figure 8-2	Controller Selection Menu	83
Figure 8-3	Controller Configuration Menu	83
Figure 8-4	Controller Properties Screen	84
Figure 8-5	Controller Properties Screen with Boot Support Drop-down Menu	84
Figure 8-6	Controller Properties Screen with Discover IPv4 Boot Target via DHCP Drop-down Menu	85
Figure 8-7	Controller Properties Screen with MPIO Port Drop-down Menu	86
Figure 8-8	Network Configuration Screen	86
Figure 8-9	Network Configuration Screen with IP Version Drop-down Menu	87
Figure 8-10	Configure VLAN ID/Priority Screen	87
Figure 8-11	Configure IPv4 Address Screen	88
Figure 8-12	DHCP IP Address Dialog Box	89
Figure 8-13	Configure IPv6 Address Screen	89
Figure 8-14	Static IP Address Dialog Box for IPv4	90
Figure 8-15	Static IP Address Dialog Box for IPv6	91
Figure 8-16	Successful Ping Screen	91
Figure 8-17	Port Identification Screen	92
Figure 9-1	Controller Configuration Menu	94
Figure 9-2	Add/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box	94
Figure 9-3	Targets Discovered via SendTargets Screen	95
Figure 9-4	iSCSI Target Configuration Screen	96
Figure 9-5	iSCSI Target Configuration Information	97
Figure 9-6	Edit/Ping iSCSI Target Dialog Box	98
Figure 9-7	One-way Chap Configuration Dialog Box	100
Figure 9-8	Mutual CHAP Configuration Dialog Box	101
Figure 9-9	Successful Ping Screen	102
Figure 9-10	Advanced Target Properties Screen	102
Figure 9-11	LUN Configuration Menu	103
Figure 9-12	DHCP Server Screen	105
Figure 9-13	DHCP Server Scope Options	106
Figure 10-1	Emulex NIC Configuration Utility Network Screen	110
Figure 10-2	Emulex NIC Selection Screen	110
Figure 10-3	UEFI Shell with Firmware and Boot Code File	111
Figure 10-4	Emulex Flash Update Utility	112
Figure 10-5	Emulex Flash Update Utility with Directory Name Dialog Box	112
Figure 10-6	Emulex Flash Update Utility with Flash File Name Dialog Box	113
Figure 10-7	Emulex Flash Update Utility, Flash Updating	114
Figure 10-8	Advanced Mode Dialog Box	116
Figure 10-9	Personality Selection Dialog Box	117
Figure 10-10	Custom Personality Selection Dialog Box	118

Figure 10-11	Controller Configuration Screen	119
Figure 10-12	View Configuration Screen.....	120
Figure 10-13	Configure SRIOV Screen	121
Figure 10-14	Multichannel Mode	123
Figure 10-15	Controller Configuration Screen	124
Figure 10-16	Multichannel Configuration for Function 0 Screen	125
Figure 10-17	Configure Bandwidth Screen	126
Figure 10-18	Configure LPVID Screen	127
Figure 10-19	Multichannel Mode Dialog Box	128
Figure 10-20	IBM Virtual Fabric Mode Controller Configuration Screen	130
Figure 10-21	IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode Controller Configuration Screen	131
Figure 10-22	Switch Independent Mode Controller Configuration Screen	132
Figure 10-23	Port Management Screen	133
Figure 10-24	Feature On Demand Screen.....	134
Figure 10-25	Erase Configuration Screen	136
Figure 11-1	Storage Screen.....	140
Figure 11-2	Controller Configuration Menu Screen	141
Figure 11-3	Controller Configuration Menu Screen with MPIO Configuration Setting Highlighted	142
Figure 11-4	Controller Configuration Menu Screen with Boot Support Setting Highlighted	143
Figure 11-5	Controller Properties Screen	144
Figure 11-6	Network Configuration Screen	145
Figure 11-7	Network Configuration Menu Screen with IP Version Setting Highlighted	146
Figure 11-8	Configure IPV4 Address Screen.....	147
Figure 11-9	Configure Static IP Address Screen	148
Figure 11-10	Configure IPV6 Address Screen.....	149
Figure 11-11	Configure IPV6 Address Settings Screen	150
Figure 11-12	Configure VLAN/ID Priority Dialog Box.....	151
Figure 11-13	iSCSI Target Configuration Screen	153
Figure 11-14	Discovered Targets Screen.....	155
Figure 11-15	Add/Ping iSCSI Target Screen	156
Figure 11-16	Boot Target Option on the Edit/Ping Target Screen	157
Figure 11-17	Authentication Method Option on the Edit/Ping Target Screen	158
Figure 11-18	Edit/Ping Target Screen.....	159
Figure 11-19	Successful Target Ping	160
Figure 11-20	Advanced iSCSI Target Information Screen.....	161
Figure 11-21	LUN Configuration Screen.....	162
Figure 11-22	iSCSI Target Configuration Screen	163
Figure 11-23	iSNS Configuration Screen	163
Figure 11-24	iSNS Discovery Mode Screen	164

Figure 11-25	iSNS Server Discovery via DHCP Screen	165
Figure 11-26	iSNS Server IP Screen	166
Figure 11-27	Available Servers Screen	166
Figure 11-28	iSNS Server Options Screen	167
Figure 11-29	Erase Configuration Screen	168
Figure 12-1	Exiting the EFI Shell	170
Figure 12-2	Device Manager Screen.....	170
Figure 12-3	Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu	171
Figure 12-4	Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu - Network Boot Options Menu	172
Figure 12-5	Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu - DCBX Menu	173
Figure 12-6	CEE Record Selection List.....	174
Figure 12-7	CEE FCF Record Information.....	175
Figure 12-8	CIN FCF Record Information	176
Figure 12-9	SAN Discovery Targets List.....	178
Figure 12-10	LUN Listing	178
Figure 12-11	Commit/Discard Change	179
Figure 12-12	Delete Boot Device Screen	180
Figure 12-13	Change Boot Device Order Screen	181
Figure 12-14	Boot Device Order Screen.....	181
Figure 12-15	Change Boot Device Order Screen	182
Figure 12-16	Change Boot Device Order Screen with Revised Boot Order	182
Figure 12-17	Change Boot Device Order	183
Figure 12-18	PLOGI Retry Timer	184
Figure 12-19	Configure HBA Parameters - Maximum LUNs/Target Field	185
Figure 12-20	Configure HBA Parameters - Boot Target Scan Method Menu	186
Figure 12-21	Configure HBA Parameters - Delay Device Discovery	187
Figure 12-22	Set Adapter Defaults.....	189
Figure 12-23	Controller Information	190
Figure B-1	Network Installation and Diskless Environment Window	204
Figure B-2	Configure Network Installations Window	205
Figure B-3	Network Installation Dialog Window	205
Figure B-4	Network Installation and Diskless Environment Window with IP Address	206
Figure B-5	Edit Dialog Box	206
Figure B-6	Enabling Network Boot	207
Figure C-1	System Configuration and Boot Management Screen	215
Figure C-2	Boot Manager Screen	216
Figure C-3	File Explorer Screen	217
Figure C-4	ELILO Boot Message	217
Figure C-5	Language Selection Menu	218
Figure C-6	Main Menu	218
Figure C-7	Expert Menu.....	219

Figure C-8	Kernel Modules (Hardware Drivers) Menu	219
Figure C-9	Driver Update Medium Selection Listing.....	220
Figure C-10	Driver Update List Dialog Box	220
Figure C-11	Source Medium Selection Menu	220
Figure C-12	Network Protocol Selection Menu	221
Figure C-13	Network Device Selection Listing.....	221
Figure C-14	NFS Server IP Address Dialog Box	221
Figure C-15	Server Directory Dialog Box	222
Figure C-16	Starting Script	222
Figure C-17	Driver Update Confirmation	222
Figure D-1	Partitions Tab.....	223
Figure D-2	UEFI FCoE Start Options.....	224
Figure E-1	Driver Listing.....	225
Figure F-1	Device Settings Page.....	226
Figure F-2	Main Configuration Page	227
Figure F-3	Firmware Image Properties Page	229
Figure F-4	FCoE Capabilities Page	230
Figure F-5	Data Center Bridge (DCB) Settings Page	231
Figure F-6	FCoE Configuration Page	232
Figure F-7	FCoE General Parameters Page	233
Figure F-8	NIC Configuration Page	235
Figure F-9	iSCSI Configuration Page	237
Figure F-10	iSCSI General Parameters Page	238
Figure F-11	iSCSI Initiator Parameters Page	240
Figure F-12	iSCSI First Target Parameters Page	241
Figure F-13	iSCSI Second Target Parameters Page	243
Figure F-14	iSCSI Secondary Device Parameters Page	244
Figure F-15	Device Level Configuration Page	245
Figure F-16	NIC Partitioning Configuration Page	246
Figure F-17	Global Bandwidth Allocation Page	247
Figure F-18	Partition Configuration Page	248
Figure G-1	Controller Selection Menu	251
Figure G-2	Controller Configuration Menu	251
Figure G-3	Port Selection Menu	251
Figure G-4	Port Configuration Screen	252
Figure G-5	Configure PXE VLAN ID/Priority Menu.....	255
Figure G-6	Port Identification Screen	255
Figure G-7	NPar Configuration Screen.....	257
Figure G-8	NPar Configuration Menu - Protocol Selection.....	258

List of Tables

Table 2-1	Advanced Mode Capabilities (by Operating System)	30
Table 2-2	PXE Boot Parameter Default Values	39
Table 5-1	Valid AL_PA Values	69
Table 5-2	Default Adapter Boot Parameter Values	76
Table 6-1	Utilities that Install, Update, and Enable Boot Code	78
Table 10-1	Advanced Mode Capabilities (by Operating System)	115
Table 12-1	Adapter Default Values	188
Table 13-1	PXE Error Codes	191
Table 13-2	Troubleshooting the iSCSISelect Utility	194
Table 13-3	Troubleshooting the FCoE Protocol	197
Table F-1	Main Configuration Page Menu Options	227
Table F-2	Firmware Image Properties Page Menu Options	229
Table F-3	FCoE Capabilities Page Menu Options	230
Table F-4	DCB Settings Page Menu Options	231
Table F-5	FCoE Configuration Page Menu Options	232
Table F-6	FCoE General Parameters Page Menu Options	233
Table F-7	NIC Configuration Page Menu Options	235
Table F-8	iSCSI Configuration Page Menu Options	237
Table F-9	iSCSI General Parameters Page Menu Options	238
Table F-10	iSCSI Initiator Parameters Page Menu Options	240
Table F-11	iSCSI First Target Parameters Page Menu Options	241
Table F-12	iSCSI Second Target Parameters Page Menu Options	243
Table F-13	iSCSI Secondary Device Parameters Page Menu Options	244
Table F-14	Device Level Configuration Page Menu Options	245
Table F-15	NIC Partitioning Configuration Page Menu Options	246
Table F-16	Global Bandwidth Allocation Page Menu Options	247
Table F-17	Partition Configuration Page Menu Options	248
Table G-1	PXE Boot Parameter Default Values	259

1. Introduction

Overview

This manual describes installing, enabling, and configuring boot code for Emulex[®] network interface card (NIC), Internet Small Computer System Interface (iSCSI), and Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) adapters. This manual also describes the Emulex boot from SAN implementation and its operation with distinct hardware and operating system requirements.

Boot from SAN is the process of booting a server directly from a disk operating system image located on a storage area network (SAN) by way of Emulex adapters using Emulex boot code. When booting from SAN, the storage device is typically identified by its world wide port name (WWPN) and a logical unit number (LUN). By extending the server system boot basic input/output system (BIOS), boot from SAN functionality is provided by the boot BIOS contained on an Emulex adapter in the server. When properly configured, the adapter then permanently directs the server to boot from a logical unit (disk) on the SAN as if it were a local disk.

Emulex provides the following types of boot code:

- Preboot eXecution Environment (PXE) boot for NIC adapters in x86 and x64 systems
- x86 BootBIOS for FCoE adapters in x86 and x64 systems
- iSCSI boot for iSCSI adapters in x86 and x64 systems
- UEFIBoot for NIC, iSCSI, and FCoE adapters in x64 systems. This provides system boot capability through the use of the UEFI (Unified Extensible Firmware Interface) Shell. It also functions on UEFI 2.x-based platforms through the HII (Human Interface Infrastructure) interface.
- OpenBoot for FCoE adapters in Sun SPARC systems (OpenBoot is also called FCode)

Note: Emulex drivers support multipath boot configurations. See your storage vendor's documentation for information on configuring multipath booting.

The Emulex boot code and the following utilities provide a variety of capabilities:

- Boot from SAN across the different networking protocols and operating systems
- UEFI configuration using the Emulex NIC, FCoE, and iSCSI Configuration Utilities
- PXESelect Utility
 - Configuring the port and controller
 - Configuring multichannel support, personality options, and advanced mode support
- FCoE Boot BIOS Utility
 - Scanning for target devices

- Configuring boot devices and advanced adapter parameters
- iSCSISelect Utility
 - Setting up a basic configuration
 - Configuring and managing iSCSI initiators and targets

The boot code is distributed in the same image used to flash the firmware. Several methods are available for flashing the firmware and boot code image. See the documentation accompanying each utility for additional information on the flash procedure.

Abbreviations

ACL	Access Control List
AL_PA	Arbitrated Loop Physical Address
API	application programming interface
ARP	Address Resolution Protocol
BBS	BIOS Boot Specification
BFS	byte file system
BIOS	basic input/output system
BOFM	Blade Open Firmware Management Protocol
CEE	Converged Enhanced Ethernet
CHAP	Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol
CIN	Cisco-Intel-Nuova
CLI	command line interface
DCB	Data Center Bridging
DCBX	Data Center Bridging Exchange Protocol
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DID	device ID
DMA	direct memory access
DNS	Domain Name System
EDD	Enhanced Disk Device
EFI	Extensible Firmware Interface
FC	Fibre Channel
FC-AL	Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop
FCF	FC Forwarder
FCoE	Fibre Channel over Ethernet
FL_Port	fabric loop port
FMP	Firmware Management Protocol
FoD	Feature on Demand

FTP	File Transfer Protocol
FUI	FoD Unique Identifier
Gb/s	gigabits per second
GPT	GUID partition table
GUI	graphic user interface
GUID	Globally Unique Identifier
HBA	host bus adapter
HII	Human Interface Infrastructure
HTTP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
INTx	PCIe legacy interrupts, where “x” is variable
I/O	input/output
IOCTL	input/output control
IP	internet protocol
IQN	iSCSI qualified name
iSCSI	Internet Small Computer System Interface
JBOD	just a bunch of disks
KB	1024 bytes (Kilobyte or Kibibyte)
LACP	Link Aggregation Control Protocol
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
LED	light-emitting diode
LOM	LAN on motherboard
LPVID	logical port VLAN ID
LUN	logical unit number
MAC	media access control
MBR	master boot record
MPIO	multipath I/O
MSI	message signaled interrupts
MSI-X	message signaled interrupts - extended
MTU	maximum transmission unit
NBP	network bootstrap program
NIC	network interface card (or controller)
NIS/NIS+	Network Information Service/Network Information Service Plus
NIV	Network Interface Virtualization
NLB	network loopback
NPAR	NIC partitioning
NPIV	N_Port ID virtualization

NVRAM	non-volatile random-access memory
OCM	OneCommand Manager
OEM	original equipment manufacturer
OS	operating system
PCI	Peripheral Component Interconnect
PCIe	Peripheral Component Interconnect Express
PDU	protocol data unit
PF	physical function
PLOGI	port login
POST	power on self test
PXE	Preboot eXecution Environment
RAID	redundant array of independent disks
RHEL	Red Hat Enterprise Linux
RIS	Remote Installation Services
ROM	read-only memory
RPM	resource package manager
RSS	receive side scaling
SAN	storage area network
SCSI	Small Computer System Interface
SLES	SUSE Linux Enterprise Server
SLI	Service Level Interface
SNP	Simple Network Protocol
SR-IOV	single root I/O virtualization
SVID	service VLAN ID
TB	terabyte
TCP	transmission control protocol
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol
UCM	Universal Configuration Manager
UCNA	universal converged network adapter
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UFP	Unified Fabric Protocol
UEFI	Unified Extensible Firmware Interface
UMC	universal multichannel
UNDI	Universal Network Device Interface
USB	Universal Serial Bus
VF	virtual function
VLAN	virtual local area network

VM	virtual machine
VMQ	virtual machine queue
vNIC	virtual NIC
WDS	Windows Deployment Services
WWN	world wide name
WWNN	world wide node name
WWPN	world wide port name
<i>x</i>	Used to designate a variable. For example, SP <i>x</i> includes SP1, SP2, etc.
ZB	zettabyte

2. Configuring PXE Boot for the NIC Protocol

This section describes using and configuring PXE to boot computers using a network interface independent of available data storage devices (such as hard disks) or installed operating systems.

The PXE protocol is a combination of DHCP and TFTP with subtle modifications to both. DHCP locates the appropriate boot server or servers, and TFTP downloads the initial bootstrap program and additional files.

Network booting enables you to perform the following tasks:

- Boot diskless systems such as thin clients and dedicated systems.
- Deploy software and operating systems for your systems.
- Automate system maintenance, such as backups.
- Automate system checking, such as virus scanning.
- Ensure a system is secure.

Pre-OS

PXE can be used in a “pre-OS” environment. Pre-OS is the process of loading a small operating environment to perform a client management task before loading the final operating system from the local hard drive. For example, with a pre-OS you can scan the hard drive for viruses. This guarantees that the client is not infected before it starts. The WDS uses this to install operating systems on local disks or BFS disks.

PXE Boot Process

Once PXE Boot is enabled in the system UEFI/BIOS, the PXE client can boot up and start up the PXE boot ROM. This is the boot code physically located on the NIC adapter.

Note: To enable or disable PXE Boot, it must be enabled or disabled in the system UEFI/BIOS; see the documentation that accompanied the server for more information.

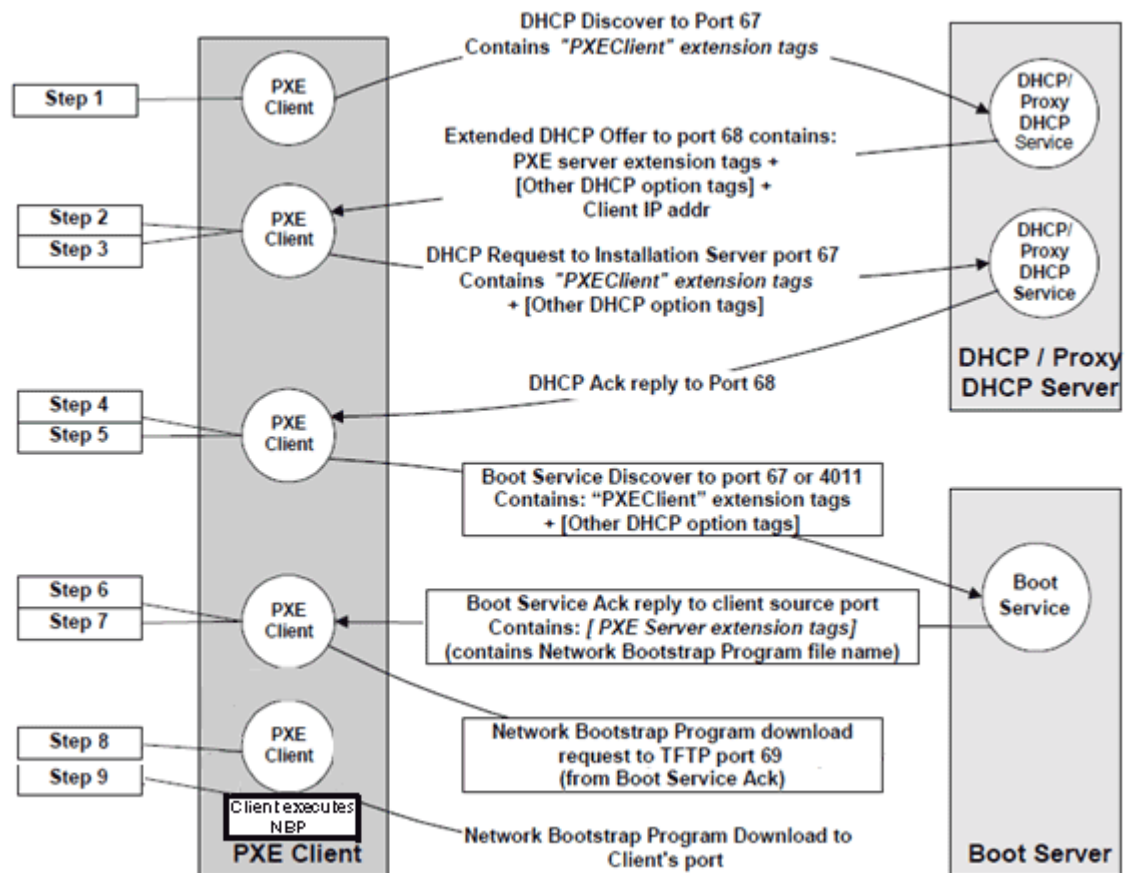


Figure 2-1 PXE Boot Process

Figure 2-1 shows the boot process.

1. The PXE boot ROM sends a DHCP request extended with PXE specific options (step 1 in the figure).
2. The DHCP responses contain the DHCP options (DHCPOFFERS) that include the NBP filename and boot server lists (steps 2 through 5).
3. The PXE client attempts to download the specified NBP over TFTP from one of the specified boot servers (steps 6 and 7).
4. The PXE client executes the downloaded NBP (steps 8 and 9).

Note: If any of these steps fail, the boot process typically continues using the next available device in the boot sequence, depending on the system configuration and boot order.

Remotely Installing with PXE for Windows Server 2008, 2008 R2, 2012, and 2012 R2

For remote installation with PXE, a network driver for the Emulex adapter must be part of the client's installation image on the server. The current versions of Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2 do not include network drivers for the Emulex adapter; however, Windows Server 2012 and 2012 R2 include the network driver for the Emulex adapter.

To add the image and installation using the driver with the Remote Installation Service Setup, select:

Start Menu > Programs > Administrative Tools Remote Installation Services Setup

(For more information, refer to *Microsoft Article ID Q246184 - How to Add Third-Party OEM Network Adapters to RIS Installations*.)

In addition to the network driver for the Emulex adapter, you must configure the following services to use PXE for remote installations:

- DHCP server
- Remote Installation Services
- Windows Deployment Services

Microsoft provides extensive documentation on deploying its operating systems for remote installations, and different setups may be required depending on your individual implementation. Microsoft provides step-by-step guides for its Windows Deployment Services for configuring your server, adding images, and installing an operating system. It also includes instructions for more advanced tasks like creating multicast transmissions, creating custom images, and performing an unattended installation.

For detailed information on deploying and managing remote installations on Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2, see the Microsoft website and visit Microsoft TechNet. Search on the bulleted terms above to access Microsoft's wide-ranging documentation on these subjects.

Remotely Installing with PXE for Linux and Citrix Servers

Linux allows for PXE installation over a network using the NFS, TFTP, or HTTP protocols. If the system to be installed contains an Emulex NIC or adapter with PXE Boot support, it can be configured to boot from files on another networked system rather than local media.

The Linux distributions provide extensive documentation on deploying and managing remote installations of the Linux operating system via PXE. See your appropriate distribution's documentation for instructions on how to deploy a PXE installation over your network.

For remote installation with PXE, a network driver for the Emulex adapter must be part of the client's installation image on the server. Your current Linux distribution may or may not include network drivers for Emulex adapters. If they do, the driver may need to be added to your operating system's installation image, or added during installation. See your appropriate distribution's documentation for instructions on how to add drivers during installation.

Using the PXESelect Utility

Note: If you are using Dell adapters, refer to appendix G., "Configuring PXE Boot for the NIC Protocol on Dell Systems," on page 250 for information on using the PXESelect utility.

Navigating the PXESelect Utility

Use the following methods to navigate the PXESelect utility:

- Press the up/down arrows on your keyboard to move through and select menu options or configuration fields. When multiple adapters are listed, use the up/down arrows to scroll to the additional adapters.
- Press <Tab> to move to the next field or to select a row in a configuration screen. Use <Shift> <Tab> to move to the previous field.
- Press <Enter> to accept a selection, select a menu option, or to change a configuration default.
- Press <Esc> to return to the previous menu or page, cancel a selection or dialog box, or exit the utility.

Running the PXESelect Utility

To run the PXESelect utility, start or restart your computer. When prompted, hold down <Ctrl> and press <P>. If you are running the PXESelect utility with multiple controllers, all your controllers are displayed when you start the utility. For example:

```
Press <Ctrl><P> for PXESelect(TM)Utility
```

```
Controller#0 Port#0 Base 0xFCE60000 at Bus:05 Dev:00 Fun:00
```

```
Controller#0 Port#1 Base 0xFCEA0000 at Bus:05 Dev:00 Fun:01
```

```
Controller#1 Port#0 Base 0xFC920000 at Bus:01 Dev:00 Fun:00
```

```
Controller#1 Port#1 Base 0xFC960000 at Bus:01 Dev:00 Fun:01
```

```
- Initializing ...Done.
```

The PXE Configuration menu appears after the boot BIOS initializes to begin your PXE configuration.

Note: A UEFI-capable system typically does not display the prompt for running the PXESelect utility unless it is configured for legacy booting. See your system configuration manual for information on performing a legacy boot. All configuration that can be performed in the PXESelect utility can instead be

performed in the UEFI configuration utility. See chapter 10., “Configuring UEFI for Ethernet,” on page 108 for more information.

Setting Up a PXE Bootable Network

After the PXE boot BIOS initializes, you can use the PXESelect utility to set up a PXE bootable network by configuring your controllers.

To configure controllers for PXE boot:

1. At the Controller Selection Menu, use the <Tab> key to select the controller you want to configure and press <Enter>.



Figure 2-2 Controller Selection Menu

Note: The Controller Selection Menu only appears if there are two or more adapters connected.

The Controller Configuration menu appears.

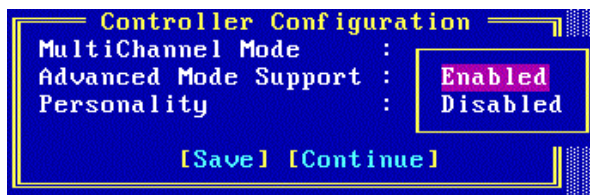


Figure 2-3 Controller Configuration Menu

Depending on the adapter, one or more of the following options will be displayed:

- MultiChannel Mode – when multichannel is enabled, you can access up to eight virtual network interfaces.
- For additional information on Multichannel Mode, see “Configuring Universal Multichannel” on page 34.

Note: If you are using an IBM adapter, see “Configuring Multichannel for IBM Adapters” on page 36 for additional information on Multichannel Mode.

Note: A reboot will occur when you exit the PXESelect utility if the Multichannel Mode has changed since the last boot.

- Advanced Mode Support – Advanced Mode support is enabled by default on OCe11100-series and OCe14000-series 2-port and 4-port controllers and the LPe16202/OCe15100 converged fabric adapter (CFA). Advanced Mode support enables you to run Advanced Mode-aware drivers that provide advanced capabilities. For additional information on configuring Advanced Mode, see “Advanced Mode Support” on page 29.

Note: On 4-port controllers, the Advanced Mode setting is not provided in the PXESelect utility.

- **Personality** – This option specifies a list of available protocols that can be configured on an adapter. For additional information on adapter personality, see “Personality Option” on page 27.

Note: Changing the Personality setting requires a reboot before the change will take effect. A reboot will occur when you exit the PXESelect utility if the Personality setting has changed since the last boot.

2. Once you have set the options in the Controller Configuration menu, select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.
3. To proceed, select **Continue** and press **<Enter>**.
The Port Selection Menu appears.
4. Select the port you want to configure and press **<Enter>**.

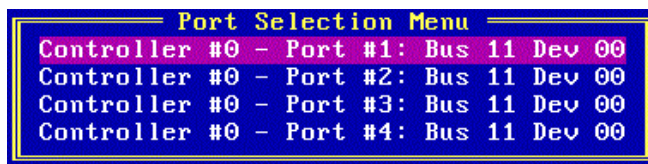


Figure 2-4 Port Selection Menu

Note: The Port Selection Menu only appears if there are two or more ports connected.

Depending on your installed adapter and if Multichannel Mode is enabled, proceed to the following sections:

- If Multichannel Mode is disabled, or it is not supported, refer to “Configuring Ports When Multichannel is Disabled or Not Supported” on page 31 for additional configuration information.
- If Multichannel Mode is enabled, refer to “Configuring Universal Multichannel” on page 34 for additional configuration information.
- If Multichannel Mode is enabled and you are using IBM adapters, refer to “Configuring Multichannel for IBM Adapters” on page 36 for additional configuration information.

Personality Option

The “personality” reflects the protocol, or protocols, of the adapter. This option specifies a list of available protocols that can be configured on an adapter. Depending on the personalities for which the adapter is licensed, one of the following selections appears:

- NIC
- iSCSI
- FCoE
- Custom

The menu only displays the available personalities, including both free and licensed personalities.

The NIC personality implies that all the enabled functions provide NIC/TOE functionality.

iSCSI and FCoE personalities are enabled on one function per adapter port and include NIC functionality on the other enabled functions. There can be only one storage protocol on each port.

The Custom personality allows you to select the protocol type for each function (0-7). iSCSI and FCoE personalities may only be enabled on one function per adapter port.

Note: There cannot be two iSCSI functions and two FCoE functions on a single port.

To select the personality of the adapter:

1. From the Controller Configuration menu, use the <Tab> key to select **Personality** and a drop-down menu appears.

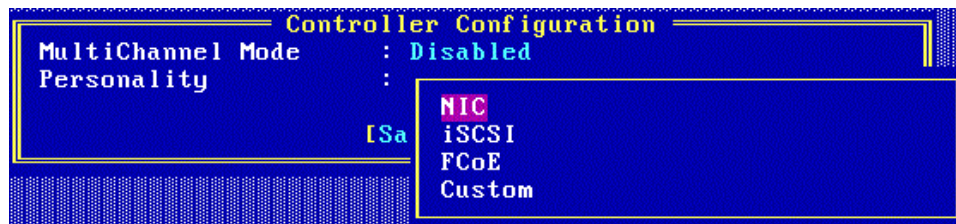


Figure 2-5 Controller Configuration Menu - Personality Selection

2. From the drop-down menu, select **NIC**, **iSCSI**, **FCoE**, or **Custom** and press <Enter>.
3. Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

Note: Changing the Personality setting requires a reboot before the change will take effect. A reboot will occur when you exit the PXESelect utility if the Personality setting has changed since the last boot.

Configuring the Custom Personality Selection

The Custom personality allows you to select the protocol type for each function (0-7). iSCSI and FCoE personalities may only be enabled on one function per adapter port.

Note: There cannot be two iSCSI functions and two FCoE functions on a single port.

To select the Custom personality:

1. From the Controller Configuration menu, use the <Tab> key to select **Personality** and a drop-down menu appears.
2. From the drop-down menu, select **Custom** and press <Enter>.

- When multichannel is enabled, on the Multichannel Configuration screen, select the specific function and press <Enter>. A pop-up menu is displayed.

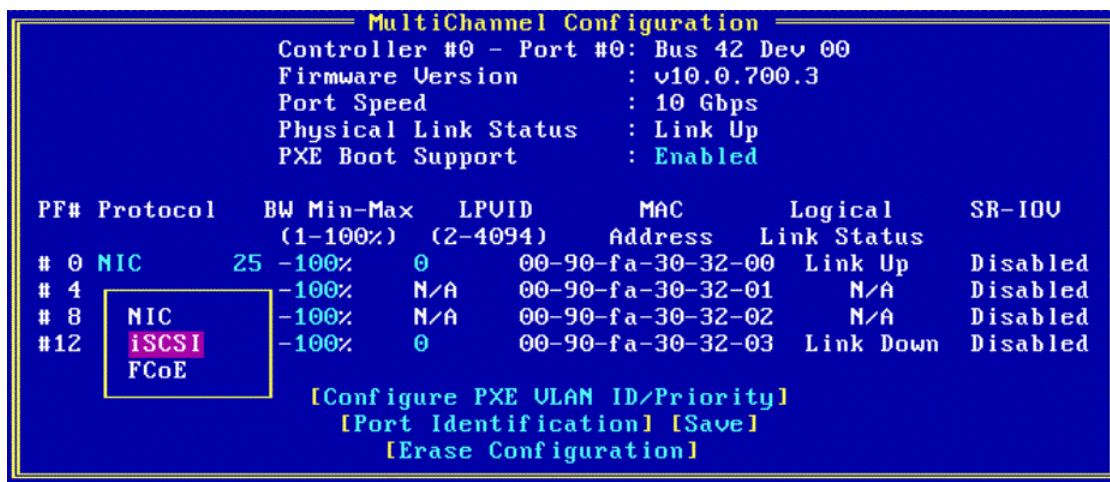


Figure 2-6 Custom Personality Selection on Multichannel Configuration Screen

Note: When multichannel is disabled, on the Port Configuration screen, select the specific function and press <Enter>. A pop-up menu is displayed.

- Select the desired personality for the appropriate function from the drop-down menu and press <Enter>.

As mentioned previously for the Custom personality, iSCSI and FCoE personalities may only be enabled on one function per adapter port.

- Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

Note: Changing the Personality setting requires a reboot before the change will take effect. A reboot will occur when you exit the PXESelect utility if the Personality setting has changed since the last boot.

Advanced Mode Support

Advanced Mode is a driver compatibility option. With Advanced Mode enabled, you can run Advanced Mode-aware drivers that provide advanced capabilities as listed in Table 2-1. With Advanced mode disabled, you can run older legacy inbox drivers that are not Advanced Mode-aware with the latest firmware versions.

Note: Advanced Mode support is enabled by default on OCe11100-series and OCe14000-series 2-port and 4-port controllers and the LPe16202/OCe15100 CFA. On 4-port controllers, the Advanced Mode setting is not provided in the PXESelect/HII utilities. The Advanced Mode setting on these platforms is implicitly enabled and Advanced Mode-aware drivers must be installed. Compatibility with legacy drivers requires that Advanced Mode support be disabled on 2-port controllers.

Note: Advanced Mode is not supported on OCe10100-series controllers.

Table 2-1 Advanced Mode Capabilities (by Operating System)

Operating System	Advanced Mode Enabled	Advanced Mode Disabled (Legacy Mode)
Windows	16 RSS queues Note: Only supported on Windows Server 2008 R2, 2012, and 2012 R2. Remains four queues for earlier Windows versions.	4 RSS Queues
	VMQ lookahead split Note: VMQs are only supported on Windows 2008 R2 and later versions.	Lookahead split is silently ignored. There may be a small performance penalty for VMQs.
Linux and Citrix	16 RSS Queues	4 RSS Queues
	VFs/PFs can be increased up to 30	
VMware ESXi	For both 1500 and 9000 MTU: 16 NetQueues/PFs in non-VFA 4 NetQueues/PFs in VFA	1500 MTU - 8 NetQueues/PFs in non-VFA and 4 NetQueues/PFs in VFA. 9000 MTU - 4 NetQueues/PFs in both VFA and non-VFA

To configure Advanced Mode support:

1. From the Controller Configuration menu, use the <Tab> key to select **Advanced Mode Support** and a drop-down menu appears.

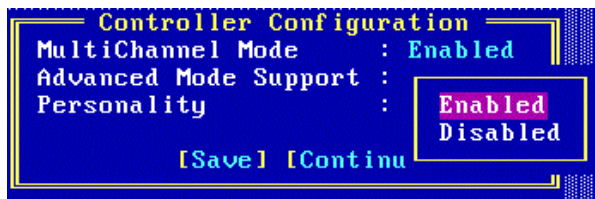


Figure 2-7 Controller Configuration Menu - Advanced Mode Support Selection

2. Select **Enabled** or **Disabled** and press <Enter>.
3. Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

Configuring Ports When Multichannel is Disabled or Not Supported

Note: If your adapter has multichannel enabled, refer to “Configuring Universal Multichannel” on page 34. If you are using an IBM adapter, refer to “Configuring Multichannel for IBM Adapters” on page 36.

When Multichannel Mode is disabled, or it is not supported, the Port Configuration screen appears after you select a port in the Port Selection Menu.

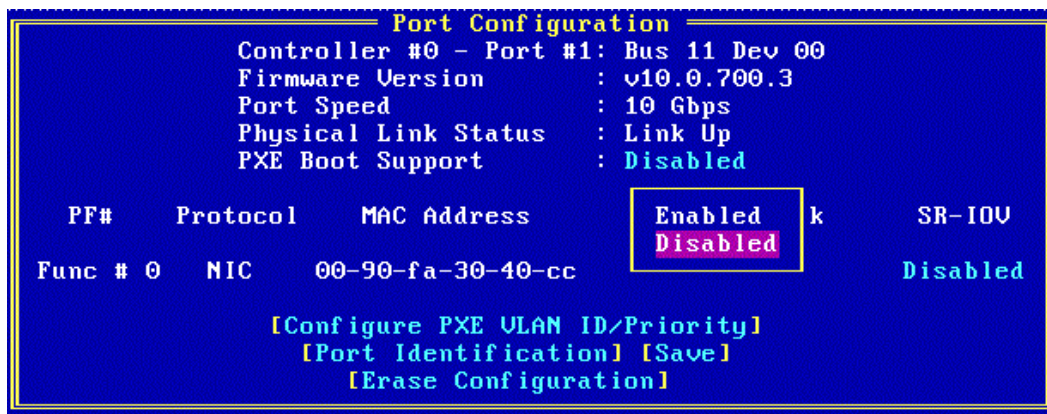


Figure 2-8 Port Configuration Screen

Note: Logical Link Status is displayed as “N/A” for storage functions.

The Port Configuration screen enables you to perform the following tasks:

- Configure PXE boot support
- Configure SR-IOV
- Configure PXE VLAN ID and Priority
- Identify ports
- Erase the port and adapter configuration

Configuring PXE Boot Support

To configure PXE boot support:

1. On the configuration screen, use the <Tab> key to select the PXE Boot Support setting and a drop-down menu appears.
2. From the drop-down menu, select **Enabled** or **Disabled** and press <Enter>.
3. Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

Note: During system startup, PXE contacts the DHCP server for an IP address to boot from the network.

Configuring SR-IOV

If your system BIOS supports SR-IOV, you can enable it. SR-IOV support can only be enabled when multichannel is disabled or it is not supported. For more information on SR-IOV configuration, see the appropriate Emulex driver manual.

1. On the configuration screen, use the <Tab> key to select the SR-IOV setting and a drop-down menu appears.
2. From the drop-down menu, select **Enabled** or **Disabled** and press <Enter>.
3. Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

Configuring the PXE VLAN ID and Priority

To configure a PXE VLAN ID and set the priority level:

1. On the configuration screen, select **Configure PXE VLAN ID/Priority** and press <Enter>. The Configure PXE VLAN ID/Priority menu is displayed.

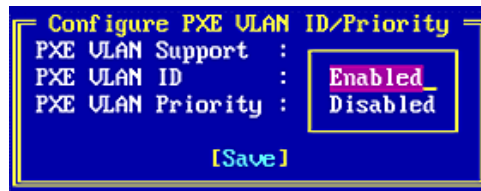


Figure 2-9 Configure PXE VLAN ID/Priority Menu

2. Use the <Tab> key to select the PXE VLAN Support setting and a drop-down menu appears.
 - a. For PXE VLAN Support, from the drop-down menu, select **Enabled** and press <Enter>.
 - b. For the PXE VLAN ID, enter a number from 0-4094 and press <Enter>.
 - c. For the PXE VLAN Priority level, enter a number from 0-7 and press <Enter>. This unique value assigns a priority to outbound packets containing a specified VLAN ID. Valid values range from 0-7, with 0 the highest priority level.
3. Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

After you exit the PXESelect utility, the system will reboot for the configuration to take effect.

Physically Identifying the Port

To physically determine which port you are configuring by blinking the link and activity LEDs of that port:

1. On the configuration screen, select **Port Identification** and press **<Enter>**. The Port Identification screen appears.

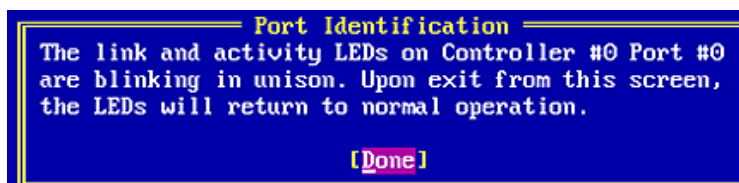


Figure 2-10 Port Identification Screen

2. The LEDs on your controller begin blinking. The selected port's LED status indicators blink on your controller until you select **Done** on this screen and press **<Enter>**.

Note: Not all controllers have LEDs that are visible externally. If you are using an add-in card in a blade server environment, the port identification or beaconing capability does not work.

Erasing Ports and Controller Configuration

Note: When selecting this setting, all previous configuration settings are returned to their factory default settings except for the current personality selection. Emulex recommends performing this action to provide a clean environment for new configuration settings to take effect.

To erase the ports and controller configuration:

1. On the configuration screen, select **Erase Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. A warning appears asking if you want to erase the current configuration for all ports of the controller.
2. Press **<Y>** to delete the configuration. You will receive another warning asking you to confirm the permanent removal of the controller configuration.
3. Press **<Y>** to delete the configuration.

To exit the PXESelect utility after erasing the ports and controller configuration:

1. Follow the instructions on the bottom of the individual menu screens until you are prompted to exit.
2. Press **<Y>** to exit. Depending on what settings were changed, a reboot may be necessary.

Note: For older systems, depending on the memory allocation method supported, the PXESelect utility automatically reboots even when there are no changes made to the system.

Configuring Universal Multichannel

Note: Universal multichannel support is only available on OCE11100-series and OCE14000-series adapters.

Note: If your adapter has multichannel enabled and also supports IBM Virtual Fabric Mode or IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode, refer to “Configuring Multichannel for IBM Adapters” on page 36 for additional information. If multichannel is disabled or not supported on the adapter, refer to “Configuring Ports When Multichannel is Disabled or Not Supported” on page 31.

UMC provides the ability to configure multiple PCI functions or I/O channels for each physical adapter port. For additional information on UMC support, see the *Emulex Universal Multichannel Reference Guide*.

Note: When UMC is enabled, you must configure the multichannel settings (minimum and maximum bandwidths) for iSCSI and FCoE storage functions in the NIC BIOS before they can be configured further from their respective utilities (iSCSI or FCoE BIOS). Otherwise, the Logical Link for that function will still show as down, and you will not be able to log into targets or find LUNs behind those targets.

Note: Multichannel functionality is only supported on OneConnect adapters running in 10 Gb mode. The 1 Gb mode does not support UMC.

To view the MultiChannel Configuration screen:

1. From Port Selection Menu (Figure 2-4), select the port you want to configure and press **<Enter>**. The MultiChannel Configuration screen appears.

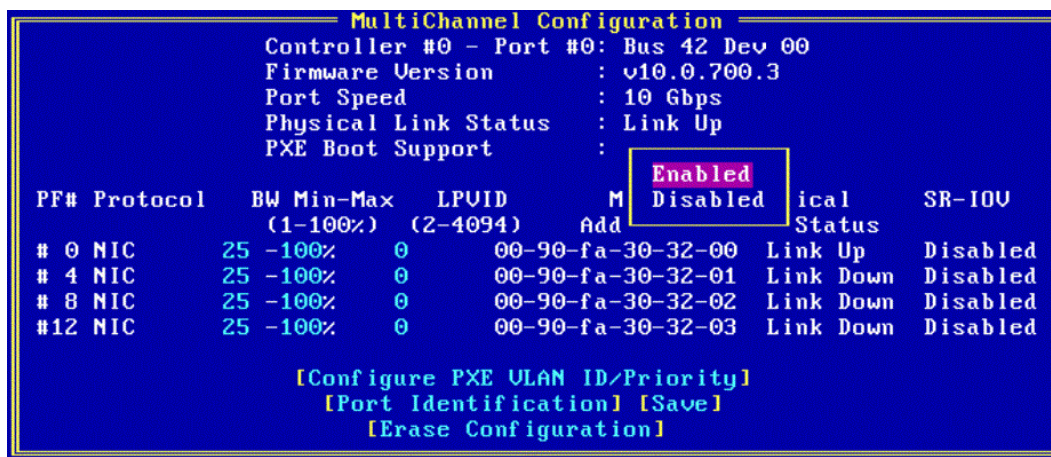


Figure 2-11 MultiChannel Configuration Screen

Notes:

- Logical Link Status is displayed as “N/A” for storage functions.
- SR-IOV support can only be enabled if UMC support is disabled.

- If your system does not support some of the multichannel options, those unavailable options show as N/A on the MultiChannel Configuration screen.
2. From the MultiChannel Configuration screen, you can perform the following tasks:
 - Configure PXE boot support – see “Configuring PXE Boot Support” on page 31 for instructions.
 - Configure PXE VLAN ID/Priority – see “Configuring the PXE VLAN ID and Priority” on page 32 for instructions.
 - Identify ports – see “Physically Identifying the Port” on page 33 for instructions.
 - Erase the port and adapter configuration – see “Erasing Ports and Controller Configuration” on page 33 for instructions.
 - Configure the minimum and maximum bandwidth for each channel
 - Configure the LPVID for each channel

Note: Your adapter or system may not support all multichannel options.

Configuring Minimum and Maximum Bandwidth

To configure bandwidth:

1. On the configuration screen, use the <Tab> key to select **Minimum Bandwidth** or **Maximum Bandwidth**.
 - The Minimum Bandwidth value is the least amount of bandwidth that the function can provide. It is represented as a percentage. The Minimum Bandwidth value must be less than or equal to the Maximum Bandwidth value. The total of the Minimum Bandwidth values for all enabled functions on that port must be equal to 100.
- Note:** A Minimum Bandwidth value of 0 is a valid value. When all of the partitions' Minimum Bandwidth values are zero, the bandwidth is distributed equally among the current active partitions. If a specific partition's Minimum Bandwidth value is 0, that partition's logical link will be brought down.
- The Maximum Bandwidth value is the greatest amount of bandwidth that the function can provide. It is represented as a percentage.
2. Enter the value for the specified option and press <Enter>.
 3. Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

Configuring LPVID

The LPVID is used to enforce a VLAN ID on all traffic originating from an IP address, channel, or PCI function. If the operating system for that PCI function has set up a VLAN ID, then the operating system-configured VLAN ID takes precedence over the LPVID for transmit packets while the operating system-configured VLAN ID and LPVID-tagged packets will both be received. If the operating system has not set up any VLAN IDs, then the LPVID is used for tagging.

Note: LPVID and user-configured VLAN IDs from the operating system must be different.

Note: LPVIDs also need to be configured on the switch port.

Each LPVID must be unique and is relevant for NIC traffic only. The LPVID is not supported for storage functions. For iSCSI storage functions, you must configure a VLAN ID through iSCSISelect or through the host. For additional information, see “Configuring VLAN ID and VLAN Priority” on page 87.

During PXE boot when the UNDI Driver (BIOS) is functional, the PXE VLAN is used. However, once the NIC driver is operational the LPVID is used.

Note: If no PXE VLAN is configured, the LPVID is used.

For example:

```
PXE Install OS
PXE Server configured with VLAN 5
PXE VLAN=5
LPVID for function 0=5
```

To configure LPVID:

1. On the configuration screen, use the **<Tab>** key to select **LPVID** and a dialog box appears.
2. Enter a value and press **<Enter>**. The LPVID range is 2-4094. A value of 0 disables the LPVID.
3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring Multichannel for IBM Adapters

Note: This section only pertains to certain Emulex OneConnect adapters that support IBM Virtual Fabric multichannel or Unified Fabric Protocol.

When you want to enable multichannel on IBM adapters, you must select a Multichannel Mode.

To select the Multichannel Mode:

1. From the Controller Configuration menu, use the **<Tab>** key to select the Multichannel Mode setting and a drop-down menu appears.

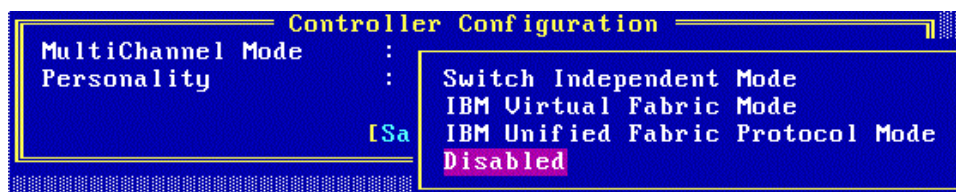


Figure 2-12 Controller Configuration Screen - IBM Adapters

2. Select one of the following settings and press **<Enter>**:
 - Switch Independent Mode

- IBM Virtual Fabric Mode
- IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode
- Disabled

Note: For more information on the available Multichannel Modes, see “Multichannel Modes”.

3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.
4. To proceed, select **Continue** and press **<Enter>**.

With the Multichannel Mode selected, you can now configure multichannel support. See “Multichannel Configuration” for more information.

Multichannel Modes

Note: The following modes are only available on IBM adapters and systems that support IBM Virtual Fabric and Unified Fabric Protocol modes.

An IBM Virtual Fabric-enabled switch provides the ability to configure an LPVID for a virtual channel or I/O channel on an adapter port. If multichannel is supported on your system, the PXESelect utility enables you to select one of the following modes:

- IBM Virtual Fabric Mode – select this mode when a OneConnect adapter is attached to an IBM Virtual Fabric-enabled switch.
- IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode – select this mode when a OneConnect adapter is attached to an IBM UFP-enabled switch.

Note: Some IBM switches support both UFP and IBM Virtual Fabric Mode.

- Switch Independent Mode – select this mode if you are using a switch other than an IBM Virtual Fabric or UFP-enabled switch. When this mode is enabled, refer to “Configuring Universal Multichannel” on page 34 for information on configuring multichannel.

Note: Multichannel functionality is only supported on OneConnect adapters running in 10 Gb mode. The 1 Gb mode does not support multichannel.

Multichannel Configuration

Multichannel provides the ability to configure multiple PCI functions or I/O channels for each physical adapter port.

Note: Setting up IBM Virtual Fabric or UFP multichannel depends on cooperation with adjacent switches.

Note: Refer to “Configuring Universal Multichannel” on page 34 for information on configuring multichannel when Switch Independent mode is enabled.

To view the configuration screen:

1. From Port Selection Menu (Figure 2-4), select the port you want to configure and press **<Enter>**. The configuration screen appears.

When configuring multichannel on adapters that support IBM Virtual Fabric and UFP modes, the configuration screen will be dependent on which Multichannel Mode has been selected.

Note: For illustration purposes, the screen displays in this section are for a system with IBM Virtual Fabric Mode enabled.

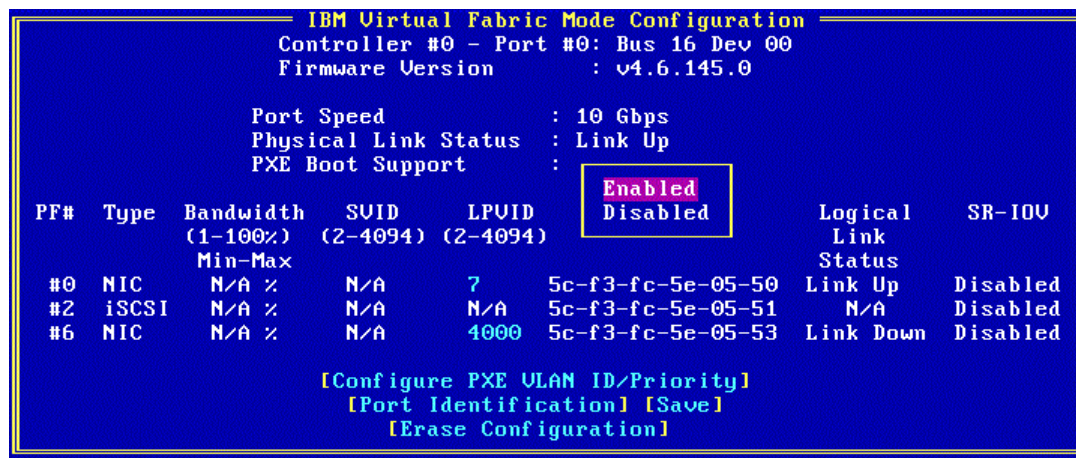


Figure 2-13 IBM Virtual Fabric Mode Configuration Screen

Notes:

- Logical Link Status is displayed as “N/A” for storage functions.
 - SR-IOV support can only be enabled if multichannel support is disabled.
 - If your system does not support some of the multichannel options, those unavailable options show as N/A on the MultiChannel Configuration screen.
 - The SVID, or Outer VLAN ID, is displayed in IBM Virtual Fabric Mode and IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode. This value is provided by the IBM switch and will display when the protocol modes are configured on the switch and the adapter. If the protocol modes are not configured, a value of “N/A” is displayed.
2. From the configuration screen, you can perform the following tasks:
- Configure PXE boot support – see “Configuring PXE Boot Support” on page 31 for instructions.
 - Configure PXE VLAN ID/Priority – see “Configuring the PXE VLAN ID and Priority” on page 32 for instructions.
 - Identify ports – see “Physically Identifying the Port” on page 33 for instructions.
 - Erase the port and adapter configuration – see “Erasing Ports and Controller Configuration” on page 33 for instructions.
 - Configure the LPVID for each channel – see “Configuring LPVID” on page 35 for instructions.

Note: An LPVID is optional for IBM Virtual Fabric Mode, but it is required for every function when using Switch Independent Mode.

Note: When IBM Virtual Fabric Mode or Unified Fabric Protocol Mode is enabled, you must configure the minimum and maximum bandwidth settings on the switch.

PXE Boot Parameters Default Values

The default settings for the PXE Boot parameters are listed in the following table.

Table 2-2 PXE Boot Parameter Default Values

Parameter	Default Value	Valid Values
Advanced Mode	Enabled (OCe11100-series and OCe14000-series 2-port and 4-port controllers and the LPe16202/OCe15100 CFA) Disabled (OCe10100-series controllers)	Enabled Disabled
PXE Boot Support	The default for this parameter varies depending on the vendor configuration.	Enabled Disabled
SR-IOV	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
VLAN Support	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
VLAN ID	0	0-4094
VLAN Priority	0	0-7
Multichannel Mode	The default for this parameter varies depending on the vendor configuration.	For Emulex adapters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled • Disabled For IBM adapters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IBM Virtual Fabric Mode • IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode • Switch Independent Mode • Disabled
Minimum Bandwidth	0%	Must have a total of 100% across all ports.
Maximum Bandwidth	0%	From the minimum bandwidth value up to 100% (inclusive).
LPVID	0	2-4094

3. Configuring Boot from SAN for the FCoE Protocol

When booting from SAN, the storage device is typically identified by its WWPN and a LUN. By extending the server system BIOS, boot from SAN capability is provided by the boot BIOS contained on an Emulex adapter in the server. When properly configured, the adapter then permanently directs the server to boot from a logical unit (disk) on the SAN as if it were a local disk.

Note: Not all procedures are required. Emulex adapters usually ship from the factory with the latest version of boot code installed and enabled, so you do not need to install or enable boot code in those cases. However, if boot code is not installed, you must install it, and, if it is not enabled, you must enable it. You may want to update the boot code if a more current version is available on the Emulex website at <http://www.emulex.com>.

This section describes how to set up a system to boot from SAN. This specific procedure to follow is determined by the system architecture and the operating system.

Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2

Configuring Boot from SAN on Windows (x86 and x64)

To configure boot from SAN:

1. If necessary, install or update the boot code on the adapter. See chapter 6., “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code,” on page 78 for more information.
2. If necessary, enable the boot code on the adapter. See chapter 6., “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code,” on page 78 for more information.
3. Enable the adapter to boot from SAN. See “Enabling an Adapter to Boot from SAN” on page 61 for more information.
4. Configure boot devices. See “Configuring Boot Devices” on page 63 for more information.
5. If desired, configure the boot options on the adapter. See “Configuring Advanced Adapter Parameters” on page 67 for more information.
6. Install the operating system on an FC boot disk.

For additional information, see “Installing Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 on an FC Boot Disk (x86, x64, and UEFI)” on page 43.

Configuring Boot from SAN on Windows (UEFI)

To configure boot from SAN:

1. If necessary, install or update the boot code on the adapter. See chapter 6., “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code,” on page 78 for more information.
2. If necessary, enable the boot code on the adapter. See “Enabling an Adapter to Boot from SAN” on page 61 for more information.
3. Configure boot devices. See “Configuring Boot Devices” on page 63 for more information.
4. If desired, configure the boot options on the adapter. See “Configuring Advanced Adapter Parameters” on page 67 for more information.
5. Install the operating system on an FC boot disk:
 - For Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2, see “Installing Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 on an FC Boot Disk (x86, x64, and UEFI)” on page 43.
 - For a new installation of Windows 2008 UEFI-Aware operating system on a UEFI-based x64 Server, see “Installing a New Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 UEFI-Aware Operating System on a UEFI-based x64 Server” on page 41.

Installing a New Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 UEFI-Aware Operating System on a UEFI-based x64 Server

This installation procedure assumes LUNs are created in the SAN storage device and zoned appropriately to the host adapter's WWN.

To install a new Windows Server UEFI-aware operating system:

1. From the server system UEFI setup, ensure that CD/DVD is the first device in the Boot Order list.
2. Enable the adapter BIOS setting to allow SAN boot in the Emulex UEFI configuration utility.
3. Configure the boot target and LUN in Emulex UEFI configuration utility to select the desired target.
4. Boot the host server with the Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 DVD inserted. Follow the on-screen prompts to install the appropriate version of Windows Server.
5. The Windows installation exposes all available/visible LUNs as disks and partitions numbered 0 to N, where N is the highest number available. These numbers typically are the LUN numbers assigned by the array.
6. Select the disk on which you want to install the operating system.
7. Follow system prompts in the Windows installation.

Note: The operating system image is installed with the GPT disk partition. See “GUID Partition Table” on page 42 for a brief description of GPT disk partitions.

8. After the installation is complete, a boot option variable called Windows Boot Manager is populated with a media device path pointing to the Windows boot

loader utility. Windows Boot Manager can be found in the Start Options menu of the Host Server UEFI.

9. The Windows Boot Manager option is inserted as the first boot option in the boot order list of the Host Server UEFI. The CD/DVD boot is the second device in the boot order list.
10. Upon reboot, the system boots from the LUN set up on the SAN.

Directing a UEFI-based Server to a Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 Operating System Image (Installed as UEFI-Aware) Already Installed on the SAN

This installation procedure assumes a LUN exists in the SAN storage device, is zoned appropriately to the host adapter's WWN, and a UEFI-aware operating system resides on the target LUN.

To direct a UEFI-based server to a Windows Server operating system image:

1. Enable network boot in the Emulex UEFI configuration utility.
2. Configure the boot target and LUN in the Emulex UEFI configuration utility to point to your desired target.
3. Select **Boot Manager** from the System UEFI configuration manager.
4. Select **Add Boot Option**.
5. Identify the desired target in the list, and continue down the explorer path until you locate the bootmgfw.efi file. This file is the boot loader utility for your Windows 2008 or 2012 UEFI-aware operating system installation.
6. Input a boot device description (for example, Win2K8_UEFI_SAN) and optional data (if desired) for this device and select **Commit Changes**.
7. From the Windows Boot Manager, select **Change Boot Order**.
8. Move your previous input description name (Win2K8_UEFI_SAN) to the desired position in the boot order.
9. Select **Commit Changes**. The Start Options list now reflects the boot order changes.

Upon reboot, the server is able to boot from this target LUN on the SAN.

GUID Partition Table

The GPT was introduced as part of the EFI initiative. GPT provides a more flexible mechanism for partitioning disks than the older MBR partitioning scheme that has been common to PCs. MBR supports four primary partitions per hard drive and a maximum partition size of 2 TB. If the disk is larger than 2 TB (the maximum partition size in a legacy MBR), the size of this partition is marked as 2 TB and the rest of the disk is ignored.

The GPT disk itself can support a volume up to 2^{64} blocks in length (for 512-byte blocks, this is 9.44 ZB. A zettabyte is 1 billion terabytes. The GPT disk can also theoretically support unlimited partitions.

Note: By default, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, 2012, and 2012 R2 installs with a GPT-formatted disk on an UEFI-Aware server.

For more information on the GUID partition table, see the Microsoft website and search for the terms: Windows and GPT FAQ.

Installing Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 on an FC Boot Disk (x86, x64, and UEFI)

This procedure installs Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 onto an unformatted FC disk drive and configures the system to boot from the SAN disk drive.

Note: The computer's system BIOS may require that another controller take precedence over the Emulex adapter during boot. If this occurs, you must disconnect or disable the other adapter. This allows you to configure and build your operating system on the drive connected to the Emulex adapter.

To install Windows Server on an FC boot disk:

1. From <http://www.emulex.com>, download the distribution executable file for the latest version of the Emulex driver to your local drive. The file you download is an executable (.exe) file.
2. In Windows Explorer, double-click the distribution executable file. Driver version information is displayed.
3. Click **Next** to access the Location window. The default installation location is displayed. If desired, browse to a different location.
4. Click **Install** to continue the installation. A progress window is displayed. As each task is completed, the corresponding check box is automatically selected. After all tasks are completed, a confirmation window is displayed.
5. Clear the **Run AutoPilot Installer** check box and click **Finish** to close the distribution executable file.
6. In Windows Explorer, navigate to the folder you specified in step 3.
7. In the \AutoPilot Installer\Drivers*drivername* folder, open the folder that corresponds to your computer type, such as x86. *drivername* is the type of driver you downloaded (for example, Storport Miniport).
8. Copy all the files in this folder onto a formatted floppy disk or a USB device.
9. Boot the target system with the Windows Server 2008, 2012, or 2012 R2 setup media. The Install Windows splash screen is displayed.
10. Verify and if necessary change the language, time and date and keyboard values. Click **Next**. Another splash screen is displayed.
11. Click **Install Now**. The Where do you want to install Windows? screen is displayed.
12. Click **Load Driver**. Browse to the floppy disk or USB device specified in step 8 where the driver is located to load the Storport Miniport driver for the appropriate operating system. Once selected, the correct driver location and driver are displayed under the Select driver to be installed screen.

13. Select **Next**. After the driver is loaded, the Where do you want to install Windows? screen is displayed.
14. Select the same drive you configured as the boot device. For x86 and x64 systems, see “Configuring Boot Devices” on page 63. For UEFI systems, see “Adding Boot Devices” on page 177.

Linux, Citrix, and VMware

Configuring Boot from SAN on Linux, Citrix, or VMware (x86 and x64)

To configure boot from SAN:

1. If necessary, install or update the boot code on the adapter. See chapter 6., “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code,” on page 78 for more information.
2. If necessary, enable the boot code on the adapter. See chapter 6., “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code,” on page 78 for more information.
3. Enable the adapter to boot from SAN. See “Enabling an Adapter to Boot from SAN” on page 61 for more information.
4. If necessary, enable spinup delay. See “Enabling or Disabling the Spinup Delay” on page 71 for more information.
5. Configure boot devices. See “Configuring Boot Devices” on page 63 for more information.
6. If desired, configure the boot options on the adapter. See “Configuring Advanced Adapter Parameters” on page 67 for more information.
7. Use the driver on the operating system distribution disk to boot the system. If necessary, you can update the driver to the latest version.

Configuring Boot from SAN on Linux (UEFI)

To configure boot from SAN:

1. If necessary, install or update the latest boot code on the adapter. See chapter 6., “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code,” on page 78 for more information.
2. If necessary, enable the boot code on the adapter. See chapter 6., “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code,” on page 78 for more information.
3. Configure boot devices. See “Enabling an Adapter to Boot from SAN” on page 61 for more information.
4. If desired, configure the boot options on the adapter. See “Configuring Advanced Adapter Parameters” on page 67 for more information.
5. Use the driver on the operating system distribution disk to boot the system. If necessary, you can update the driver to the latest version.

Solaris

Configuring Boot from SAN on Solaris SFS (x86 and x64)

To configure boot from SAN:

1. If necessary, install or update the boot code on the adapter. See chapter 6., “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code,” on page 78 for more information.
2. If necessary, enable the boot code on the adapter. See chapter 6., “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code,” on page 78 for more information.
3. Enable the adapter to boot from SAN. See “Enabling an Adapter to Boot from SAN” on page 61 for more information.
4. If necessary, enable spinup delay. See “Enabling or Disabling the Spinup Delay” on page 71 for more information.
5. Configure boot devices. See “Configuring Boot Devices” on page 63 for more information.
6. If desired, configure the boot options on the adapter. See “Configuring Advanced Adapter Parameters” on page 67 for more information.
7. Boot the Solaris installation CD and follow the prompts.

Note: If you need help determining the LUNs to select for boot from SAN, see “Determining LUNs to Select for Boot from SAN” on page 45.

Determining LUNs to Select for Boot from SAN

To determine which LUNs to select:

1. Open a terminal window and leave it open.
2. In the terminal window, select the LUN you are going to use as the SAN boot disk (not the local drive) using the `luxadm probe` command. This shows all the available LUNs. Record this LUN information, which is used throughout this procedure. LUN 0 is used in the example:

```
luxadm probe
```

```
Found Fibre Channel device(s):
```

```
Node WWN:50060e8003823800 Device Type:Disk device
Logical Path:/dev/rdisk/c5t226000C0FF9833AFd6s2
Node WWN:50060e8003823800 Device Type:Disk device
Logical Path:/dev/rdisk/c5t226000C0FF9833AFd6s2
```

```
Node WWN:50060e8003823800 Device Type:Disk device
```

3. Copy the `/dev/rdisk/nnn` part of the path statement for a drive.
4. In the terminal window, use the `luxadm display` command to show the WWPN or the LUN for which you selected the path in the prior step:

```
luxadm display </dev/rdisk/nnn>
```

5. Record this LUN or WWPN information for use in the procedure.

Configuring Boot from SAN on Solaris SFS (SPARC)

To configure boot from SAN:

1. If necessary, install or update the boot code on the adapter. See chapter 6., “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code,” on page 78 for more information.
2. If necessary, enable the boot code on the adapter. See chapter 6., “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code,” on page 78 for more information.
3. Type the following at the OBP prompt:

```
show-devs
```

The ID information for each found adapter is displayed, such as:

```
/pci@22,600000/pci@0/pci@9/pci@0/pci@9/emlx@0
```

4. Enable boot from SAN on each Emulex adapter in the system by typing the following set of commands, replacing `adapter_id` with the ID information (such as shown above), for each Emulex adapter in turn. There is a space between the first quotation mark and the first character of the adapter ID.

```
" adapter_id" select-dev [for example,  
" /pci@22,600000/pci@0/pci@9/pci@0/pci@9/emlx@0" select-dev]  
set-sfs-boot  
unselect-dev
```

5. After all Emulex adapters have been enabled to boot from SAN, reset the system with the following command:
6. After the system resets, boot the Solaris installation CD and follow the prompts.
7. After the installation completes successfully, you will be prompted to reboot or exit the system. Press `<!>` and then press the `<Enter>` key to go to the Unix prompt.
8. Once the Unix prompt appears, append the following line to the system file at `/a/etc/system`:

```
set pcie:pcie_max_mps=0
```

9. Save and reboot server.

Installing Solaris from a Network Image

The system must have a DVD drive and must be part of the site's network and naming service. If you use a naming service, the system must already be in the service, such as NIS, NIS+, DNS, or LDAP. If you do not use a naming service, you must distribute information about this system by following your site's policies.

Note: This procedure assumes that the system is running the Volume Manager. If you are not using the Volume Manager to manage media, refer to the Sun Microsystems System Administration Guide: Devices and File Systems.

To install from a network image:

1. Log on as a superuser or equivalent.
2. Insert the Solaris DVD in the system's drive.

3. Create a directory to contain the DVD image.

```
# mkdir -p install_dir_path
```

install_dir_path specifies the directory where the DVD image is to be copied.

4. Change to the Tools directory on the mounted disc.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
```

Note: For Solaris 10 only:

- a. Remove the SUNWemlxu and SUNWemlxs from
/install_dir_path/Solaris/Tools/Boot.

- b. Unzip the elxfc driver to a temporary directory:

```
pkgadd -R /install_dir_path/Solaris/Tools/Boot -d /tmp
```

- c. Modify the elxfc.conf file to use persistent binding. For more information, see the *Emulex Driver for Solaris User Manual*.

5. Copy the DVD image in the drive to the install server's hard disk.

```
# ./setup_install_server install_dir_path
```

install_dir_path specifies the directory where the DVD image is to be copied.

Note: The `setup_install_server` command indicates whether you have enough disk space available for the Solaris Software disc images. To determine available disk space, use the `df -k1` command.

6. Decide whether you need to make the installation server available for mounting:

If the installation server is on the same subnet as the system to be installed or you are using DHCP, you do not need to create a boot server. Proceed to step 7.

If the install server is not on the same subnet as the system to be installed and you are not using DHCP, complete the following steps.

- a. Verify that the path to the install server's image is shared appropriately.

```
# share | grep install_dir_path
```

install_dir_path specifies the path to the installation image where the DVD image was copied:

- If the path to the install server's directory is displayed and `anon=0` is displayed in the options, proceed to step 7.
- If the path to the install server's directory is not displayed or you do not have `anon=0` in the options, continue and make the install server available to the boot server. Using the `share` command, add this entry to the `/etc/dfs/dfstab` file (all on one line):

```
share -F nfs -o ro,anon=0 -d "install server directory"  
install_dir_path
```

- b. Verify that the `nfsd` daemon is running, or start the `nfsd` daemon.

- If the install server is running the current Solaris release, or compatible version, type the following command:

```
# svcs -l svc:/network/nfs/server:default
```

- If the `nfsd` daemon is online, continue to step c.

- If the nfsd daemon is not online, start it. Type the following command:


```
# svcadm enable svc:/network/nfs/server
```
 - If the install server is running the Solaris 9 operating system, or compatible version, type the following command:


```
# ps -ef | grep nfsd
```

 - If the nfsd daemon is running, continue to step c.
 - If the nfsd daemon is not running, start it.


```
# /etc/init.d/nfs.server start
```
- c. Share the install server.


```
# shareall
```
- 7. Change directories to root (/).


```
# cd /
```
- 8. Eject the Solaris DVD.
- 9. (Optional) Patch the files that are located in the miniroot on the net install image that was created by setup_install_server. Patching a file might be necessary if a boot image has problems. For more information, see the *Sun Microsystems Solaris 10 10/08 Installation Guide*.

Installing Solaris by Migrating an Image from a Local SCSI Disk

To install Solaris by migrating an image from a local SCSI disk:

1. Type the following at the OBP prompt:


```
show-devs
```

The ID information for each found adapter is displayed, such as:

```
/pci@5d,700000/emlx@1
```
2. Select the Emulex adapter on which you want to enable boot from SAN by entering the path to the adapter, for example:


```
" /pci@5d,700000/emlx@1" select-dev
```
3. To view the current boot device ID, type:


```
show-devs
```

```
" /pci@5d,700000/emlx@1" select-dev /* to select emlx@1 (for example) */
```

```
.boot-id
```

Make a note of the WWPN, DID, or AL_PA returned from the probe and write down the corresponding boot entry.
4. To enable boot from SAN, set the boot device ID to the SAN device from which you want to boot. For example:


```
" /pci@5d,700000/emlx@1" select-dev
```

```
wwpn/did/alpa lun target_id set-boot-id
```

```
unselect-dev
```

where:

- *wwpn* | *did* | *alpa* is the device WWPN, DID, or AL_PA of the storage device.
- *lun* is the LUN number in hexadecimal. To enter it in decimal, enter *d#* [*lun*].
- *target_id* is the target ID in hexadecimal. To enter it in decimal, enter *d#* [*target_id*].

Note: Emulex recommends using the WWPN in most cases. The DID and AL_PA may change between boots, causing the SAN boot to fail, unless the DID and AL_PA are specifically configured to not change between boots.

Example 1: *alpa=e1*, *lun=100* (decimal) and *target id=10* (decimal):

```
alpa e1 d# 100 d# 10 set-boot-id
```

Example 2: *wwpn=50000034987AFE*, *lun=af* (hexadecimal) and *target id=10* (decimal):

```
wwpn 50000034987AFE af d# 10 set-boot-id
```

Example 3: *did=6312200*, *lun=25* (hexadecimal) and *target id=f* (hexadecimal):

```
did 6312200 25 f set-boot-id
```

5. Boot to the original local disk to set up the FC disk that you just defined. Type:

```
boot local_disk
```

where *local_disk* is the complete path or the alias of the original boot disk.

6. Run the format utility:

```
format
```

7. Select the target disk to become the new boot disk (for example, *c1t1d0*).
8. Select the partition option and partition the disk as desired.
9. Select the label option and write a volume label to the target disk.

For help with the format utility, see the man page *man format*.

10. Install the boot on partition 0 of the target disk. (Type this command as one line.)

```
installboot /usr/platform/ `uname -i`/lib/fs/ufs/bootblk  
/dev/rdisk/clt1d0s0
```

11. Create a filesystem for each partition that contains a mounted filesystem:

```
newfs -v /dev/rdisk/clt1d0s0 (becomes root)  
newfs -v /dev/rdisk/clt1d0s6 (becomes usr)  
newfs -v /dev/rdisk/clt1d0s7 (becomes export/home)
```

12. Create temporary mount points for the new partitions:

```
mkdir root2  
mkdir usr2  
mkdir export2
```

13. Mount, copy, then unmount the *usr2* file system:

```
mount /dev/dsk/clt1d0s6 /usr2  
c0t0d0s6 ufsdump 0f - /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s6 | (cd /usr2; ufsrestore  
rf -)  
umount /usr2
```

14. Copy the *export/home* file system:

```
mount /dev/dsk/clt1d0s7 /export2
ufsdump 0f - /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s7 | (cd /export2; ufsrestore rf -)
umount /export2
```

15. Perform copy:

```
mount /dev/dsk/clt1d0s0 /root2
ufsdump 0f - /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s0 | (cd /root2; ufsrestore rf -)
```

16. Edit /root2/etc/vfstab, changing the controller number, target number and LUN number to point to the new FC boot disk. For example, if the FC boot disk is c1t1d0, replace all local disk entries of c0t0d0 with c1t1d0.

Currently file shows:

```
/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s1 (swap)

/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0 and /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s0 (root)
/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s6 and /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s6 (usr)
/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s7 and /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s7 (export)
```

Edit file to show:

```
/dev/dsk/clt1d1s1 (swap)

/dev/dsk/clt1d0s0 and /dev/rdisk/clt1d0s1 (root)
/dev/dsk/clt1d0s6 and /dev/rdisk/clt1d0s6 (usr)
/dev/dsk/clt1d0s7 and /dev/rdisk/clt1d0s7 (export)
```

17. Reboot the system:

```
sync
halt
reset-all
```

18. Boot to disk:

```
boot disk
```

The system should boot to the FC disk.

19. View the current dump device setting:

```
dumpadm
```

20. Change the dump device to the swap area of the FC drive:

```
dumpadm -d /dev/dsk/clt1d0s1
```

where /dev/dsk/clt1d0s1 is a sample path to the swap area of the FC drive.

Booting Solaris 10 from the Network on SPARC Machines

To boot from the network:

1. Set up the install server and the boot server (if required). See the topic for Network-Based Installations in the *Solaris 10 10/09 Installation Guide*.
2. Obtain the MAC address of the OCE port used for the net boot:
 - a. Get the device path of the port from the show-devs command:

```
{0} ok show-devs
/pci@0/pci@0/pci@8/pci@0/pci@1/emlx@0,3
/pci@0/pci@0/pci@8/pci@0/pci@1/emlx@0,2
/pci@0/pci@0/pci@8/pci@0/pci@1/oce@0,1
/pci@0/pci@0/pci@8/pci@0/pci@1/oce@0
/pci@0/pci@0/pci@8/pci@0/pci@1/emlx@0,3/fp@0,0
```

b. Select the OCE device to boot:

```
{0} ok " /pci@0/pci@0/pci@8/pci@0/pci@1/oce@0,1" select-dev
```

c. Get the MAC address of the selected device from its properties:

```
{0} ok .properties
status                okay
assigned-addresses    82020014 00000000 00100000 00000000 00004000
                      82020018 00000000 00120000 00000000 00020000
                      82020020 00000000 00140000 00000000 00020000
                      82020030 00000000 00180000 00000000 00080000
model                 OCe10102
fcode-version         4.0.0.0
reg                   00020000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
                      02020014 00000000 00000000 00000000 00004000
                      03020018 00000000 00000000 00000000 00020000
                      03020020 00000000 00000000 00000000 00020000
                      02020030 00000000 00000000 00000000 00040000
compatible            pciex19a2,700.10df.e602.2
                      pciex19a2,700.10df.e602
                      pciex19a2,700.2
                      pciex19a2,700
                      pciexclass,020000
                      pciexclass,0200
max-frame-size        000005ee
address-bits          00000030
supported-network-types ethernet,10000,null,full
copyright             Copyright (c) 2009-2011 Emulex. All rights
reserved.
name                  oce
device_type           network
manufacturer          Emulex
fcode-rom-offset      00016e00
interrupts            00000001
cache-line-size       00000010
class-code            00020000
subsystem-id          0000e602
subsystem-vendor-id   000010df
revision-id           00000002
device-id             00000700
vendor-id             000019a2
```

3. Add the MAC address from step 2 as an installation client to the Install/Boot server.

4. Power on the client machine and wait for the ok prompt.
5. Set the net device alias for the device selected in step 2.
 - If the net device alias is already set to the network device to be used for the net boot, skip this step.
 - If the net device alias is not set, set the net device alias to the network device that to be used for the net boot. Type:

```
{0} ok devalias net <device_path>
```
6. Boot from the network.
 - If using the DHCP boot strategy, type:

```
{0} ok boot net:dhcp
```
 - If using the RARP boot strategy, type:

```
{0} ok boot net:rarp
```

4. Configuring x86/x64 Platforms for the iSCSI Protocol

iSCSI Overview

iSCSI is an IP-based standard for linking data-storage devices over a network and transferring data by carrying SCSI commands over IP networks. An iSCSI network consists of one or more iSCSI storage units (targets) connected through a copper or optical networking cable to 10Gb Ethernet network switches and/or IP routers. One or more servers are connected to this network, which are responsible for transferring data to or from the storage units.

When an operating system receives a request, it generates the SCSI command and then sends an IP packet over an Ethernet connection. At the receiving end, the SCSI commands are separated from the request, and the SCSI commands and data are sent to the SCSI controller and then to the SCSI storage device. iSCSI also returns a response to the request using the same protocol.

Constructing a Basic iSCSI SAN

There are three main components that make up an iSCSI SAN:

- **iSCSI Initiator(s)** – The initiator allows a given machine access to the storage available in the iSCSI SAN. It requests all SCSI operations like read or write. An initiator is usually located on the host/server side, either as hardware (iSCSI adapter) or software (iSCSI software initiator). To transport block (SCSI) commands over the IP network, an iSCSI driver must be installed on the iSCSI host. An iSCSI driver is included with the Emulex adapter. For more information on iSCSI initiators, see chapter 8, “Configuring and Managing the iSCSI Initiator with the iSCSISelect Utility,” on page 82.
- **iSCSI Target(s)** – An iSCSI SAN has one or more iSCSI targets, which house and make available the storage used within the SAN. The iSCSI target is the storage device itself or an appliance that controls and serves volumes or virtual volumes. The target is the device that performs the SCSI command or bridges it to an attached storage device. iSCSI targets can be disks, RAID arrays, or even FC fabrics. For additional information on iSCSI targets, see chapter 9, “Configuring and Managing iSCSI Targets with the iSCSISelect Utility,” on page 93.
- **Networking infrastructure** – The networking infrastructure in an iSCSI SAN uses Ethernet transport. The configuration and complexity of the storage network depends on its intended function and the required capabilities.

Managing an iSCSI Session

To transmit information from an iSCSI initiator to an iSCSI target, the initiator must first establish a session with the target through an iSCSI login process. The login process:

- Starts a TCP/IP connection
- Verifies that the iSCSI initiator has access to the iSCSI target (authentication)
- Allows negotiation of various parameters

Logging into an iSCSI Session

An iSCSI session has two phases:

- Login Phase – iSCSI parameters are negotiated using login requests and responses.
- Full Featured Phase – Once security/authentication has occurred and operational parameters have been set, the initiator begins to perform SCSI I/Os.

Security

Because the iSCSI protocol operates in the Internet environment, security is critical. The iSCSI SAN uses the CHAP security method.

CHAP Authentication

CHAP is used to periodically verify the identity of the initiator by the target using a challenge/response mechanism. The challenge/response is established on the initial link and may be repeated at any time afterward. For CHAP to work, the target must know the initiator's secret key, and the initiator must correctly respond to the challenge.

Although the authentication is only one-way, you can negotiate CHAP in both directions for mutual authentication, with the help of the same secret set.

Configuring for the iSCSI Protocol

This section provides instructions for configuring boot from SAN for iSCSI on various operating systems using the iSCSISelect utility. It also provides information on how to use the iSCSISelect utility to perform an MPIO boot configuration.

Setting Up Boot from SAN for iSCSI

In iSCSI target configuration, you have the option of setting dual network paths to a single boot LUN. You must follow these steps in this order to configure boot support successfully for each operating system.

1. Use the iSCSISelect utility to configure a boot target.

Note: iSCSI must be enabled for the port before configuring a boot target.

2. Complete the normal operating system installation.

Windows Server

To set up boot from SAN for iSCSI on Windows Server:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.
2. Use the iSCSISelect utility to log into a target from one adapter and configure it for boot. For more information, see chapter 8, “Configuring and Managing the iSCSI Initiator with the iSCSISelect Utility,” on page 82 and chapter 9, “Configuring and Managing iSCSI Targets with the iSCSISelect Utility,” on page 93.

If the iSCSISelect utility is configured properly, a message during boot time indicates that the iSCSI disk was successfully connected.

3. Install a Windows Server operating system over the iSCSI LUN.

Linux and Citrix Servers

To set up boot from SAN for iSCSI on Linux or Citrix:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.
2. Use the iSCSISelect utility to log into a target from one adapter and configure it for boot. For more information, see chapter 8, “Configuring and Managing the iSCSI Initiator with the iSCSISelect Utility,” on page 82 and chapter 9, “Configuring and Managing iSCSI Targets with the iSCSISelect Utility,” on page 93.

If the iSCSISelect utility is configured properly, a message during boot time indicates that the iSCSI disk was successfully connected.

3. Install a Linux operating system over the iSCSI LUN. For more information, refer to the *Emulex Driver for Linux User Manual*.

ESXi Server

To install and configure boot from SAN on ESXi Server:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.
2. Use the iSCSISelect utility to log into a target from one adapter and configure it for boot. For more information, see chapter 8, “Configuring and Managing the iSCSI Initiator with the iSCSISelect Utility,” on page 82 and chapter 9, “Configuring and Managing iSCSI Targets with the iSCSISelect Utility,” on page 93.

If the iSCSISelect utility is configured properly, a message during boot time indicates that the iSCSI disk was successfully connected.

3. Install an ESXi Server operating system over the iSCSI LUN. For more information, refer to the *Emulex Driver for VMware User Manual*.

Booting from SAN for iSCSI MPIO

MPIO support allows the initiator to log in dual sessions to the same target. In this way I/O can be sent over either TCP/IP connection to the target. If one session fails another session can continue processing I/O without interruption to the application. In iSCSI target configuration, you have the option of setting dual network paths to a single boot LUN.

Note: Although MPIO boot support allows the initiator to log into multiple sessions, the iSCSI BIOS currently limits the number of sessions to two iSCSI sessions for a single boot LUN.

You must follow these steps in this order to configure MPIO boot support for each operating system.

1. Use the iSCSISelect utility to configure the first path to a boot target.
2. Complete normal operating system installation.
3. Install third-party MPIO software for your operating system.
4. Configure the second path to a single boot LUN through the iSCSISelect utility.

Windows Server

To install and configure MPIO on Windows Server:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.
2. Use the iSCSISelect utility to log into a target from one adapter and configure it for boot by following the steps in “Setting Up a Basic iSCSI Boot Configuration” on page 79.

If the iSCSISelect utility is configured properly, a message during boot time indicates that the iSCSI disk was successfully connected.

Note: Only one instance of the boot LUN must be visible to the server during the installation. The installation might fail if multiple instances of the boot LUN are available to the server. Emulex recommends that the Spanning Tree Protocol be disabled on any ports that are connected to Windows Server 2008 or 2012 hosts booting via iSCSI. The Spanning Tree Protocol is used to calculate the best path between switches where there are multiple switches and multiple paths through the network.

3. Install a Windows Server operating system over the iSCSI LUN.
4. Once Windows Server is installed, install the MPIO software (such as Microsoft iSCSI Initiator), and reboot the system.
5. After rebooting, ensure that the boot LUN is detected by the MPIO driver. This can be done by either of the following two methods:
 - For Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2:
 - Look at the driver name for the disk device from Device Manager,
 - or-

- Use the MPIO GUI to check for device ID `MS_FT2005iSCSIBusType_0x9` under the MPIO Devices tab. The Disk Manager does not show duplicate disks.
- 6. Reboot your system and log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.
- 7. You can now add an additional boot path with the iSCSISelect utility.
To add an additional boot path to the same iSCSI LUN:
 - a. Follow the steps for the “Windows Server” on page 55 to set up the second path.
 - b. At the Add/Ping iSCSI Target menu, make sure you set a valid ISID Qualifier before adding your target. For more information on the ISID Qualifier, see “Setting an ISID Value” on page 99.
 - c. After you have logged into the target, from the iSCSI Target Configuration menu, set the Boot Target option for the second target to **Yes**.
 - d. Press **<F7>** to display the LUNs behind the target.
 - e. Select the same LUN you chose for your initial boot LUN, then press **<F3>** to set it to bootable.
- 8. After Windows Server boots up, the MPIO installs drivers on the second path and prompts for reboot. Reboot the server.

Linux and Citrix Servers

To install and configure MPIO on Linux or Citrix:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.
2. Use the iSCSISelect utility to log into a target from one adapter and configure it for boot by following the steps for the “Linux and Citrix Servers” on page 55.
If the iSCSISelect utility is configured properly, a message during boot time indicates that the iSCSI disk was successfully connected.
3. Install a Linux operating system over the iSCSI LUN. For more information refer to the *Emulex Driver for Linux User Manual*.
4. Once Linux is installed, install the MPIO software and reboot the system.
5. After rebooting, ensure that the boot LUN is detected by the MPIO driver. Perform either of the following steps:
 - To see if the multipath is running, type:


```
# /sbin/multipath
```

-or-
 - To see if the multipath daemon is running, type:


```
# ps -aelf | grep multipathd
```
6. If multipath is running, you can view the current multipath topology. To view the current multipath topology, type:


```
# /sbin/multipath -l
```
7. Reboot your system and log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.

8. Use the iSCSISelect utility to add an additional boot path to the same iSCSI LUN. To do this, follow these steps:
 - a. Follow the steps for the “Linux and Citrix Servers” on page 55 to set up the second path.
 - b. When you get to the Add/Ping iSCSI Target menu, make sure you set a valid ISID Qualifier before adding your target. For more information on the ISID Qualifier, see “Setting an ISID Value” on page 99.
 - c. After you have logged into the target, from the iSCSI Target Configuration menu, set the Boot Target option for the second target to **Yes**.
 - d. Press <F7> to display the LUNs behind the target.
 - e. Select the same LUN you chose for your initial boot LUN, then press <F3> to set it to bootable.
 - f. Follow the instructions on the bottom of the menu screens until you are prompted to exit.
 - g. Save your changes before you exit.
 - h. Press <Y> to exit the iSCSISelect utility.
9. After Linux boots up, the MPIO installs drivers on the second path and prompts you to reboot. Reboot the server.

ESXi 5.0, 5.1, or 5.5 Server

To install and configure MPIO on ESXi Server:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility pressing <Ctrl+S> when prompted.
2. Use the iSCSISelect utility to log into a target from one adapter and configure it for boot by following the steps for the “ESXi Server” on page 55.

If the iSCSISelect utility is configured properly, a message during boot time indicates that the iSCSI disk was successfully connected.
3. Install an ESXi server operating system over the iSCSI LUN. For more information refer to the *Emulex Driver for VMware User Manual*.
4. Once the ESXi server is installed, install the MPIO software and reboot the system. The ESXi Server is MPIO by default.
5. Use the iSCSISelect utility to add an additional boot path to the same iSCSI LUN. To do this, follow these steps:
 - a. Follow the steps for the “ESXi Server” on page 55 to set up your second path.
 - b. When you access the Add/Ping iSCSI Target menu, set a valid ISID Qualifier before adding your target. For more information, see “Setting an ISID Value” on page 99.
 - c. After you have logged into the target, from the iSCSI Target Configuration menu, set the Boot Target option for the second target to **Yes**.
 - d. Press <F7> to display the LUNs behind the target.
 - e. Select the same LUN you chose for your initial boot LUN, then press <F3> to set it to bootable.

- f. Follow the instructions on the bottom of the menu screens until you are prompted to exit.
- g. Save your changes before you exit.
- h. Press <Y> to exit the iSCSISelect utility.

After the ESXi Server boots up, the MPIO installs drivers on the second path and prompts for a reboot.

- 6. Reboot the server.

5. Using the FCoE Boot BIOS Utility for x86 and x64 Architectures

Before using the FCoE BIOS utility, ensure that the boot code is loaded and enabled on the adapter as described in “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code” on page 78.

Note: This section reflects the most recent release of the FCoE BIOS utility. Some selections may not be available if you are using an older version of the utility.

Note: After exiting the FCoE BIOS configuration utility, the system will reboot whether or not any changes have been made.

Navigating the FCoE BIOS Utility

The FCoE BIOS utility has menus and configuration screens. Use the following methods to navigate them:

- Press the up/down arrows on your keyboard to move through and select menu options or configuration fields. When multiple adapters are listed, use the up/down arrows to scroll to the additional adapters.
- Press <PageUp> to scroll to the previous page.
- Press <PageDn> to scroll to the next page.
- Press <Enter> to select a menu option, to select a changed value, to select a row in a configuration screen or to change a configuration default.
- Press <Esc> to go back to the previous menu.

Starting the FCoE BIOS Utility

Note: Links must be established before entering the FCoE BIOS utility; otherwise, you will receive an error message.

To start the FCoE BIOS utility:

1. Turn on the computer and press and hold down <Alt> or <Ctrl> and press <E> immediately (within five seconds) when the Emulex bootup message to start the FCoE BIOS utility is displayed. An adapter listing is displayed (Figure 5-1).

Note: If the bootup message does not appear, you must enable x86 BootBIOS. For more information, see “Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code” on page 78.

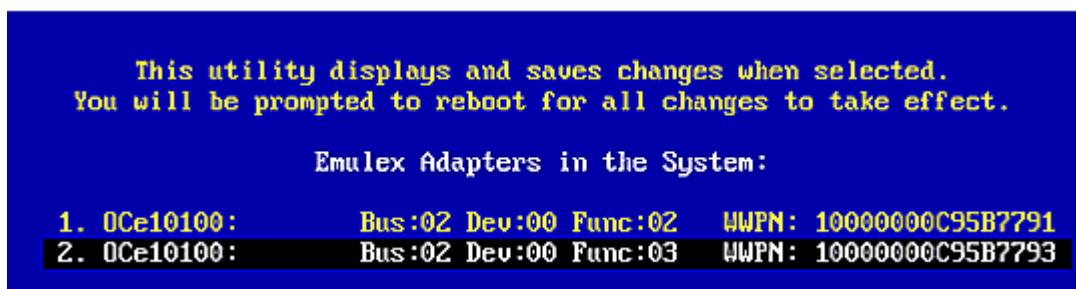


Figure 5-1 Emulex Adapter Listing

2. Select the adapter to configure and press <Enter>. The main configuration menu is displayed (Figure 5-2).

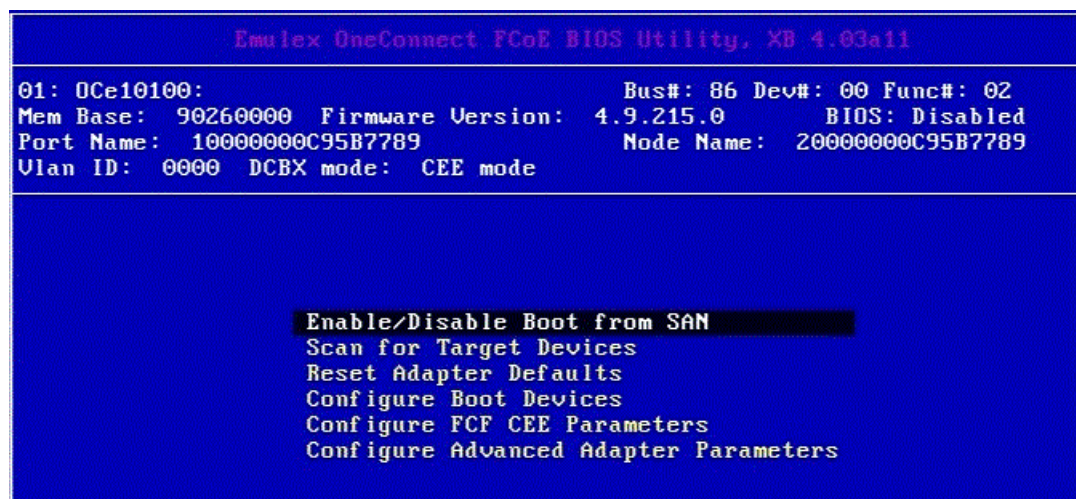


Figure 5-2 Main Configuration Menu

Under normal circumstances, you would first configure boot devices using the BIOS Utility. However, if the adapter is not enabled to boot from SAN, you must first enable the adapter to do so.

Enabling an Adapter to Boot from SAN

To enable an adapter to boot from SAN, from the Main configuration menu, select **Enable/Disable Boot from SAN** and press <Enter>.

Note: Adapters are disabled by default.

At least one adapter must be enabled to boot from SAN in order to use remote boot functionality. Once you enable an adapter, the status of the boot BIOS changes as shown in Figure 5-3.

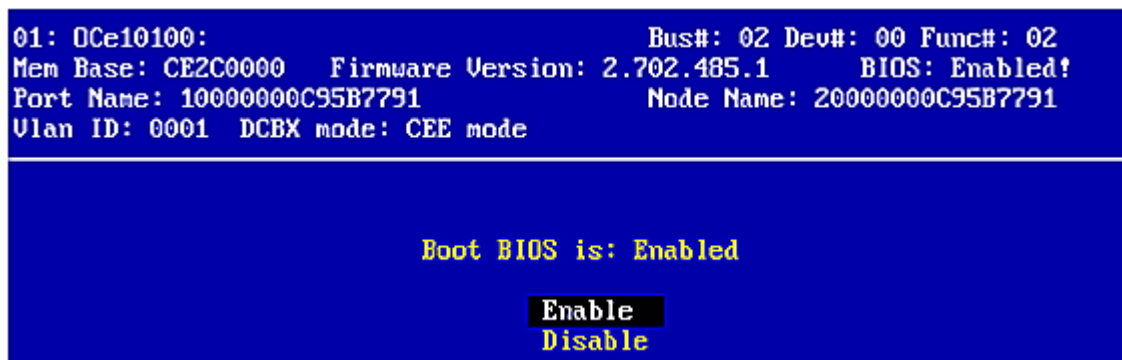


Figure 5-3 BIOS Status

Scanning for Target Devices

To scan for target devices:

1. From the Main configuration menu, select **Scan for Target Devices**. This option only displays a list of discovered target devices. It allows you to quickly verify zoning and SAN connectivity while providing a mechanism to log in ports for zoning.

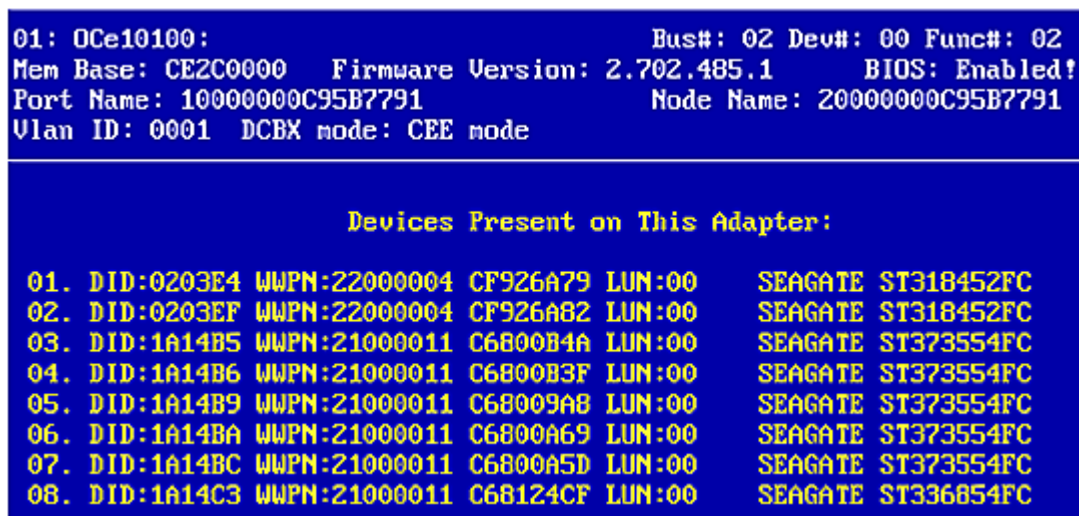


Figure 5-4 Devices Present on the Adapter

2. Press **<Esc>** to return to the Main configuration menu.

Configuring Boot Devices

Note: The FC protocol supports FC-AL (public and private loop) and fabric point-to-point. When operating in loop (FC-AL) topology, the system automatically determines whether it is configured for a public or private loop. The BIOS looks for a fabric loop (FL_Port) first. If a fabric loop is not detected, the BIOS looks for a private loop. The FCoE protocol does not support FC-AL.

To configure boot devices:

1. On the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2), select **Configure Boot Devices** and press **<Enter>**.

A list of eight boot devices is shown (Figure 5-5). Emulex recommends that you configure only the bootable devices. The primary boot device is the first entry shown. It is the first bootable device. If the first boot entry fails due to a hardware error, the system boots from the second bootable entry. If the second boot entry fails, the system boots from the third bootable entry and so on.

01: 0C010100:	Bus#: 02 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02
Mem Base: CE2C0000	Firmware Version: 2.702.485.1 BIOS: Enabled!
Port Name: 10000000C95B7791	Node Name: 20000000C95B7791
Vlan ID: 0001 DCBX mode: CEE mode	

List of Saved Boot Devices:

1. Unused	DID:000000	WWPN:00000000	00000000	LUN:00	Primary
2. Unused	DID:000000	WWPN:00000000	00000000	LUN:00	
3. Unused	DID:000000	WWPN:00000000	00000000	LUN:00	
4. Unused	DID:000000	WWPN:00000000	00000000	LUN:00	
5. Unused	DID:000000	WWPN:00000000	00000000	LUN:00	
6. Unused	DID:000000	WWPN:00000000	00000000	LUN:00	
7. Unused	DID:000000	WWPN:00000000	00000000	LUN:00	
8. Unused	DID:000000	WWPN:00000000	00000000	LUN:00	

Figure 5-5 List of Saved Boot Devices Screen

2. Select a boot entry and press **<Enter>**. A screen similar to Figure 5-6 is displayed.

```

01: DCe10100:                               Bus#: 02 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02
Mem Base: CE2C0000   Firmware Version: 2.702.485.1   BIOS: Enabled!
Port Name: 10000000C95B7791   Node Name: 20000000C95B7791
Vlan ID: 0001   DCBX mode: CEE mode

00. Clear selected boot entry!!
01. DID:0203E4 WWPN:22000004 CF926A79 LUN:00   SEAGATE ST318452FC
02. DID:0203EF WWPN:22000004 CF926A82 LUN:00   SEAGATE ST318452FC
03. DID:1A14B5 WWPN:21000011 C6800B4A LUN:00   SEAGATE ST373554FC
04. DID:1A14B6 WWPN:21000011 C6800B3F LUN:00   SEAGATE ST373554FC
05. DID:1A14B9 WWPN:21000011 C68009A8 LUN:00   SEAGATE ST373554FC
06. DID:1A14BA WWPN:21000011 C6800A69 LUN:00   SEAGATE ST373554FC
07. DID:1A14BC WWPN:21000011 C6800A5D LUN:00   SEAGATE ST373554FC

```

Figure 5-6 Device Selection List Example Screen

Note: To minimize the amount of time needed to locate the boot device, Emulex recommends that you select the drive with the lowest AL_PA as the boot device.

3. Select **<00>** and press **<Enter>** to clear the selected boot entry, or select a device to configure booting by WWPN or DID and press **<Enter>**.
4. If you select a device, you are asked for the starting LUN. Use the up and down arrows to enter the starting LUN in hexadecimal format and press **<Enter>**. (Figure 5-7). The starting LUN can be any number from 0 to 255.

```

01: DCe10100:                               Bus#: 02 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02
Mem Base: CE2C0000   Firmware Version: 2.702.485.1   BIOS: Enabled!
Port Name: 10000000C95B7791   Node Name: 20000000C95B7791
Vlan ID: 0001   DCBX mode: CEE mode

00. Clear sele
01. DID:0203E4
02. DID:0203EF
03. DID:1A14B5
04. DID:1A14B6
05. DID:1A14B9
06. DID:1A14BA
07. DID:1A14BC WWPN:21000011 C6800A5D LUN:00   SEAGATE ST373554FC

```

DID:0203E4 WWPN:22000004 CF926A79

Enter two digits of starting LUN (Hex): **00**

<ESC> to Previous Menu

Figure 5-7 LUN Listing Screen

5. A screen similar to Figure 5-8 is displayed. Press **<Enter>**.

```

01: OCe10100:                               Bus#: 02 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02
Mem Base: CE2C0000   Firmware Version: 2.702.435.1   BIOS: Enabled!
Port Name: 10000000C95B7595   Node Name: 20000000C95B7595
Vlan ID: 0001   DCBX mode: CEE mode

DID:0203E4 WWPN:22000004 CF926A79

01.      LUN:00      SEAGATE ST318452FC      0004

```

Figure 5-8 Boot Device Selected

The Boot Devices menu is displayed.

```

01: OCe10100:                               Bus#: 02 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02
Mem Base: CE2C0000   Firmware Version: 2.702.485.1   BIOS: Enabled!
Port Name: 10000000C95B7791   Node Name: 20000000C95B7791
Vlan ID: 0001   DCBX mode: CEE mode

DID:0203E4 WWPN:22000004 CF926A79 LUN:00

Boot this device via WWPN
Boot this device via DID

<ESC> to Previous Menu
<↑/↓> to Highlight, <Enter> to Select

```

Figure 5-9 Boot Devices Menu

6. Use the up and down arrows to select the boot method. If you select to boot the device by WWPN, the WWPN of the earlier selected entry is saved in the flash memory. However, during the initial BIOS scan, the utility issues a Name Server Inquiry GID_PN (Get Port Identifier). Then, based on this DID, it continues with the remainder of the scanning.

If you select to boot this device by DID, the earlier selected entry is saved in the flash memory.

```

01: OCe10100:                               Bus#: 02 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02
Mem Base: CE2C0000   Firmware Version: 2.702.485.1   BIOS: Enabled!
Port Name: 100000000C95B7791   Node Name: 200000000C95B7791
Vlan ID: 0001   DCBX mode: CEE mode

                                List of Saved Boot Devices:

 1. Unused   DID:000000   WWPN:00000000 00000000 LUN:00 Primary
 2. Used     DID:0203E4   WWPN:00000000 00000000 LUN:00
 3. Unused   DID:000000   WWPN:00000000 00000000 LUN:00
 4. Unused   DID:000000   WWPN:00000000 00000000 LUN:00
 5. Unused   DID:000000   WWPN:00000000 00000000 LUN:00
 6. Unused   DID:000000   WWPN:00000000 00000000 LUN:00
 7. Unused   DID:000000   WWPN:00000000 00000000 LUN:00
 8. Unused   DID:000000   WWPN:00000000 00000000 LUN:00

```

Figure 5-10 Primary Boot Device Set Up Screen

7. Press <Enter> to select the change.
8. Press <Esc> to return to the main configuration menu.
9. Reboot the system for the new boot path to take effect.

Configuring CEE Parameters

Note: For DCBX configuration, the adapter is always in CEE mode.

To configure CEE parameters:

1. If multiple VLANs or FCoE switches are set up and you want to select a particular VLAN to boot from every time, select **Configure FCF CEE Parameters** from the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2) and press <Enter>. A list of discovered FCF is displayed.

```

Adapter Boot Configuration Record:
  U VLAN ID: *Any* Sw Name: ***Match Any*** , Fab Name: ***Match Any***
Boot/Active/Del, <Pg Dn> FCF Sel, <TAB> Field Sel, <ENTER> Save, <ESC> Exit

Select the discovered FCF you wish to write into this Adapter Record:

1.  VLAN ID: 0008, Sw Name: 80EF47EC-0D000920, Fab Name: 81EF47EC-0D000820

```

Figure 5-11 FCF Listing

2. Select the FCF you want to boot from every time and save this to the adapter record by pressing <Enter>. The following message is displayed.

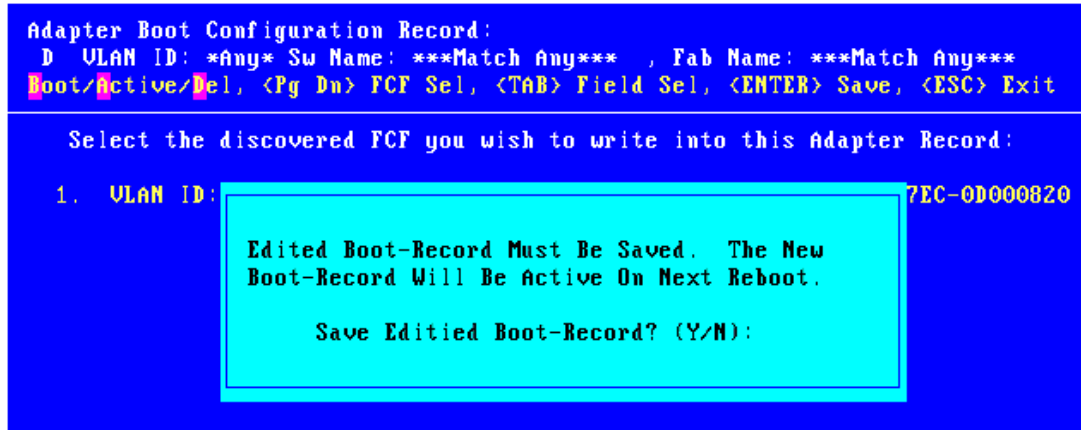


Figure 5-12 Save Edited Boot Record Dialog Box

3. Type <Y> to save the boot record. The main configuration menu is displayed.

Configuring Advanced Adapter Parameters

The BIOS utility has numerous options that can be modified to provide different behavior. Use the BIOS utility to perform the following tasks:

- Change the default AL_PA of the adapter
- Change the PLOGI retry timer
- Enable or disable spinup delay
- Set autoscan
- Enable or disable EDD 3.0
- Enable or disable the start unit command
- Enable or disable the environment variable
- Enable or disable the auto boot sector

To access the adapter configuration menu, from the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2), select **Configure Advanced Adapter Parameters** and press <Enter>. The adapter configuration menu is displayed.

```
01: 0Ce10100:                               Bus#: 02 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02
Mem Base: CE2C0000   Firmware Version: 2.703.269.2   BIOS: Enabled!
Port Name: 10000000C95B7595               Node Name: 20000000C95B7595
Vlan ID: 0001   DCBX mode: CEE mode

Change Default ALPA of this Adapter
Change PLOGI Retry Timer
Enable or Disable Spinup Delay
Auto Scan Setting
Enable or Disable EDD 3.0
Enable or Disable Start Unit Command
Enable or Disable Environment Variable
Enable or Disable Auto Boot Sector
```

Figure 5-13 Advanced Adapter Configuration Menu

Default settings are acceptable for most installations.

To reset all values to their defaults, from the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2), select **Reset Adapter Defaults** and press <Enter>.

Changing the Default AL_PA

The default value of the AL_PA for the adapter BIOS is 00 (hex). All adapters or boot drives can be configured to other AL_PAs rather than their default values.

Note: This option applies only to arbitrated loop (FC-AL). The FCoE protocol does not support FC-AL.

To change the default AL_PA:

1. On the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2), select **Configure Advanced Adapter Parameters** and press <Enter>. The adapter configuration menu is displayed (Figure 5-13).
2. Select **Change Default ALPA** of this adapter and press <Enter>. Information similar to Figure 5-14 is displayed.

```
01: 0Ce10100:                               Bus#: 02 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02
Mem Base: CE2C0000   Firmware Version: 2.702.485.1   BIOS: Enabled!
Port Name: 10000000C95B7791               Node Name: 20000000C95B7791
Vlan ID: 0001   DCBX mode: CEE mode

The Adapter ALPA is: 32

Change Adapter ALPA (HEX) To: 32
```

Figure 5-14 Change Default ALPA Screen

3. Change the default AL_PA, use the up and down arrow keys to scroll through the valid AL_PAs. Table 5-1 lists the valid AL_PA values.
4. Press <Enter> to accept the new value.
5. Press <Esc> to return to the advanced adapter configuration menu.
6. For changes to take effect, reboot the system.

Note: If the adapter's AL_PA is changed, it does not show on the NVRAM AL_PA until the system has been reset.

Table 5-1 Valid AL_PA Values

0x00	0x01	0x02	0x04	0x08	0x0F	0x10	0x17
0x18	0x1B	0x1D	0x1E	0x1F	0x23	0x25	0x26
0x27	0x29	0x2A	0x2B	0x2C	0x2D	0x2E	0x31
0x32	0x33	0x34	0x35	0x36	0x39	0x3A	0x3C
0x43	0x45	0x46	0x47	0x49	0x4A	0x4B	0x4C
0x4D	0x4E	0x51	0x52	0x53	0x54	0x55	0x56
0x59	0x5A	0x5C	0x63	0x65	0x66	0x67	0x69
0x6A	0x6B	0x6C	0x6D	0x6E	0x71	0x72	0x73
0x74	0x75	0x76	0x79	0x7A	0x7C	0x80	0x81
0x82	0x84	0x88	0x8F	0x90	0x97	0x98	0x9B
0x9D	0x9E	0x9F	0xA3	0xA5	0xA6	0xA7	0xA9
0xAA	0xAB	0xAC	0xAD	0xAE	0xB1	0xB2	0xB3
0xB4	0xB5	0xB6	0xB9	0xBA	0xBC	0xC3	0xC5
0xC6	0xC7	0xC9	0xCA	0xCB	0xCC	0xCD	0xCE
0xD1	0xD2	0xD3	0xD4	0xD5	0xD6	0xD9	0xDA
0xDC	0xE0	0xE1	0xE2	0xE4	0xE8	0xEF	

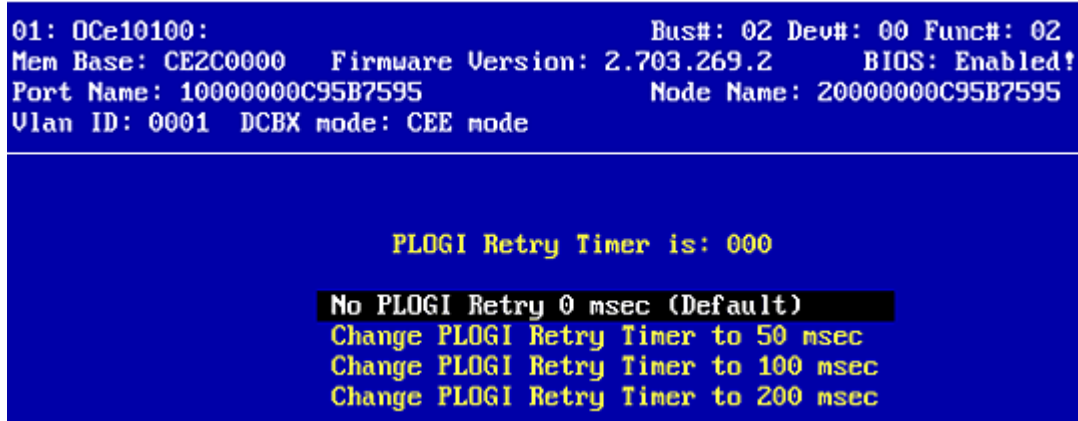
Changing the PLOGI Retry Timer

This option is especially useful for Tachyon-based RAID arrays. Rarely, a Tachyon-based RAID array resets itself and the port goes offline temporarily. When the port returns to operation, the PLOGI retry interval scans the loop to discover this device. The PLOGI retry interval is the time it takes for one PLOGI to scan the whole loop. You can choose:

- No PLOGI Retry: 0 msec – default
- 50 msec takes 5 to 6 seconds per device (if 126 AL_PAs are on the loop)
- 100 msec takes 12 seconds per device (if 126 AL_PAs are on the loop)
- 200 msec takes 22 seconds per device (if 126 AL_PAs are on the loop)

To set the interval for the PLOGI retry timer:

1. On the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2), select **Configure Advanced Adapter Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. The adapter configuration menu is displayed (Figure 5-13).
2. Select **Change PLOGI Retry Timer** and press **<Enter>**. Information similar to Figure 5-15 is displayed.



```
01: 0Ce10100:                               Bus#: 02 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02
Mem Base: CE2C0000   Firmware Version: 2.703.269.2   BIOS: Enabled!
Port Name: 10000000C95B7595   Node Name: 20000000C95B7595
Vlan ID: 0001   DCBX mode: CEE mode

                                PLOGI Retry Timer is: 000

                                No PLOGI Retry 0 msec (Default)
                                Change PLOGI Retry Timer to 50 msec
                                Change PLOGI Retry Timer to 100 msec
                                Change PLOGI Retry Timer to 200 msec
```

Figure 5-15 Change the PLOGI Retry Timer Screen

3. Select the retry timer interval.
4. Press **<Enter>** to accept the new interval.
5. Press **<Esc>** to return to the advanced adapter configuration menu.
6. For changes to take effect, reboot the system.

Enabling or Disabling the Spinup Delay

This option allows you to enable or disable the disk spinup delay. The factory default setting is disabled.

If at least one boot device has been defined, and the spinup delay is enabled, the boot BIOS searches for the first available boot device.

- If a boot device is present, the boot BIOS boots from it immediately.
- If a boot device is not ready, the boot BIOS waits for the spinup delay and, for up to three additional minutes, continues the boot scanning algorithm to find another multi-boot device.

If boot devices have not been defined, and auto scan is enabled, then the boot BIOS waits for five minutes before scanning for devices.

- In a private loop, the boot BIOS attempts to boot from the lowest target AL_PA it finds.
- In an attached fabric, the boot BIOS attempts to boot from the first target found in the NameServer data.

To enable or disable the spinup delay:

1. On the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2), select **Configure Advanced Adapter Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. The adapter configuration menu is displayed (Figure 5-13).
2. Select **Enable or Disable Spinup Delay** and press **<Enter>**. Information similar to Figure 5-16 is displayed.

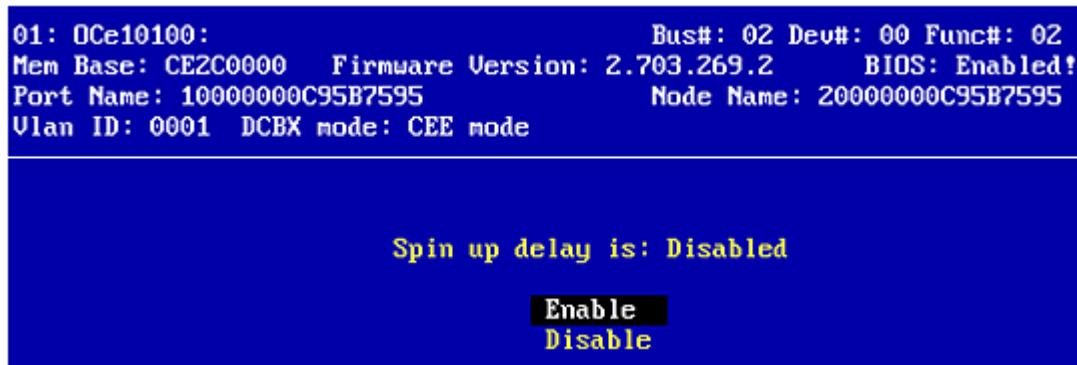


Figure 5-16 Enable or Disable Spinup Delay Screen

3. Select whether to enable or disable spinup delay.
4. Press **<Enter>** to accept the new value.
5. Press **<Esc>** to return to the advanced adapter configuration menu.
6. For changes to take effect, reboot the system.

Setting Auto Scan

This option allows you to set auto scan and enable the first device in the boot entry list to issue a Name Server Inquiry. Auto scan is available only if none of the eight boot entries is configured to boot from DID or WWPN. The factory default is disabled. If there is more than one adapter with the same PCI Bus number in the system, and each has a boot drive attached, the first PCI-scanned adapter is the boot adapter. The first adapter is usually in the lowest PCI slot in the system.

Use the Boot Devices menu (Figure 5-9) to configure up to eight boot entries for fabric point-to-point, public loop or private loop configurations. The first adapter is usually in the lowest PCI slot in the system. This device is the only boot device and it is the only device exported to the multi-boot menu.

Auto scan options:

- Autoscan disabled – default.
- Any first device – The first adapter issues a Name Server Inquiry and the first D_ID from the inquiry becomes the boot device. The adapter attempts to log in to a public loop first. If it fails, it logs in to a private loop. The first successfully scanned device becomes the boot device. This device only is exported to the multi-boot menu.
- First LUN 0 device
- First NOT LUN 0 device (a device other than LUN 0)

To set auto scan:

1. From the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2), select **Configure Advanced Adapter Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. The adapter configuration menu is displayed (Figure 5-13).
2. Select **Auto Scan Setting** and press **<Enter>**. Figure 5-17 is displayed.

```

01: 0Ce10100:                               Bus#: 02 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02
Mem Base: CE2C0000   Firmware Version: 2.703.269.2   BIOS: Enabled!
Port Name: 10000000C95B7595   Node Name: 20000000C95B7595
Vlan ID: 0001   DCBX mode: CEE mode

Auto scan setting: Autoscan disabled (Default)

Autoscan disabled (Default)
Any first device
First LUN 0 device
First NOT LUN 0 device

```

Figure 5-17 Set Auto Scan Menu

3. Select the appropriate auto scan option.
4. Press **<Enter>** to accept the new scan option.
5. Press **<Esc>** to return to the advanced adapter configuration menu.
6. For changes to take effect, reboot the system.

Enabling or Disabling EDD 3.0

EDD 3.0 provides additional data to the operating system boot loader during an INT-13h function 48h call (get device parameters). This information includes the path to the boot device and the disk size. The default setting for EDD 3.0 is disabled (EDD 2.1).

To enable or disable EDD 3.0:

1. From the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2), select **Configure Advanced Adapter Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. The adapter configuration menu is displayed (Figure 5-13).
2. Select **Enable or Disable EDD 3.0** and press **<Enter>**. The EDD 3.0 configuration screen is displayed.

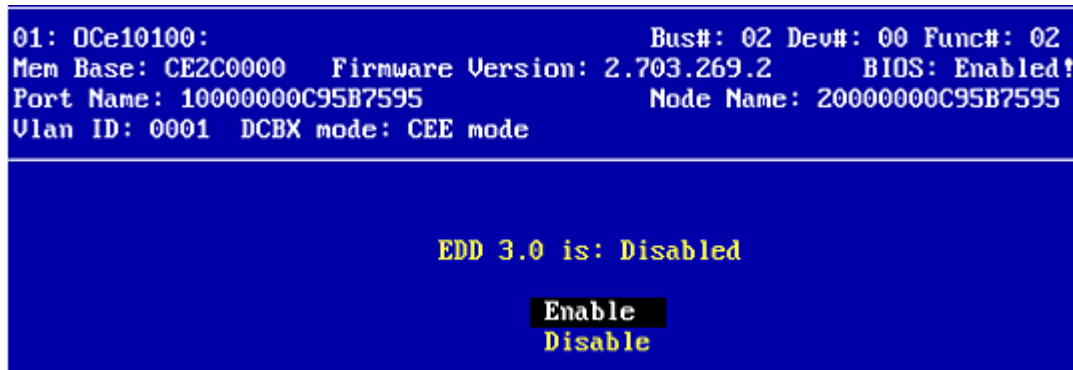


Figure 5-18 Enable or Disable EDD 3.0 Screen

3. Select whether to enable or disable EDD 3.0.
4. Press **<Enter>** to accept the change.
5. Press **<Esc>** to return to the advanced adapter configuration menu.
6. For changes to take effect, reboot the system.

Enabling or Disabling the Start Unit Command

You must know the specific LUN to issue the SCSI start unit command. The default setting is disabled.

To enable or disable the start unit command:

1. From the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2), select **Configure Advanced Adapter Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. The adapter configuration menu is displayed (Figure 5-13).
2. Select **Enable or Disable Start Unit Command** and press **<Enter>**. The Start Unit Command configuration screen is displayed.

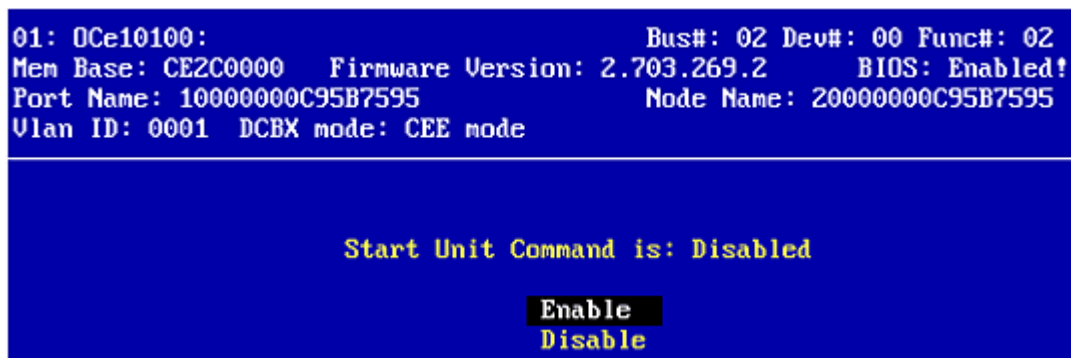


Figure 5-19 Enable or Disable Start Unit Command Screen

3. Select whether to enable or disable the start unit command.
4. Press **<Enter>** to select the change.
5. Press **<Esc>** to return to the advanced adapter configuration menu.
6. For changes to take effect, reboot the system.

Enabling or Disabling the Environment Variable

Sets the boot controller order if the system supports the environment variable. The default setting is disabled.

To enable or disable the environment variable:

1. From the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2), select **Configure Advanced Adapter Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. The adapter configuration menu is displayed (Figure 5-13).
2. Select **Enable or Disable Environment Variable** and press **<Enter>**. The Environment Variable configuration screen is displayed.

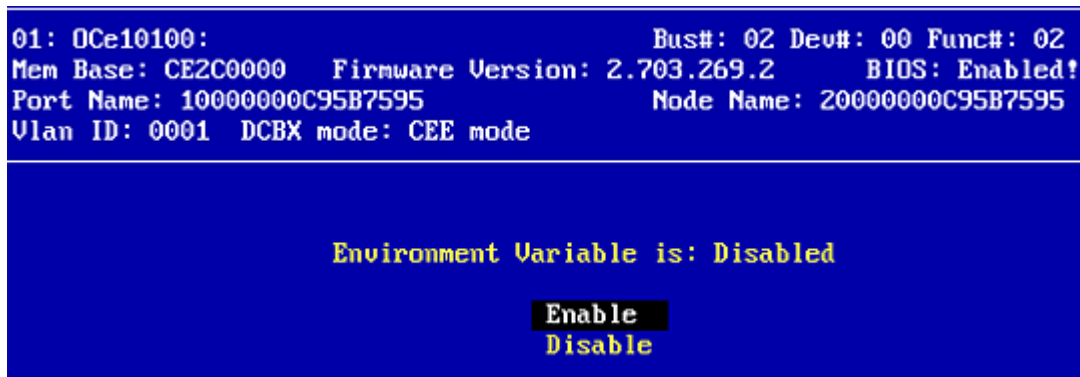


Figure 5-20 Enable or Disable Environment Variable Screen

3. Select whether to enable or disable the environment variable.
4. Press **<Enter>** to select the change.
5. Press **<Esc>** to return to the advanced adapter configuration menu.
6. For changes to take effect, reboot the system.

Enabling or Disabling Auto Boot Sector

This option automatically defines the boot sector of the target disk for the migration boot process, which applies only to HP MSA1000 arrays. If there is no partition on the target, the default boot sector format is 63 sectors. The default setting is disabled.

To enable or disable the auto boot sector format:

1. From the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2), select **Configure Advanced Adapter Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. The adapter configuration menu is displayed (Figure 5-13).
2. Select **Enable or Disable Auto Boot Sector** and press **<Enter>**. The Auto Boot Sector configuration screen is displayed.

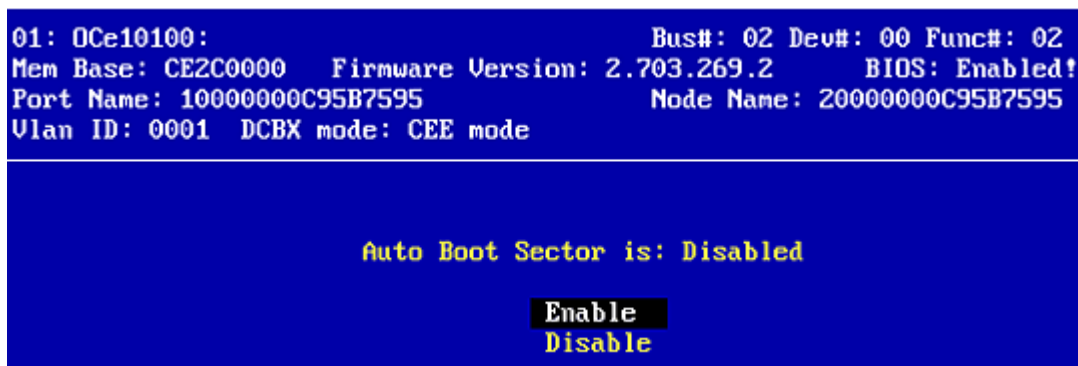


Figure 5-21 Enable or Disable Auto Boot Sector Format Screen

3. Select whether to enable or disable the auto boot sector.
4. Press **<Enter>** to accept the new value.
5. Press **<Esc>** to return to the advanced adapter configuration menu.
6. For changes to take effect, reboot the system.

Using Multi-Path Boot from SAN

Multi-boot BIOS is in compliance with BBS. The system must have a Multi-boot system BIOS in order to take advantage of this option. The Multi-boot BIOS allows you to select any boot disk in the system BIOS setup menu. The boot disk can be an FC drive, a SCSI drive, an IDE drive, a USB device, or a floppy drive. The Emulex BIOS supplies the first eight drives to the system BIOS menu. The Multi-boot BIOS can override the FC drive that is selected in the BIOS utility.

For example, the system has eight FC disks only. The boot disk has AL_PA 02. However, you can select AL_PA 23 in the system BIOS setup menu. The boot device is the FC disk with AL_PA 23 instead of AL_PA 02, as is set in the BIOS utility.

If your system supports Multi-boot BBS, the local boot disk (drive C) is the first entry in Multi-boot on the system BIOS setup menu. The list of entries is determined by the list of configured boot entries in the BIOS utility. For example:

```

Adapter 1: boot_entry0, boot_entry1
Adapter 2: boot_entry2, boot_entry3
  
```

The order of boot entries exported to Multi-boot (BBS) is

`boot_entry0`, `boot_entry1`, `boot_entry2`, and `boot_entry3`.

However, Multi-boot allows changing the boot order in the server BIOS, which allows any disk to become the C drive.

Resetting to Default Values

The BIOS utility enables you to reset BIOS boot parameters to their factory default settings. These defaults are listed in Table 5-2.

Table 5-2 Default Adapter Boot Parameter Values

Parameter	Default Value	Valid Values
Boot from SAN	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
AL_PA Value	0x00 Fibre	See Table 5-1, Valid AL_PA Values.
EDD 3.0	Disabled (EDD 2.1)	Enabled (EDD 3.0) Disabled (EDD 2.1)
PLOGI Retry Timer	Disabled	Disabled 50 msec 100 msec 200 msec
Spinup Delay	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
Auto Scan	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
Start Unit	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
Environmental Variable	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
Auto Boot Sector	Disabled	Enabled Disabled

To reset parameters to their factory default settings:

1. On the main configuration menu (Figure 5-2) select **Reset Adapter Defaults** and press **<Enter>**. A screen is displayed that asks if you want to reset to the defaults.

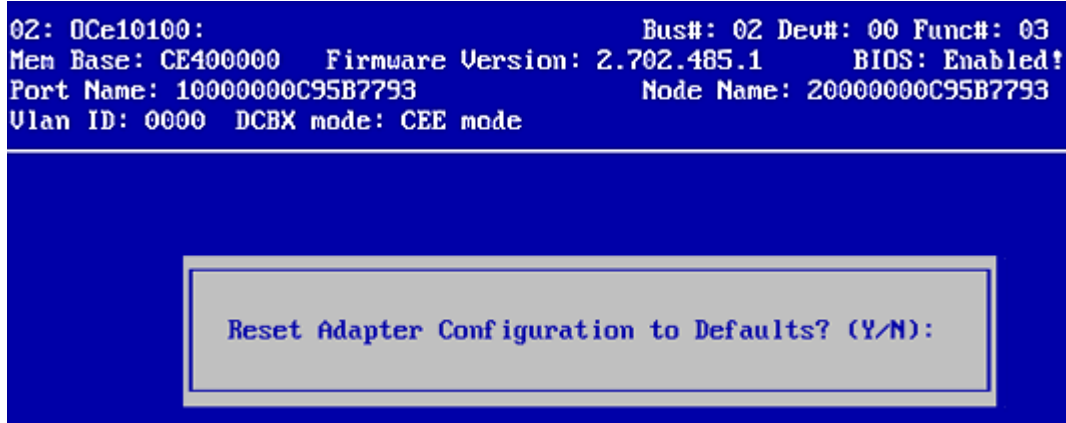


Figure 5-22 Reset Adapter Configuration to Defaults Screen

2. Press **<Y>**. All settings revert to their factory default values.
3. Press **<Esc>** to go to the previous menu.

6. Installing, Updating, and Enabling Boot Code

Emulex provides utilities to install, update, and enable boot code. The utility that you use depends on the operating system and, in some cases, the driver type or system architecture. Table 6-1 indicates the utilities that are currently available for each operating system.

Table 6-1 Utilities that Install, Update, and Enable Boot Code

Operating System	OneCommand Manager Application	HBACmd Utility	Offline Utilities
Windows	✓	✓	✓
Linux	✓	✓	✓
Citrix	✓	✓	✓
VMware	✓	✓	✓

Note: For VMware operating systems, the OneCommand Manager application GUI and CLI are not supported locally, but can be managed remotely using a Windows system.

For the Citrix operating systems, the OneCommand Manager application CLI is not supported locally, but can be managed using a remote system. The OneCommand Manager GUI application is not supported.

After you decide which utility to use, see the appropriate documentation for the proper procedures:

- OneCommand Manager application: see the *OneCommand Manager Application User Manual*.
- HBACmd utility: see the *OneCommand Manager Application CLI User Manual*.
- Offline utility: see the *Offline Utilities User Manual*.

7. Configuring iSCSI Boot Support with the iSCSISelect Utility

This section provides quick installation instructions for setting up a basic boot configuration. For more information on setting up an iSCSI initiator and adding an iSCSI target, see chapter 8., “Configuring and Managing the iSCSI Initiator with the iSCSISelect Utility,” on page 82 and chapter 9., “Configuring and Managing iSCSI Targets with the iSCSISelect Utility,” on page 93.

Navigating the iSCSISelect Utility

Use the following methods to navigate the iSCSISelect utility:

- Press the up/down arrows on your keyboard to move through and select menu options or configuration fields. When multiple adapters are listed, use the up/down arrows to scroll to the additional adapters.
- Press **<Tab>** to move to the next field, and **<Shift> <Tab>** to move to the previous field.
- Press **<Enter>** to accept a selection, select a menu option, to select a row in a configuration screen, or to change a configuration default.
- Press **<Esc>** to return to the previous menu or page, cancel a selection or dialog box, or exit the utility.

Setting Up a Basic iSCSI Boot Configuration

By setting up a basic iSCSI boot configuration, you can configure your initiator, contact network devices, and set up an iSCSI boot target. With iSCSI boot capability, the iSCSISelect utility can quickly and easily provide the target LUN disk to the operating system through the BIOS. After setting up a basic iSCSI boot configuration, you can continue to use the iSCSISelect utility to manage your OneConnect Server iSCSI SAN environment.

When setting up a basic iSCSI boot configuration you must do the following:

- Configure the iSCSI initiator name and enable boot support
- Configure the network properties
- Add an iSCSI target and enable it as a boot target
- Set your boot LUN
- Reboot your system

To set up a basic iSCSI Boot configuration:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.
2. From the iSCSI Initiator Configuration menu, set the initiator name.

3. Select **Save** and press <Enter> to save your initiator name.

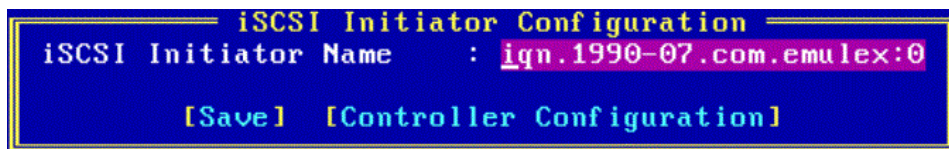


Figure 7-1 iSCSI Initiator Configuration Menu

4. Select **Controller Configuration** and press <Enter>. If you are running a single controller, the Controller Configuration menu is displayed (Figure 7-3). If you are running multiple controllers, the Controller Selection menu is displayed (Figure 7-2).

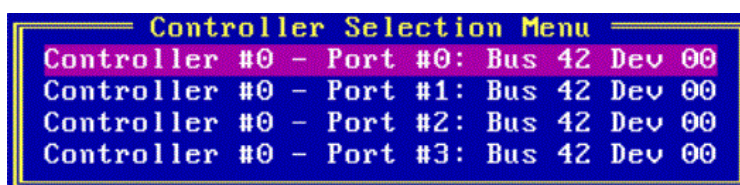


Figure 7-2 Controller Selection Menu

5. From the Controller Selection menu, select your controller and port then press <Enter>. For more information, see “Selecting a Controller” on page 83.
6. After you have selected your controller, the Controller Configuration menu appears.

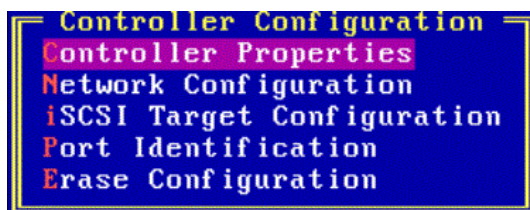


Figure 7-3 Controller Configuration Menu

7. From this menu, select **Controller Properties** and press <Enter>. The Controller Properties screen appears. For more information on the Controller Properties screen, see “Viewing the Controller Properties” on page 84.

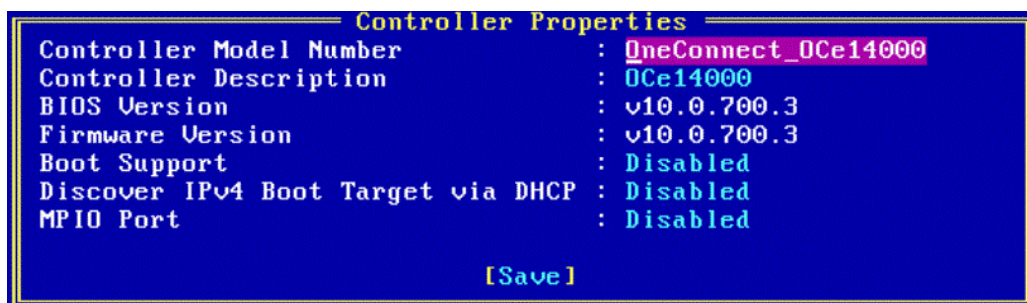


Figure 7-4 Controller Properties Screen

8. Ensure Boot Support is set to Enabled.
9. Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

10. From the Controller Configuration menu, select **Network Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. The Network Configuration screen appears.

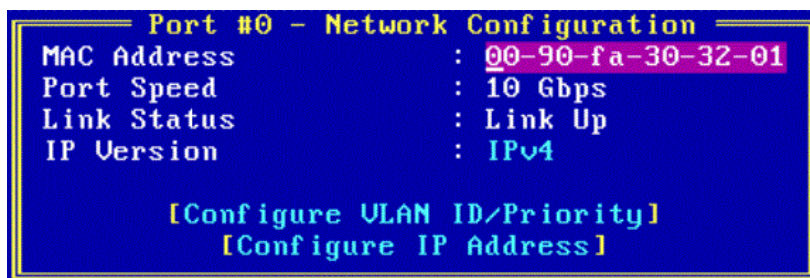


Figure 7-5 Network Configuration Screen

11. Configure a network IP address. From the Network Configuration screen, you can do the following:
 - Select the IP version. You can choose IPv4 or IPv6. For more information, see “Selecting the IP Version” on page 87.
 - Set up an IP address. For more information, see “Configuring the IP Address” on page 88.
12. If desired, configure a VLAN ID. For more information, see “Configuring VLAN ID and VLAN Priority” on page 87.
13. After configuring the network, you can add a SCSI target. From the Controller Configuration menu, select **iSCSI Target Configuration**, then select **Add a New iSCSI Target**. For more information, see “Adding iSCSI Targets” on page 93.
14. After you have successfully configured the iSCSI initiator and target, reboot the system.

Booting the System

After you have successfully set up your basic boot configuration, exit the iSCSISelect utility and the system automatically reboots. During the next boot up, the iSCSI BIOS logs into the configured iSCSI boot target and display its target/LUN information in the BIOS sign-on banner. For example:

```

Controller#0 Port#0 Base 0xFCE60000 at Bus:01 Dev:00 Fun:02
Controller#0 Port#1 Base 0xFCEA0000 at Bus:01 Dev:00 Fun:03

<<< Press <Ctrl><S> for iSCSISelect(TM) Utility >>>

Initiator iSCSI Name:  iqn.2004-05.com.emulex
Initiator IP Address:  172. 40.  1.41
Initiator IP Address:  172. 40.  1.62

Drive #0 NETAPP    LUN 0   2048 MB
Drive Geometry    105     3FFF
BIOS Installed Successfully!
  
```

8. Configuring and Managing the iSCSI Initiator with the iSCSISelect Utility

The iSCSI initiator or host (also known as the iSCSI client) is a system such as a server, which attaches to an IP network and initiates requests and receives responses from an iSCSI target. Each iSCSI host is identified by a unique IQN.

Once you have an initiator host system running, you must configure the initiator to allow access to the iSCSI SAN. To do this, you must:

1. Configure the iSCSI initiator name.
2. Select a controller. For additional information, see “Selecting a Controller” on page 83.
3. Configure network properties. For additional information, see “Configuring Network Properties” on page 86.

Configuring the iSCSI Initiator Name

The iSCSI initiator name is a unique identifier for the initiator on the network and configures target access. It must be unique to that system on the network and is identified by an IQN. The iSCSI initiator name is global to the entire system. The iSCSI initiator name must also match the target's ACL. After you log into the iSCSISelect utility, you can configure the iSCSI initiator name from the iSCSI Initiator Configuration screen.

Note: When installing Microsoft software iSCSI initiator service, the iSCSI initiator name for OneConnect will change and any IQN name previously configured through the iSCSISelect utility will be overridden. Though this will not affect existing boot sessions and persistent sessions, new target logins may fail because the new IQN name may not match the incoming initiator IQN names configured on the target. To avoid this situation, after installing Microsoft software, you must rename the IQN name to the previous IQN name you had configured.

To configure the iSCSI initiator name:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing <Ctrl+S> when prompted. After the BIOS initializes, the iSCSI Initiator Configuration screen appears.
2. Set or change the iSCSI initiator name from this screen.

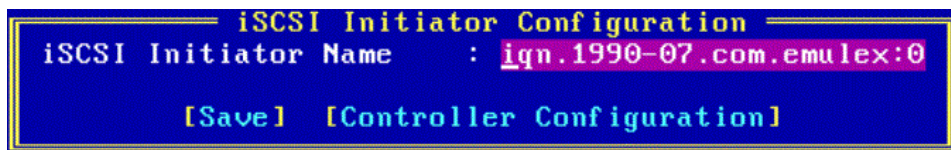


Figure 8-1 iSCSI Initiator Configuration Screen

Note: If there are multiple controllers in your system, your iSCSI Initiator name may be different for each controller. If this happens, an error message indicates an Initiator iSCSI Name mismatch. You must save a new initiator

name on this menu so that the iSCSI Initiator Name on all the controllers match. If there were pre-existing sessions before the iSCSI Initiator Name change, the pre-existing sessions use the original name that was used to login the very first time. The new name is used for any sessions added after the name change.

3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>** to save the iSCSI initiator name. If you select **Controller Configuration** without saving the changes, a warning message will appear stating that your settings will be lost and asking whether you want to cancel or not. Press **<Y>** and you will lose your changes. Press **<N>** and you will return to the iSCSI Initiator Configuration screen.

Selecting a Controller

After you configure an iSCSI initiator name, select a controller to configure the iSCSI target. If you are running the iSCSISelect utility with multiple controllers, all the controllers are listed in the Controller Selection menu. Figure 8-2 is an example of the Controller Selection menu.

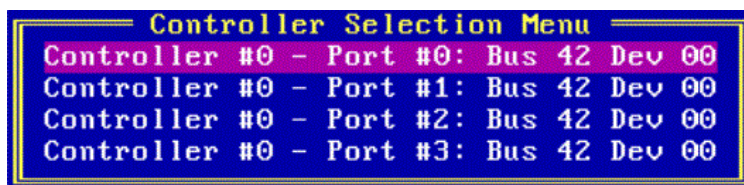


Figure 8-2 Controller Selection Menu

After you select the controller, the Controller Configuration menu appears. From this menu, you can configure and manage the iSCSI initiator and target(s).



Figure 8-3 Controller Configuration Menu

If you are not sure that you are configuring the correct port, you can check by either:

- Performing port identification. For additional information, see “Identifying a Port” on page 92.
- Checking the link status in the Network Configuration menu. Connect the controller port to a 10 Gb/s switch port and check the link status in the Network Configuration menu. If the status is Link Up, it is the correct controller port.

Note: Make sure you back out of the Network Configuration menu to the Controller Configuration menu before checking the Network Configuration menu. This allows the Link Status field to refresh when you insert or remove the cable from the controller.

Viewing the Controller Properties

The Controller Properties screen displays controller information and allows you to configure controller options, such as boot support, IPv4 boot target discovery using DHCP, and MPIO port configuration.

To view the controller properties:

1. From the Controller Configuration menu (Figure 8-3), select **Controller Properties** and press **<Enter>**. The Controller Properties screen is displayed.

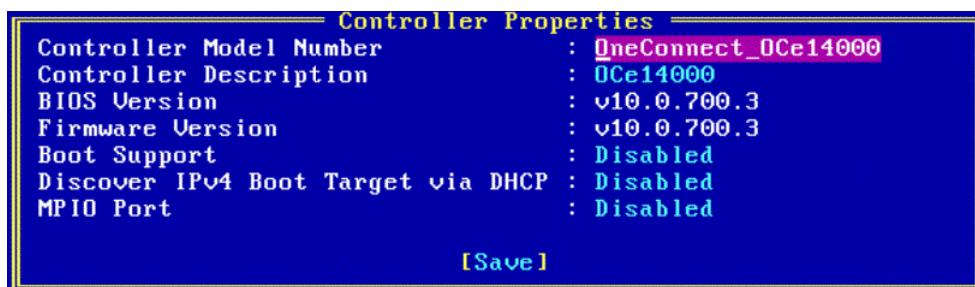


Figure 8-4 Controller Properties Screen

Enabling Boot Support

Boot support is provided for each port or function. If boot support is enabled, you can boot from the specified function. If boot support is disabled, you will not be able to boot from the function.

To enable boot support:

1. From the Controller Properties screen (Figure 8-4), select **Boot Support** and press **<Enter>**. A drop-down menu appears.



Figure 8-5 Controller Properties Screen with Boot Support Drop-down Menu

2. From the drop-down menu, select **Enabled** or **Disabled** and press **<Enter>**.
3. To save your changes, select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

Enabling IPv4 Boot Target Discovery using DHCP

To enable IPv4 boot target discovery using DHCP:

1. From the Controller Properties screen (Figure 8-4), select **Discover IPv4 Boot Target via DHCP** and press **<Enter>**. A drop-down menu appears.

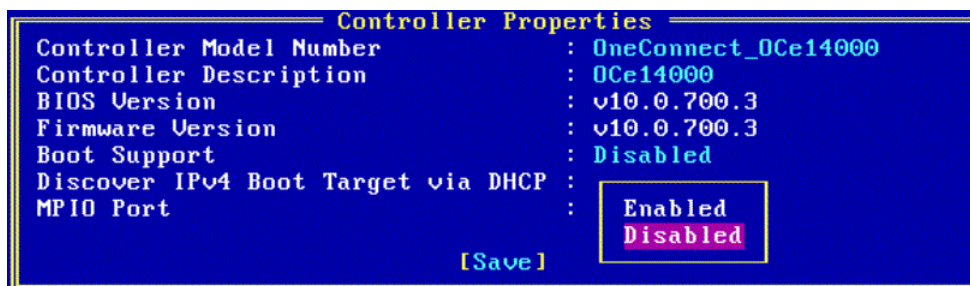


Figure 8-6 Controller Properties Screen with Discover IPv4 Boot Target via DHCP Drop-down Menu

2. From the drop-down menu, select **Enabled** or **Disabled** and press **<Enter>**.
3. To save your changes, select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

Enabling the MPIO Port

MPIO support allows the initiator to log in dual sessions to the same target. In this way I/O can be sent over either TCP/IP connection to the target. If one session fails another session can continue processing I/O without interruption to the application. In iSCSI target configuration, you have the option of setting dual network paths to a single boot LUN.

Note: Although MPIO boot support allows the initiator to log into multiple sessions, the iSCSI BIOS currently limits the number of sessions to two iSCSI sessions for a single boot LUN.

You must follow these steps in this order to configure MPIO boot support for each operating system.

1. Use the Emulex iSCSI configuration utility to configure the first path to a boot target.
2. Complete normal operating system installation.
3. Install third-party MPIO software for your operating system.
4. Configure the second path to a single boot LUN through the Emulex iSCSI configuration utility.

To enable MPIO support:

1. From the Controller Properties screen (Figure 8-4), select **MPIO Port** and press **<Enter>**. A drop-down menu appears.



Figure 8-7 Controller Properties Screen with MPIO Port Drop-down Menu

2. From the drop-down menu, select **Enabled** or **Disabled** and press **<Enter>**.
3. To save your changes, select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring Network Properties

The Network Configuration screen displays the MAC address, port speed, and link status for the adapter. From the Network Configuration screen, you can configure the following items:

- IP version
- VLAN ID/priority
- IPv4 or IPv6 address

To view the network configuration:

1. From the Controller Configuration menu (Figure 8-3), select **Network Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. The Network Configuration screen is displayed.

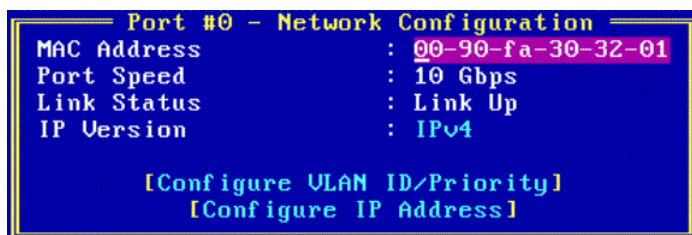


Figure 8-8 Network Configuration Screen

Selecting the IP Version

To select the IP version:

1. From the Network Configuration screen (Figure 8-8), select **IP Version** and press **<Enter>**. A drop-down menu appears.

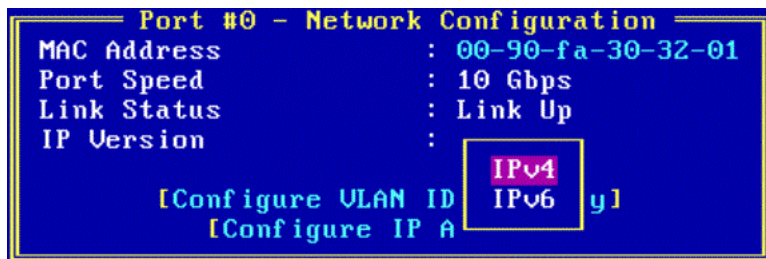


Figure 8-9 Network Configuration Screen with IP Version Drop-down Menu

2. From the drop-down menu, select **IPv4** or **IPv6** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring VLAN ID and VLAN Priority

A Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) is a way of partitioning the network. If the LAN is made up of all devices within a broadcast domain, a VLAN is a broadcast domain made up of switches. You first create a VLAN and then assign ports to a VLAN. All ports in a single VLAN are in a single broadcast domain.

You do not have to configure VLANs unless your network is already using them. Some reasons why VLANs are used include:

- A LAN increases in size with several devices
- A LAN has increased broadcast traffic on it
- Groups of users on a LAN need more security

A VLAN ID, like an IP address or initiator name, is assigned a value to uniquely identify it on a network. A VLAN priority is set to determine what packet gets priority order within a VLAN.

To configure a VLAN ID and VLAN priority:

1. On the Network Configuration screen (Figure 8-8), select **Configure VLAN ID/Priority** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure VLAN ID/Priority screen appears.

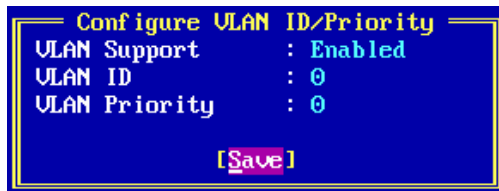


Figure 8-10 Configure VLAN ID/Priority Screen

2. Select the VLAN Support drop-down menu and select **Enabled**.
3. Set a VLAN ID number. This is a unique value you assign to each VLAN on a single device. There are a maximum of 4095 possible values ranging from 0-4094.

4. Set a VLAN Priority, if necessary. This unique value assigns a priority to outbound packets containing a specified VLAN ID. Valid values range from 0 -7, with 0 the highest priority level.
5. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.
6. Press **<Esc>** to return to the Network Configuration screen.

Configuring the IP Address

The IP address is a logical address for the controller and uniquely identifies the system on a TCP/IP network. Depending on the IP version that you selected, you can either configure an IPv4 address or an IPv6 address.

Configuring the IPv4 Address

The IP address can be determined statically (manually assigned) or dynamically (with the DHCP server to obtain an IP address). The method that you choose depends on your network configuration. If your network uses a DHCP configuration, then you can enable DHCP and obtain an IP address from the DHCP server. If a DHCP server is not available, you must configure a static IP address.

Note: For all Linux-based operating systems, Emulex recommends that you enable DHCP when attempting to assign an IP address to an iSCSI port. This should be done as the iSCSI firmware will not detect it as a duplicate IP address if one already exists on a Linux server. Otherwise, you must manually ensure there are no duplicate IP addresses before assigning an IP address.

Note: If you are using target discovery through DHCP, you must add the root path to the DHCP server and enable DHCP discovery through the iSCSISelect utility.

To configure an IPv4 address:

1. On the Network Configuration screen (Figure 8-8), ensure that the IP Version is set to IPv4.
2. Select **Configure IP Address** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure IPv4 Address screen appears.

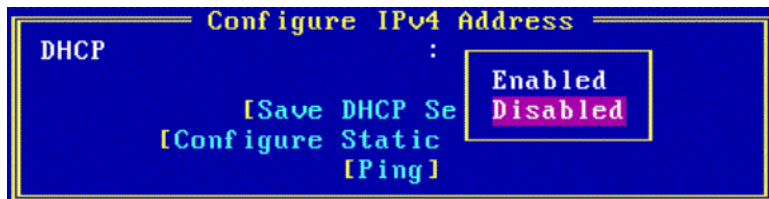


Figure 8-11 Configure IPv4 Address Screen

3. From the Configure IPV4 Address screen, you can do the following:
 - Enable DHCP for automatic assignment of the IP address through a DHCP server. See “Enabling DHCP” on page 89 for more information.
 - Configure a static IP address (when DHCP is disabled). See “Configuring a Static IPv4 Address” on page 90 for more information.

- Ping the iSCSI initiator. See “Pinging the iSCSI Initiator” on page 91 for more information.

Enabling DHCP

Enabling DHCP provides the initiator with an IP address.

Note: If you are using the DHCP server to obtain an IP address for your iSCSI initiator, set up a reservation. A reservation assigns a specific IP address based on the MAC address of your iSCSI function. If you do not reserve an IP address through DHCP, then you must set the lease length for the iSCSI initiator IP address to unlimited. This prevents the IP address lease from expiring.

To enable DHCP:

1. From the Configure IPV4 Address screen (Figure 8-11), select **Enabled** from the DHCP drop-down menu and press **<Enter>**.
2. Select **Save DHCP Settings** and press **<Enter>**. The DHCP IP Address dialog box appears. For example:

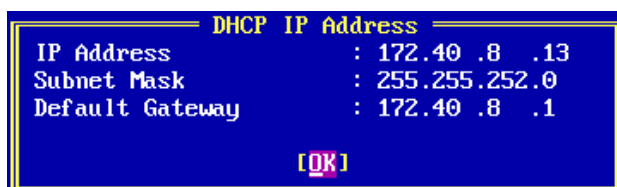


Figure 8-12 DHCP IP Address Dialog Box

Note: If you have set a static IP address, a message warns that the static IP address will be lost. Press **<Y>** to continue with enabling DHCP.

Configuring the IPv6 Address

To configure an IPv6 address:

1. On the Network Configuration screen (Figure 8-8), ensure that the IP Version is set to IPv6.
2. Select **Configure IP Address** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure IPv6 Address screen appears.



Figure 8-13 Configure IPv6 Address Screen

3. From the Configure IPV6 Address screen, you can do the following:
 - Enable auto-configuration for automatic assignment of the IP address. See “Enabling DHCP” on page 89 for more information.
 - Configure a static IP address (when Auto Configuration is disabled). See “Configuring a Static IPv6 Address” on page 91 for more information.

- Ping the iSCSI initiator. See “Pinging the iSCSI Initiator” on page 91 for more information.

Enabling Auto Configuration

To automatically configure the IPv6 address, from the Configure IPV6 Address screen (Figure 8-13), select **Enabled** from the Auto Configuration drop-down menu and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring a Static IPv4 Address

If a DHCP server is not available, you must manually configure a static IPv4 address.

To configure a static IP address:

1. From the Configure IPV4 Address screen (Figure 8-11), select **Configure Static IP Address** and press **<Enter>**.

Note: If you have DHCP enabled, a message warns that the DHCP IP Address will be lost. Press **<Y>** to continue to configure a static IP address.

The Static IP Address dialog box is displayed.

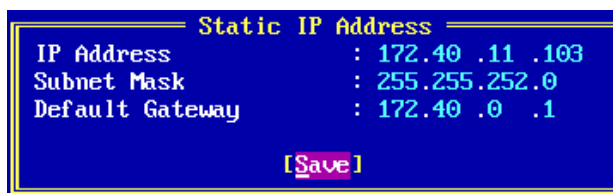


Figure 8-14 Static IP Address Dialog Box for IPv4

2. Enter the IP address. This is a unique 32-bit address that specifies the location of each device or workstation in the network. This address is required for communication to the iSCSI SAN. For an initiator with its own network interface, you must assign an IP address in the same range as the iSCSI SAN.
3. Enter the subnet mask. The subnet mask provides a way to segment networks. All hosts (iSCSI initiators or targets) on the same physical network usually have the same subnet mask. For example, Figure 8-14 shows the initiator in the subnet 255.255.xxx.xxx. All the hosts (initiators or targets) in a sub-network will have the same subnet mask.
4. Enter the default gateway information, if necessary. A gateway is a router on a computer network that serves as an access point to another network and that an initiator uses by default. Any data to addresses not on the initiator's subnet are sent through the default gateway.
5. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>** to save the settings.
6. You are prompted to save the changes, type **<Y>**.
7. Press **<Esc>** to return to the Network Configuration screen.

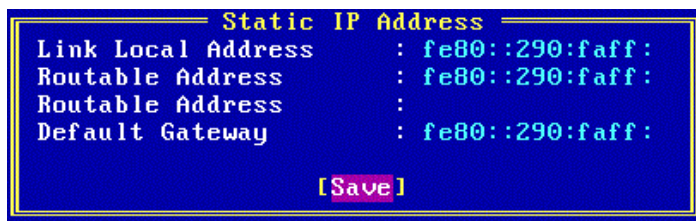
Configuring a Static IPv6 Address

If Auto Configuration is disabled, you must manually configure a static IPv6 address.

To configure a static IP address:

1. From the Configure IPV6 Address screen (Figure 8-13), select **Configure Static IP Address** and press **<Enter>**.

The Static IP Address dialog box is displayed.



The dialog box titled "Static IP Address" has a blue background and yellow border. It contains the following text:

```

Link Local Address : fe80::290:faff:
Routable Address  : fe80::290:faff:
Routable Address  :
Default Gateway   : fe80::290:faff:
  
```

At the bottom center, there is a pink button labeled "[Save]".

Figure 8-15 Static IP Address Dialog Box for IPv6

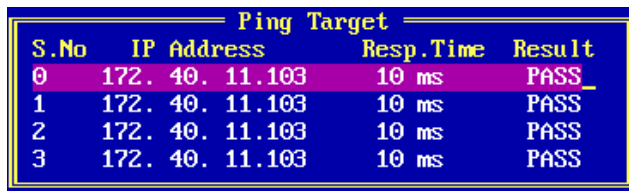
2. Enter the link local address, two routable addresses, and default gateway address in the corresponding fields.
3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>** to save the settings.
4. You are prompted to save the changes, type **<Y>**.
5. Press **<Esc>** to return to the Network Configuration screen.

Pinging the iSCSI Initiator

After you configure the IPv4 or IPv6 address, you can confirm your network settings by pinging the network. The ping option checks whether the IP address is on the network. If there is another IP entity on that network when you ping, you receive a ping reply back to confirm the network settings. Ping can be a diagnostic tool but it is also a validation that your network is set up properly prior to target login.

To verify that a target is accessible and that you are connected to the network:

1. From the Configure IPV4 Address screen (Figure 8-11) or Configure IPV6 Address screen (Figure 8-13), select **Ping** and press **<Enter>**.
2. In the Ping Target dialog box, enter the IP address of the iSCSI device you want to ping. You are notified that the ping is successful. If the ping is unsuccessful, you will receive a failed message. For more information, see "Troubleshooting for the iSCSI Protocol" on page 194. Figure 8-16 is an example of a successful ping.



The screen titled "Ping Target" displays a table with the following data:

S.No	IP Address	Resp.Time	Result
0	172. 40. 11.103	10 ms	PASS
1	172. 40. 11.103	10 ms	PASS
2	172. 40. 11.103	10 ms	PASS
3	172. 40. 11.103	10 ms	PASS

Figure 8-16 Successful Ping Screen

Note: The Ping works for any IP address that supports ICMP (Echo).

If you cannot verify the network interface, there may be a number of reasons why. For more information, see “Troubleshooting for the iSCSI Protocol” on page 194.

Identifying a Port

Port identification, or beaconing, helps you physically determine which port you are configuring by blinking both the link and the activity LEDs of that port.

LEDs blink on the back of the server so that there is no confusion as to which physical port you are configuring with the iSCSISelect utility. Port identification allows you to correlate the iSCSI software configuration with the hardware port.

Note: Not all controllers have LEDs that are externally visible. If you are using an add-in card in a blade server environment, the port identification or beaconing capability does not work.

To identify a port, from the Controller Configuration menu, select **Port Identification** and press **<Enter>**. The LED status indicators for the selected port blink on the controller until you select **Done** and press **<Enter>** on the Port Identification screen.

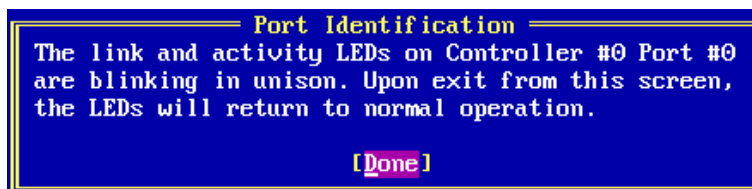


Figure 8-17 Port Identification Screen

Erasing the Current Configuration

Erase Configuration erases the configuration of a single controller. Configuration data is erased for both ports on the selected controller. The initiator name is global for all OneConnect controllers in the system. If you have more than one controller and you erase the configuration on the first controller, the Erase Configuration option resets the initiator name back to their default values. If you erase the configuration on the second controller, the default values are only reset for the second controller and are not reset globally on both controllers.

Note: You must select **Erase Configuration** to clear out existing IQN data if you purchase a different or subsequent license for the adapter.

To erase a controller configuration:

1. From the Controller Configuration menu, select **Erase Configuration** and press **<Enter>**.
2. A message appears asking if you want to erase the current configuration. Type **<Y>**.
3. You are cautioned that the operation removes any existing configuration permanently. Type **<Y>**.

When the controller configuration is erased, the Controller Configuration menu is displayed.

9. Configuring and Managing iSCSI Targets with the iSCSISelect Utility

An iSCSI target is any device that receives iSCSI commands. The device can be an end node, such as a storage device, or it can be an intermediate device, such as a bridge between IP and FC devices. Each iSCSI target is identified by a unique IQN, and each port on the controller (or on a bridge) is identified by one or more IP addresses.

As the client system, the initiator initiates disk I/O. It communicates with the target and the target serves the initiator by providing resources to the initiator.

Once you configure your iSCSI initiator and verified that your network interface is working, you can log into your target to establish your connection. To do this, you must:

- Perform a login to the target (adding a target)
- Ping a target and verify that you can connect to it
- Reboot the system

Adding iSCSI Targets

Once the initiator has been configured you need a process that shows you how to make an iSCSI target available to that initiator host. The discovery process presents an initiator with a list of available targets. The discovery methods used for discovering targets are:

- SendTargets discovery
- Manually configuring targets

With the iSCSISelect utility, you can easily configure an iSCSI target by selecting and enabling values on the Add/Ping iSCSI Target menu. From this menu, you can configure the target and perform a login to the target to establish an iSCSI network connection.

Before you begin the login session, gather the following information:

- iSCSI target name (only for manual configuration) – The target name that you are adding. The iSCSI target name is not required if you are using SendTargets discovery. It is required only for manually configured targets. This name should be known to you based on how you configured your iSCSI target. For more information, see “Using SendTargets Discovery to Add an iSCSI Target” on page 94.
- iSCSI target IP address – The IP address of the target into which you are logging.
- TCP port number – The TCP port number of the target portal. Typically this is 3260, which is the well-known port number defined for use by iSCSI.

Using SendTargets Discovery to Add an iSCSI Target

SendTargets discovery asks an iSCSI target to provide the list of target names that can be logged into by the initiator. The iSCSI initiator then uses the SendTargets Discovery option to perform the device discovery. Use this method if an iSCSI node has a large number of targets. When adding an iSCSI target, leave the iSCSI target name option blank, you can use the iSCSI SendTargets mechanism to add a target.

To configure an iSCSI target using the SendTargets discovery:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing <Ctrl+S> when prompted.
2. Select **Controller Configuration** and press <Enter>. A list of controllers is displayed.
3. Select a controller and press <Enter>. The Controller Configuration menu is displayed.

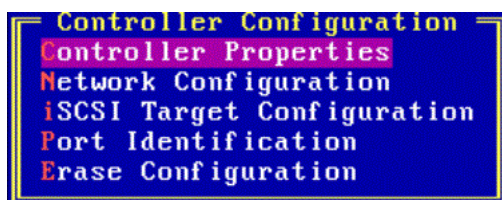


Figure 9-1 Controller Configuration Menu

4. From the Controller Configuration menu, select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press <Enter>.
5. Select **Add New iSCSI Target** and press <Enter>.
6. In the Add/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box, leave the iSCSI Target Name blank for a SendTargets response.

Note: Only the first 64 sessions are returned during a single discovery session.

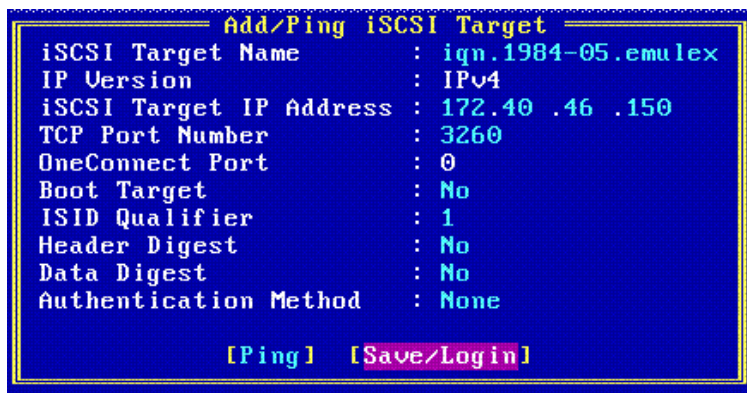


Figure 9-2 Add/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box

7. Enter the iSCSI target IP address.
8. Change the TCP port number value, if necessary. The default target port number is 3260.
9. For a boot target, accept the default (No), even if you want to enable the target as a boot target. For more information about the boot target, see "Setting Up a Basic

iSCSI Boot Configuration” on page 79.

Note: You must enable the Boot Target option after you add the target via SendTargets (see step 16).

10. Change the ISID qualifier value, if necessary. A unique ISID value is necessary if you connect dual sessions to the same target portal group. Enter a number up to 65535. For more information, see “Setting an ISID Value” on page 99.
11. Select **Yes** from the Header Digest drop-down menu if you want to enable header digest. When set to Yes, and the iSCSI initiator is set accordingly, the integrity of an iSCSI PDU’s header segment is protected by CRC32C checksum. The default setting is No.
12. Select **Yes** from the Data Digest drop-down menu if you want to enable Data Digest. When set to Yes, and the iSCSI initiator is set accordingly, the integrity of an iSCSI PDU’s data segment is protected by CRC32C checksum. The default setting is No.
13. Select an authentication method (optional). If you are enabling an authentication method, you are prompted to enter CHAP configuration. For more information, see “Enabling CHAP Authentication” on page 99.
14. Select **Save/Login**. A message reminds you that you have left the iSCSI Target name blank and that the SendTargets mechanism will be used. If you want to continue, press <Y>.
15. If the firmware successfully logs into the target, the Targets Discovered Via SendTargets screen appears. An unsuccessful login produces a failure message. After you send your SendTargets request to the target, the Targets Discovered Via SendTargets screen appears with a list of targets. From this list of targets specify which targets to add.

To do this, select the target or targets you want to add from the menu and press <F3>. After you have selected your targets, you can add these targets to the list of iSCSI targets available for the initiator to login. To do this, select **Add Selected iSCSI Targets** and press <Enter> (Figure 9-3). If you enabled CHAP Authentication, you are prompted to enter CHAP configuration for each target, one at a time. For more information, see “Enabling CHAP Authentication” on page 99.

Targets Discovered Via SendTargets						
Below are the targets discovered via SendTargets. Select the targets to add then highlight [Add Selected iSCSI Targets] and press Enter.						
#	Target Name	IP Version	IP Address	TCP Port	Add Target	
[Add Selected iSCSI Targets]						
001	iqn.1984-05.emule▶	IPv4	172.40.46.150	3260	Yes	
002	iqn.1984-05.emule▶	IPv4	10.193.17.123	3260	No	

Figure 9-3 Targets Discovered via SendTargets Screen

16. After you have added your targets, from the Controller Configuration menu, select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press **<Enter>** to view the added target information.

iSCSI Target Configuration								
#	Target Name	IP Version	IP Address	TCP Port	OneConnect Port	Boot Target	Connection Status	
[Add New iSCSI Target]								
001	iqn.1984	IPv4	172.40.46.150	3260	0	No	Connected	

Figure 9-4 iSCSI Target Configuration Screen

Note: If you set the Boot Target option in step 5 before adding the target, the Boot Target displays No on this menu. To enable Boot Target, go to step 17.

17. To enable Boot Target or make any other changes to your target or targets, select the target and press **<Enter>**. The Edit/Ping iSCSI Target menu is displayed. From this menu, you can edit your target.

Manually Adding an iSCSI Target

Use this method if an iSCSI node has a small number of targets, or you want to restrict the targets that an initiator can access. To manually configure a target, you must provide the iSCSI target name.

To configure an iSCSI target manually:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.
2. Select **Controller Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. A list of controllers is displayed.
3. Select a controller and press **<Enter>**. The Controller Configuration menu is displayed.
4. From the Controller Configuration menu, select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press **<Enter>**.
5. Select **Add New iSCSI Target** and press **<Enter>**. The Add/Ping iSCSI Target dialog-box is displayed (Figure 9-2).
6. Enter the iSCSI target name.
7. Enter the iSCSI target IP address.
8. Enter the TCP port number (the default target port number is 3260).
9. If you want to enable the target as a boot target, select **Yes**.
10. Enter an ISID Qualifier if needed. A unique ISID value is needed if you are connecting dual sessions to the same target portal group. You can enter a number up to 65535. For more information, see "Setting an ISID Value" on page 63.
11. Select **Yes** from the Header Digest drop-down menu if you want to enable Header Digest. When set to Yes, and the iSCSI initiator is set accordingly, the integrity of an iSCSI PDU's header segment is protected by CRC32C checksum. The default setting is No.
12. Select **Yes** from the Data Digest drop-down menu if you want to enable Data Digest. When set to Yes, and the iSCSI initiator is set accordingly, the integrity of an

iSCSI PDU's data segment is protected by CRC32C checksum. The default setting is No.

13. Select the Authentication Method. For more information, see “Enabling CHAP Authentication” on page 99.
14. Select **Save/Login** and press **<Enter>**. If the firmware logs into the target successfully, you receive a successful login message. Press **<Esc>** to go to the iSCSI Target Configuration menu where you can view information about the added target.
15. To enable Boot Target or make any other changes to your target or targets, select the target and press **<Esc>**.

Managing an iSCSI Target

With the iSCSISelect utility you can manage a target by viewing target details or by editing the target configuration.

Viewing Target Information

After you have successfully logged into the target, you can view the details of the newly-added target or manage the target. From the Controller Configuration menu, select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press **<Enter>** to view the target information.

Note: The iSCSISelect utility only shows LUN information for the first 128 LUNs.

The following is an example of a target detail.

Port #0 - iSCSI Target Configuration						
#	Target Name	IP Version	IP Address	TCP Port	Boot Target	Connection Status
[Add New iSCSI IPv4 Target]						
[Add New iSCSI IPv6 Target]						
001	iqn.2004	IPv4	172.40.46.149	3260	Pri	Connected

Figure 9-5 iSCSI Target Configuration Information

In the iSCSI Target Configuration menu, the functions keys located at the bottom of the menu help you manage your target configuration.

- Press **<Enter>** to select the target configuration.
- Press **** to delete the target.
- Press **<F5>** to log in to the target.
- Press **<F6>** to log out of the target.
- Press **<F7>** to configure the LUN.
- Press **<Esc>** to return to the previous menu.

Editing a Target Configuration

Once you have added a target, you can edit your iSCSI target configuration or apply other management options to the target.

Note: If you want to change the target name, you must delete the existing target and add it again with the new target name.

To edit a target configuration:

1. From the iSCSI Target Configuration dialog box, select the target and press **<Enter>**. The Edit/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box is displayed.

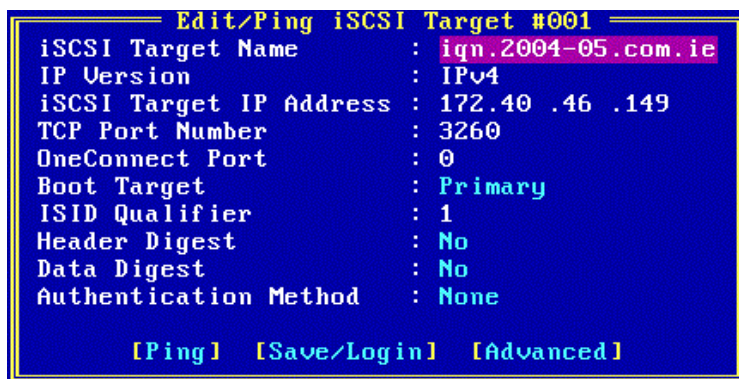


Figure 9-6 Edit/Ping iSCSI Target Dialog Box

2. If you want to enable the target as a boot target, select **Boot Target** and select either **Primary** or **Secondary** in the Boot Target drop-down menu.
3. You can set the ISID Qualifier on the Edit/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box by selecting **ISID Qualifier** and typing a number value up to 65535. A unique ISID value is required if you are connecting dual sessions to the same target portal group. For additional information, see “Setting an ISID Value” on page 99.
4. To enable the Header Digest, select **Yes** in the Header Digest drop-down menu. When set to Yes, and the iSCSI initiator is set accordingly, the integrity of an iSCSI PDU’s header segment is protected by CRC32C checksum. The default setting is No.
5. To enable the Data Digest, select **Yes** in the Data Digest drop-down menu. When set to Yes, and the iSCSI initiator is set accordingly, the integrity of an iSCSI PDU’s data segment is protected by CRC32C checksum. The default setting is No.
6. To select an authentication method to use when logging into the target, select an authentication method from the Authentication Method drop-down menu. For more information about authentication methods, see “Enabling CHAP Authentication” on page 99.
7. To verify your target connection, select **Ping** and press **<Enter>**. For more information about ping, see “Adding iSCSI Targets” on page 93.
8. To view more target properties, select **Advanced** and press **<Enter>**. For more information on these properties, see “Viewing Advanced Target Properties” on page 102.
9. To save your changes, select **Save/Login** and press **<Enter>**.

The iSCSI Target Configuration appears with the revised information.

Setting an ISID Value

The ISID qualifier is a unique ISID value to specify if you are connecting dual sessions to the same target portal group. This value ensures that you do not log into the same session twice. A combination of the initiator name, ISID qualifier, target name, and target portal group defines an iSCSI session. For the ISID qualifier, you can enter a number up to 65535.

To set the ISID Qualifier:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.
2. Select **Controller Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. A list of controllers is displayed.
3. Select a controller and press **<Enter>**. The Controller Configuration menu is displayed.
4. From the Controller Configuration menu, select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press **<Enter>**.
5. Select **Add New iSCSI Target** and press **<Enter>**.
6. From the Add/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box, select **ISID Qualifier** and type in a numeric value.
7. To save your changes, select **Save/Login** and press **<Enter>**.

The iSCSI Target Configuration appears with the revised information.

For more information on when an ISID value must be changed, see “Bootting from SAN for iSCSI MPIO” on page 56.

Enabling CHAP Authentication

The iSCSISelect utility uses CHAP to authenticate initiators and targets for added network security. By using a challenge/response security mechanism, CHAP periodically verifies the initiator's identity. This authentication method depends on a secret known only to the initiator and the target. Although the authentication can be one-way, you can negotiate CHAP in both directions with the help of the same secret set for mutual authentication. You must make sure however, that what you configure on the target side, matches the initiator side. The iSCSISelect utility supports both one-way and mutual authentication.

Authenticating One-Way CHAP

With one-way CHAP authentication, the target authenticates the initiator. Use one-way CHAP authentication for a one-way challenge/response security method.

To enable one-way CHAP authentication:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.
2. Select **Controller Configuration**. A list of controllers is displayed.
3. Select a controller and press **<Enter>**. The Controller Configuration menu is displayed.

4. From the Controller Configuration menu, select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press **<Enter>**.
5. Select **Add New iSCSI Target** and press **<Enter>**.
6. Follow steps 5–11 in the procedure “Using SendTargets Discovery to Add an iSCSI Target” on page 94.
7. In the Add/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box, select **Authentication Method**, select **One-Way Chap**, and press **<Enter>**.

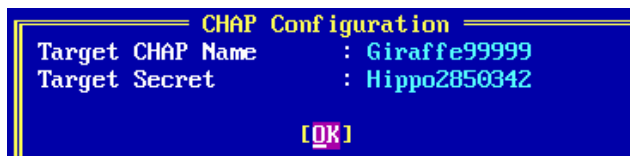


Figure 9-7 One-way Chap Configuration Dialog Box

8. Enter the target CHAP name and target secret, then select **OK** and press **<Enter>**.
The target CHAP name can be any name or sequence of numbers over 12 and less than 16 characters. However, the name and secret on the target side must match the name and target on the initiator side.

The target secret can be in string (for example, abcdefg23456) or hexadecimal (for example, 0x01234567890123456789ABCD) format.

- If using a string format, the secret can be any name or sequence of numbers over 12 and less than 16 bytes long, where each character equals one byte.
- If using a hexadecimal format, the secret must be at least 12 and less than 16 bytes long, where two characters equal one byte. Hexadecimal formatting restrictions:
 - The 0x representation requires an even number of hexadecimal values excluding the 0x (0-9, A-F). For example, the secret 0x1234567890123456789ABCD is not allowed because the character length is odd, with 23 hexadecimal values excluding the 0x. The secret 0x01234567890123456789ABCD is allowed, with 24 hexadecimal values excluding the 0x.
 - The hexadecimal representation of CHAP secrets must only contain hexadecimal values. The 0x representation must only have the following characters: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, a, b, c, d, e, f, A, B, C, D, E, and F. Any other characters are not allowed.

When you have successfully enabled the CHAP authentication, the Add/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box appears. For more information, see “Pinging a Target” on page 102.

Authenticating Mutual CHAP

With mutual CHAP authentication, the target authenticates the initiator and the initiator authenticates the target. Use mutual CHAP authentication for a two-way challenge/response security method.

To enable mutual CHAP authentication:

1. Log into the iSCSISelect utility by pressing **<Ctrl+S>** when prompted.
2. Select **Controller Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. A list of controllers is displayed.
3. Select a controller and press **<Enter>**. The Controller Configuration menu is displayed.
4. From the Controller Configuration menu, select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press **<Enter>**.
5. Select **Add New iSCSI Target** and press **<Enter>**.
6. From the Add/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box, select **Authentication Method** and select **Mutual Chap**, and press **<Enter>**. The CHAP Configuration dialog box is displayed.



Figure 9-8 Mutual CHAP Configuration Dialog Box

7. Enter the target CHAP name, target secret, initiator CHAP name, and initiator secret. Select **OK** and press **<Enter>**.

The target/initiator CHAP names can be any name or sequence of numbers over 12 and less than 16 characters. However, the name and secret on the target side must match the name and target on the initiator side.

The target/initiator secret can be in string (for example, abcdefg23456) or hexadecimal (for example, 0x01234567890123456789ABCD) format.

- If using a string format, the secret can be any name or sequence of numbers over 12 and less than 16 bytes long, where each character equals one byte.
- If using a hexadecimal format, the secret must be at least 12 and less than 16 bytes long, where two characters equal one byte. Hexadecimal formatting restrictions:
 - The 0x representation requires an even number of hexadecimal values excluding the 0x (0-9, A-F). For example, the secret 0x1234567890123456789ABCD is not allowed because the character length is odd, with 23 hexadecimal values excluding the 0x. The secret 0x01234567890123456789ABCD is allowed, with 24 hexadecimal values excluding the 0x.
 - The hexadecimal representation of CHAP secrets must only contain hexadecimal values. The 0x representation must only have the following characters: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, a, b, c, d, e, f, A, B, C, D, E, and F. Any other characters are not allowed.

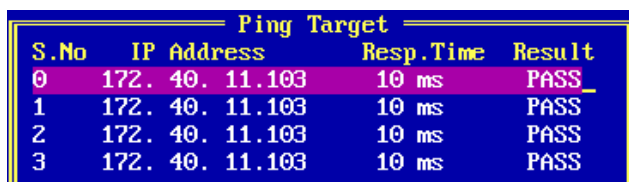
When you have successfully enabled the CHAP authentication, the Add/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box appears.

Pinging a Target

To ping a target:

1. From the Controller Configuration menu, select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press **<Enter>**.
2. Select **Add/Ping iSCSI Target** or **Edit/Ping iSCSI Target** and press **<Enter>**. The “iSCSI Target IP Address” is the address that will be pinged.
3. From the Add/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box (Figure 9-2) or the Edit/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box (Figure 9-6), select **Ping** and press **<Enter>**.

If the ping is successful, you are notified that the ping is successful. Figure 9-9 is an example of a successful ping.



S.No	IP Address	Resp.Time	Result
0	172. 40. 11.103	10 ms	PASS
1	172. 40. 11.103	10 ms	PASS
2	172. 40. 11.103	10 ms	PASS
3	172. 40. 11.103	10 ms	PASS

Figure 9-9 Successful Ping Screen

If the ping is unsuccessful you receive a failed message. There are several reasons for an unsuccessful ping. For more information see “Troubleshooting for the iSCSI Protocol” on page 194.

Viewing Advanced Target Properties

After you have logged into a target, you can view more information about that target.

To view more information about the target, from the Edit/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box, select the **Advanced** option and press **<Enter>**. Advanced information is displayed.



iSCSI Initiator Name	: ign.1;85-07.wss
FirstBurstLength (Kbytes)	: 8
MaxBurstLength (Kbytes)	: 256
InitialR2T	: Yes
ImmediateData	: Yes
MaxRecvDataSegmentLength (Kbytes)	: 8
Login Redirect	: No
[Done]	

Figure 9-10 Advanced Target Properties Screen

Configuring LUN Settings

A LUN represents an individually addressable logical device that is part of a target. An initiator negotiates with a target to establish connectivity to a LUN.

To configure a LUN:

1. From the iSCSI Target Configuration screen, press <F7> to display the LUNs associated with the iSCSI node.

#		Vendor Information	LUN Configuration Block Size (Bytes)	Bootable	Size (MB)
001	IET- 0		512	Yes	48
002	IET- 1		512	No	48
003	IET- 2		512	No	48
004	IET- 3		512	No	48
005	IET- 4		512	No	48
006	IET- 5		512	No	48
007	IET- 6		512	No	48
008	IET- 7		512	No	48
009	IET- 8		512	No	48
010	IET- 9		512	No	48
011	IET- 10		512	No	48
012	IET- 11		512	No	48
013	IET- 12		512	No	48
014	IET- 13		512	No	48
015	IET- 14		512	No	48
016	IET- 15		512	No	48
017	IET- 16		512	No	48
018	IET- 17		512	No	48
019	IET- 18		512	No	48

Figure 9-11 LUN Configuration Menu

2. Press <F3> to set the boot LUN if the target is a boot target. By setting the LUN to bootable, you can confirm that you have the boot target configured properly and see the LUN from which you are booting. By looking at the LUN size, you can also determine which target is which along with the LUN order.

Note: The LUN order is determined by the target and is in the order listed.

If there are no LUNs available, the following message is displayed:

No LUN available, please check your configuration on the Target.

For more information, see “Troubleshooting for the iSCSI Protocol” on page 194.

Removing and Logging Out and In of a Configured Target

If you remove or delete a target, you log out of the target and remove it from the list of targets.

To remove a target, from the iSCSI Target Configuration screen, select the target and press the <Delete> key.

If you log out of a target, you log out of the target but the target is listed in the target list with the connection status of disconnected. With a logout, you are only deleting the target session. If you have logged out of a target, you can perform a login.

To log out of a target, from the iSCSI Target Configuration screen, select the target and press <F6>.

To log into a target, from the iSCSI Target Configuration screen, select the target and the disconnected target, and then press <F5> to establish the target session.

Booting the System

After you have configured the iSCSI initiator and target, you must reboot the system for the configurations to take effect. When you exit the iSCSISelect utility, the system automatically reboots and during system startup, the Emulex adapter BIOS is displayed. For example:

```
Controller#0 Port#0 Base 0xFCE60000 at Bus:01 Dev:00 Fun:02
Controller#0 Port#1 Base 0xFCEA0000 at Bus:01 Dev:00 Fun:03
```

```
<<< Press <Ctrl><S> for iSCSISelect(TM) Utility >>>
```

```
Initiator iSCSI Name:   iqn.2004-05.com.emulex
Initiator IP Address:   172. 40.   1.41
Initiator IP Address:   172. 40.   1.62
BIOS Not Installed.
```

Note: The iSCSI BIOS logs into the configured iSCSI boot target and shows its target/LUN information in the BIOS sign-on banner only if you have configured an iSCSI boot target. For more information, see “Setting Up a Basic iSCSI Boot Configuration” on page 79.

Discovering Targets through DHCP for iSCSI

For your target to be discovered by the initiator through DHCP, you must add the root path to the DHCP server:

1. From the DHCP server screen, select **Scope Options**, then right-click and select **Configure Options**.

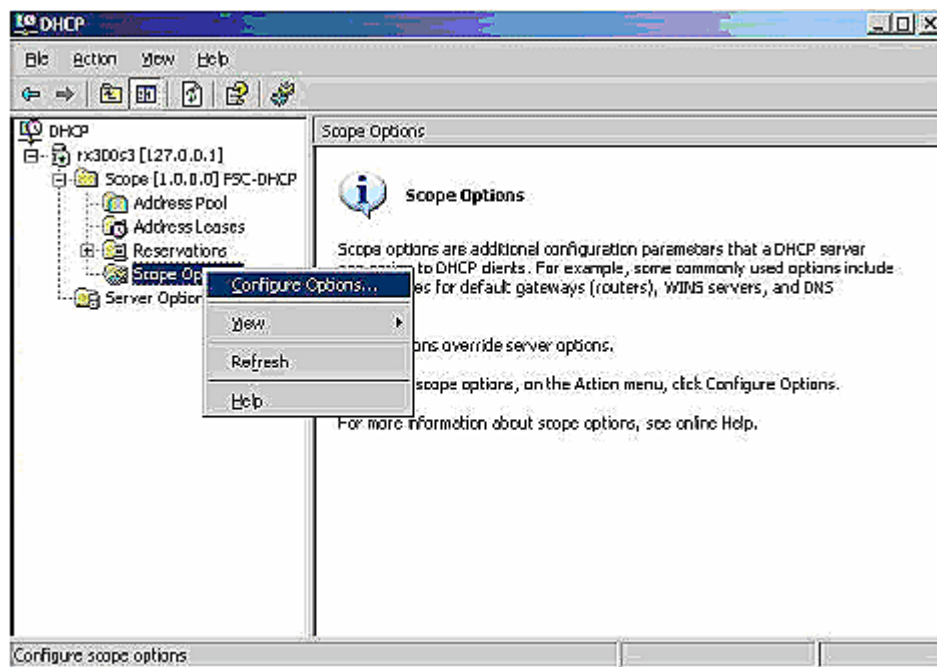


Figure 9-12 DHCP Server Screen

2. From the General tab, scroll down the list of available options and select **017 Root Path**.

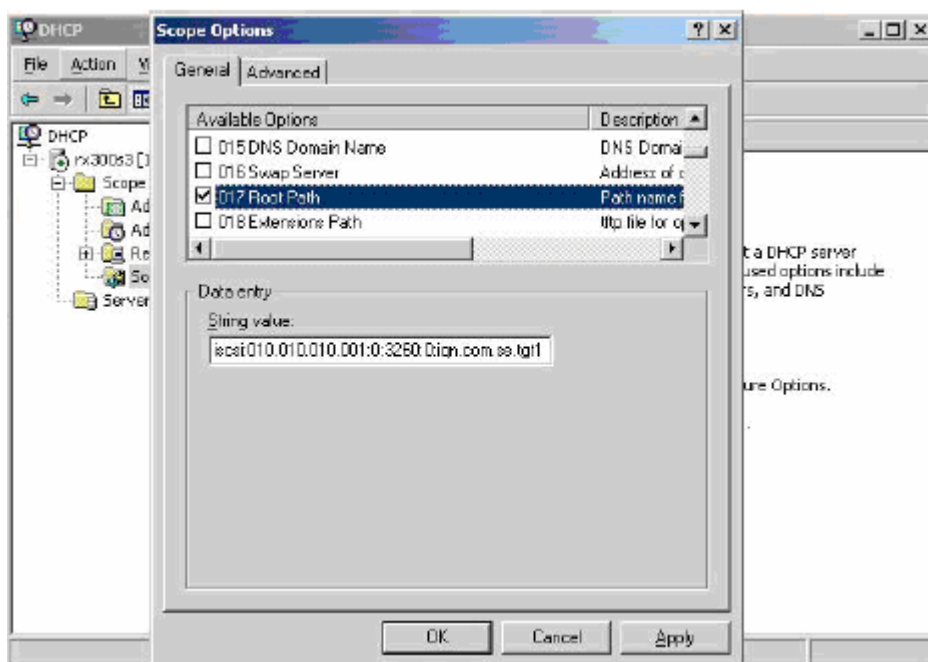


Figure 9-13 DHCP Server Scope Options

3. In the String Value box, add the location of the iSCSI target you want to use for iSCSI boot. Enter the string in the following format:

```
iscsi: <ipaddress>:<protocol>:<iscsi port number>:<luns><target  
name>
```

For example:

```
iscsi:010.010.010.001:0:3260:0:ign.1992-08.com.netap:sn.15729740
```

4. Click **Apply**. The DHCP server screen is ready to discover boot targets.

Enabling DHCP Discovery Through the iSCSISelect Utility

If your DHCP server supports DHCP discovery and you added the root path to the DHCP server, you can enable Discover Boot Target via DHCP using the iSCSISelect utility. By enabling Discover IPv4 Boot Target via DHCP, you can use DHCP discovery to provide the boot path from the DHCP server.

Note: If you leave Discover IPv4 Boot Target via DHCP disabled (default), you must manually configure iSCSI boot.

To enable DHCP discovery through iSCSISelect:

1. After configuring the iSCSI Initiator Name, select **Controller Properties** from the Controller Configuration menu and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Controller Properties screen, select **Discover IPv4 Boot Target via DHCP** and press **<Enter>**. Enable the function by selecting **Enabled** from the drop-down menu and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

10. Configuring UEFI for Ethernet

Overview

UEFIBoot supports:

- uEFI version – uEFI 2.3.1 compatible drivers (backward compatible with 2.1)
- EDK version – EDK2 compatible drivers
- Supported EFI protocols – NII protocol, Configuration Access protocol, Component Name2 protocol, Driver Diagnostics protocol, Platform to Driver Configuration protocol, and Firmware Management Protocol
- Operating systems – Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2012 R2, Red-Hat Linux 6, and SLES 11 SP2
- Multi-mode – Switch personalities from the HII menus
- Multichannel – Enable or disable multichannel and configure multichannel parameters from HII
- Blade Open Firmware Management Protocol and Universal Configuration Manager

Note: Only applies to IBM products.

- Maximum controllers and ports (support for up to 96 physical controllers or 192 ports)
- Single driver – Single latest driver version supports all controllers in the system

This version of UEFIboot is loaded from flash into system memory.

For more information on loading and unloading UEFIBoot, see appendix E., “Loading and Unloading UEFIBoot from the UEFI Shell,” on page 225.

When UEFIBoot is loaded in an EFI Shell, type “drivers” and press <Enter> to see if the driver is loaded.

Note: If you are using Dell adapters, refer to appendix F., “Dell UEFI,” on page 226 for information on using the Dell UEFI utility.

Using the Emulex NIC Configuration Utility

Navigating the Utility

Use the following methods to navigate the Emulex NIC configuration utility:

- Press the up/down arrows on your keyboard to move through menu options or fields. When multiple adapters are listed, use the up/down arrows to scroll to the additional adapters.
- Press the <+>, <->, or <Enter> keys to change numeric values.
- Press <Enter> to select a menu option, to select a row in a configuration screen, or to change a configuration default.
- Use the navigation entries on the page to move about the utility.
- Press <Esc> to exit the current screen and show the previous screen.

Downloading the Latest Firmware and Boot Code

A single firmware image contains the latest version of the firmware and boot code. Depending on the OEM UEFI configuration, the Emulex NIC configuration utility may appear under different setup menus in OEM system firmware or BIOS (such as **System Settings > Network Device List**).

Firmware Components

The ELX UNDI driver implements the PXE UNDI API services used by the SNP driver during PXE boot and while executing an NBP. The boot hardware abstraction layer (HAL) provides the OneConnect IOCTL interface API for the UNDI driver.

The firmware and UEFI NIC, iSCSI, and FCoE drivers are contained in one image file with the .UFI extension. This file must be flashed through the NIC interface exposed by HII.

Viewing the Adapter's Firmware and Boot Code Version

To view the adapter's firmware and boot code version:

1. Start the Emulex NIC configuration utility via the HII.

The Network screen shows a list of the adapters in the system. Your list may vary depending on the installed adapters.

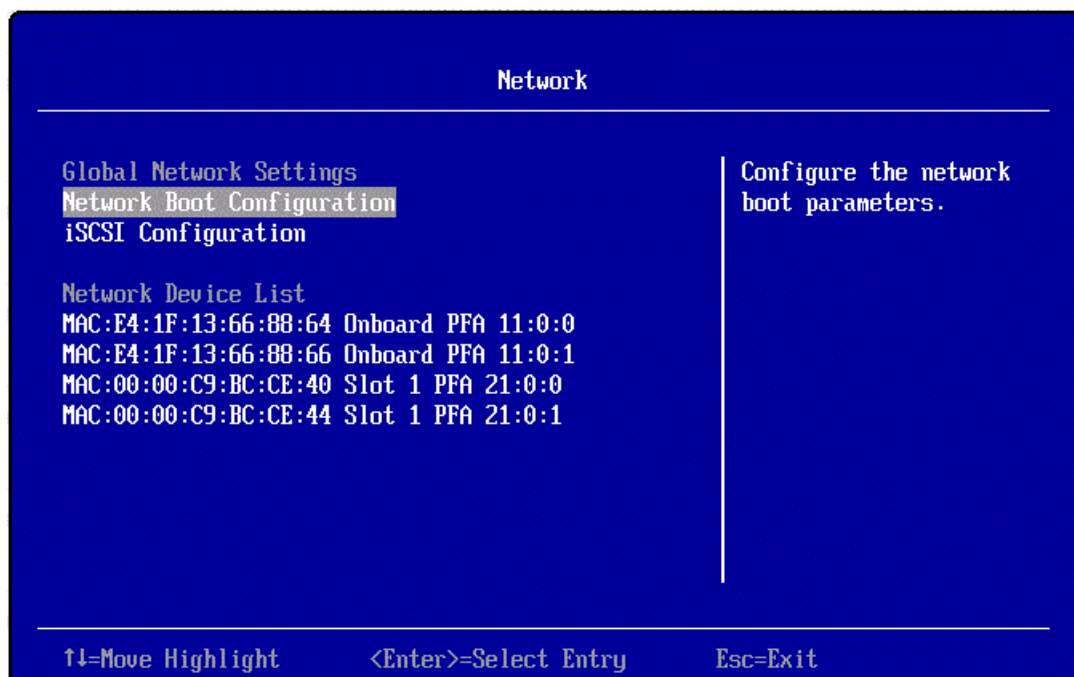


Figure 10-1 Emulex NIC Configuration Utility Network Screen

2. Locate the adapter. Use the up/down arrows on your keyboard to select it, and press <Enter>. The Emulex NIC Selection Screen appears.

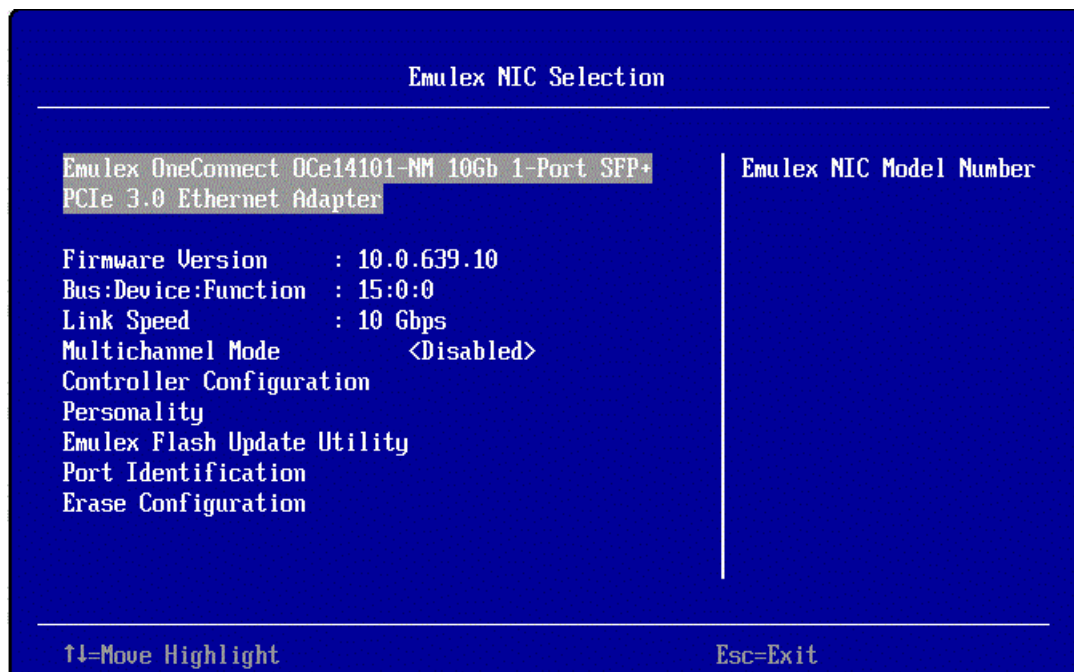


Figure 10-2 Emulex NIC Selection Screen

The Emulex NIC Selection screen shows the following device information for the selected adapter:

- **Firmware Version** – the current firmware version installed on the adapter. The firmware version is the same as the boot version.
- **Bus:Device:Function** – the PCI bus, device, and function for the adapter. This information describes the location of the adapter in the PCI configuration space.
- **Link Speed** – the current maximum port speed on the adapter.

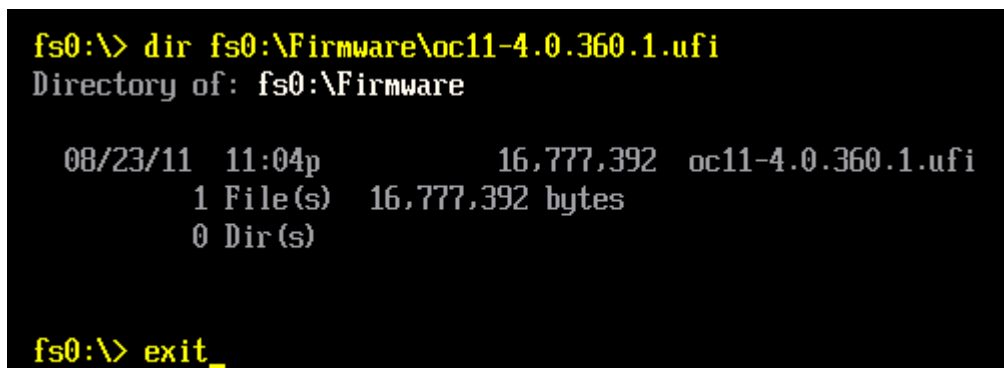
This screen also has a link to the Emulex Flash Update Utility, which you can use to download firmware and boot code.

3. Press <Esc> until you exit the utility.

Downloading Firmware and Boot Code

To download firmware and boot code:

1. In an open UEFI shell, copy the firmware and boot code file into a directory on the EFI partition media.



```
fs0:\> dir fs0:\Firmware\oc11-4.0.360.1.ufi
Directory of: fs0:\Firmware

08/23/11  11:04p           16,777,392  oc11-4.0.360.1.ufi
          1 File(s)  16,777,392 bytes
          0 Dir(s)

fs0:\> exit_
```

Figure 10-3 UEFI Shell with Firmware and Boot Code File

2. Exit the UEFI shell and launch the Emulex NIC configuration utility.
3. From the Network device list, select the NIC adapter you want to modify and press <Enter>.
4. The Emulex NIC Selection screen (Figure 10-2) shows information for the selected adapter. Select **Emulex Flash Update Utility** and press <Enter>. The Emulex Flash

Update Utility screen is displayed. This utility displays all available media and installs the flash file on the adapter.

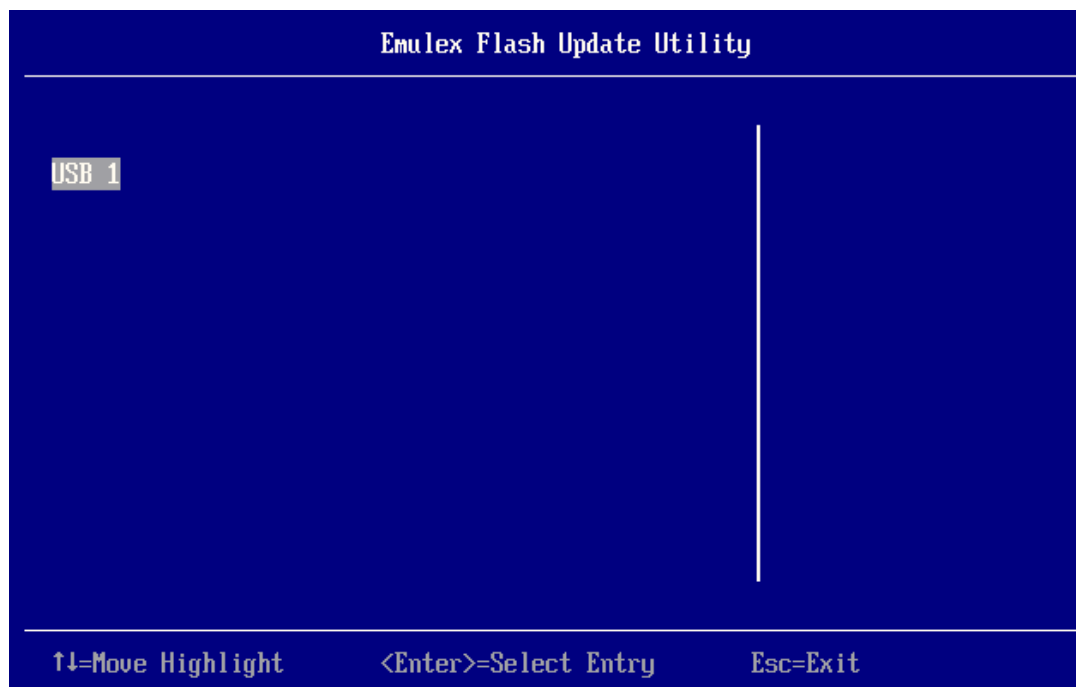


Figure 10-4 Emulex Flash Update Utility

5. Press **<Enter>** to select the media containing the flash file.

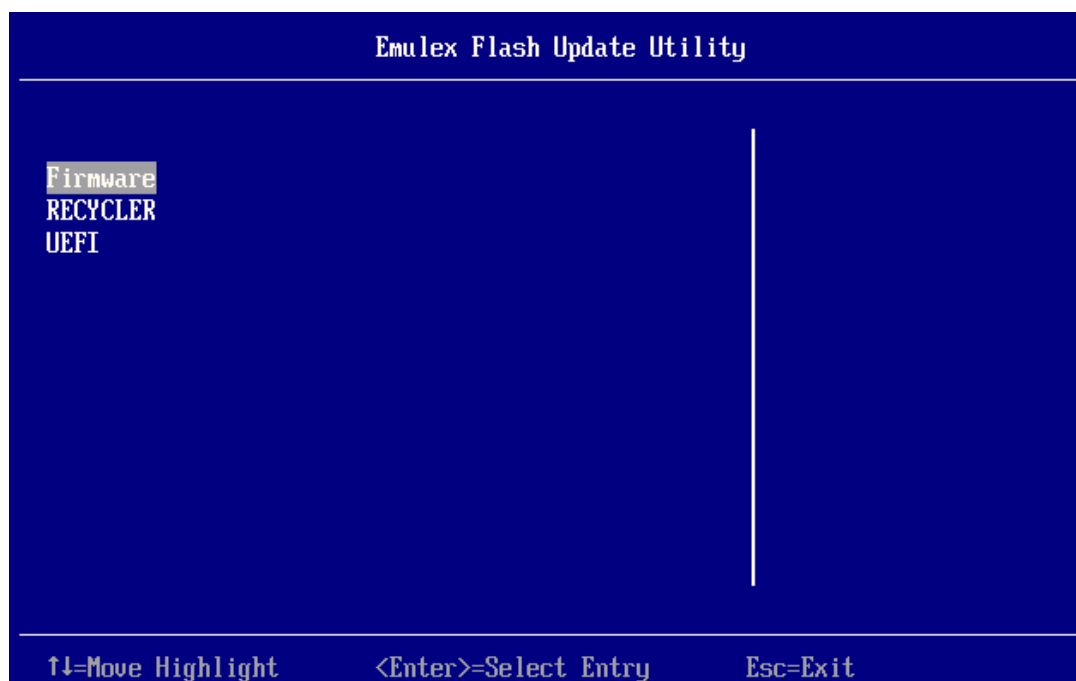


Figure 10-5 Emulex Flash Update Utility with Directory Name Dialog Box

6. Navigate to the directory containing the flash file and press **<Enter>**.

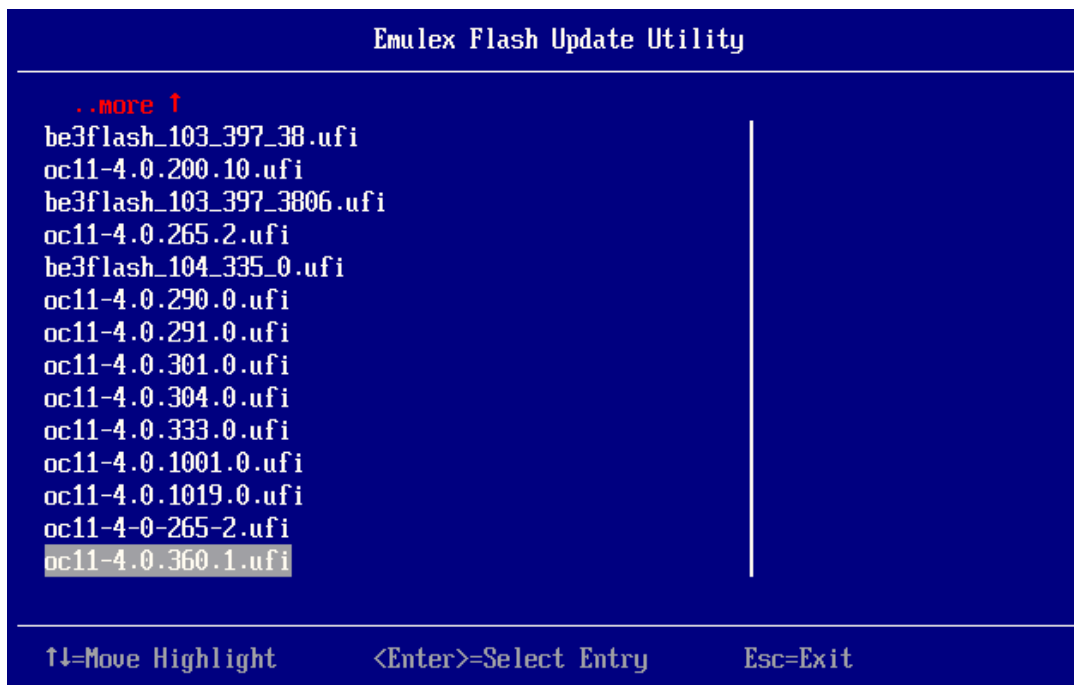
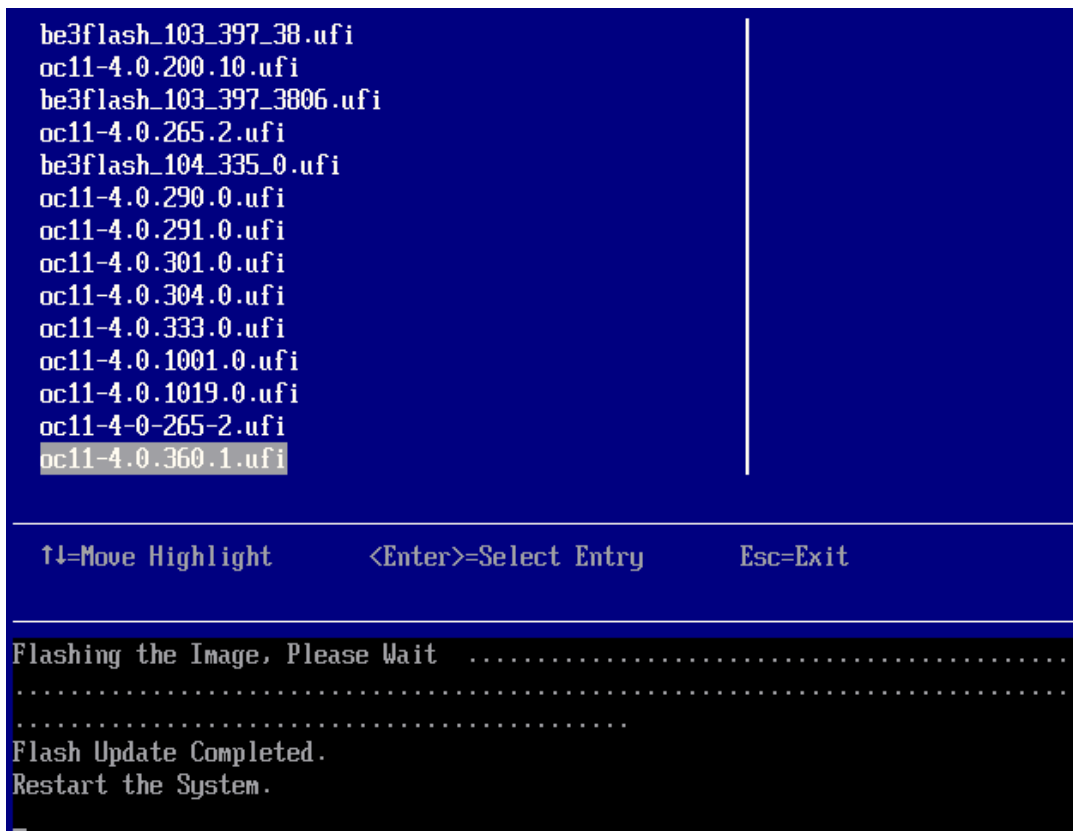


Figure 10-6 Emulex Flash Update Utility with Flash File Name Dialog Box

7. Use the arrow keys to select the flash file and press **<Enter>** to begin the update process. It takes about two minutes to complete.



```
be3flash_103_397_38.ufi
oc11-4.0.200.10.ufi
be3flash_103_397_3806.ufi
oc11-4.0.265.2.ufi
be3flash_104_335_0.ufi
oc11-4.0.290.0.ufi
oc11-4.0.291.0.ufi
oc11-4.0.301.0.ufi
oc11-4.0.304.0.ufi
oc11-4.0.333.0.ufi
oc11-4.0.1001.0.ufi
oc11-4.0.1019.0.ufi
oc11-4-0-265-2.ufi
oc11-4.0.360.1.ufi

↑↓=Move Highlight      <Enter>=Select Entry      Esc=Exit

Flashing the Image, Please Wait .....
.....
Flash Update Completed.
Restart the System.
```

Figure 10-7 Emulex Flash Update Utility, Flash Updating

- Note:** This firmware flash procedure only flashes the physical interface which was selected in the HII menu. All Emulex adapters must contain the same firmware version to function properly. The above procedure should be repeated for each physical interface installed in the system before proceeding to the next step.
8. Reset the system. The latest version information for the adapter is displayed in the Emulex NIC Selection screen (Figure 10-2).

Advanced Mode Support

Advanced Mode is a driver compatibility option. With Advanced Mode enabled, you can run Advanced Mode-aware drivers that provide advanced capabilities as listed in Table 10-1. With Advanced mode disabled, you can run older legacy inbox drivers that are not Advanced Mode-aware with the latest firmware versions.

Note: Advanced Mode support is enabled by default on OCe11100-series and OCe14000-series 2-port and 4-port controllers and the LPe16202/OCe15100 CFA. On 4-port controllers, the Advanced Mode setting is not provided in the PXESelect/HII utilities. The Advanced Mode setting on these platforms is implicitly enabled and Advanced Mode-aware drivers must be installed. Compatibility with legacy drivers requires that Advanced Mode support be disabled on 2-port controllers.

Note: Advanced Mode is not supported on OCe10100-series controllers.

Table 10-1 Advanced Mode Capabilities (by Operating System)

Operating System	Advanced Mode Enabled	Advanced Mode Disabled (Legacy Mode)
Windows	16 RSS queues Note: Only supported on Windows 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2. Remains four queues for earlier Windows versions.	4 RSS Queues
	VMQ lookahead split Note: VMQs are only supported on Windows 2008 R2 and later.	Lookahead split is silently ignored. There may be a small performance penalty for VMQs.
Linux and Citrix	16 RSS Queues	4 RSS Queues
	VFs/PFs can be increased up to 30	
VMware ESXi	For both 1500 and 9000 MTU: 16 NetQueues/PFs in non-VFA 4 NetQueues/PFs in VFA	1500 MTU - 8 NetQueues/PFs in non-VFA and 4 NetQueues/PFs in VFA. 9000 MTU - 4 NetQueues/PFs in both VFA and non-VFA

To enable Advanced Mode support:

1. On the Emulex NIC Selection Screen, select **Advanced Mode** and press **<Enter>**. The Advanced Mode dialog box appears.

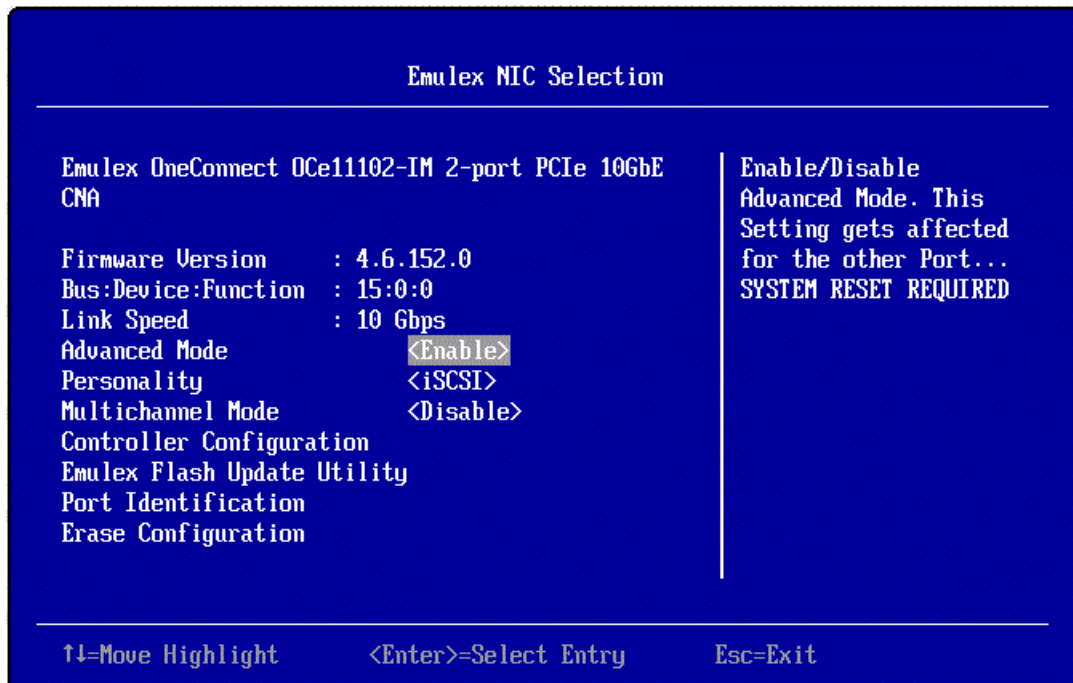


Figure 10-8 Advanced Mode Dialog Box

2. Select **Enable** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Reboot the system.

Note: Changing the Advanced Mode setting requires a reboot.

Configuring Personality

The “personality” reflects the protocol or protocols of the adapter. This option specifies a list of available protocols that can be configured on an adapter. Depending on the personalities for which the adapter is licensed, one of the following selections appears:

- NIC
- iSCSI
- FCoE
- Custom

The NIC personality implies that all the enabled functions provide NIC/TOE functionality.

iSCSI and FCoE personalities are enabled on one function per adapter port and include NIC functionality on the other enabled functions.

The Custom personality allows you to select the protocol type for each function (0-7). iSCSI and FCoE personalities may only be enabled on one function per adapter port.

Note: There cannot be two iSCSI functions and two FCoE functions on a single port.

To view the personalities supported on the adapter, select **Personality** on the Emulex NIC Selection Screen (Figure 10-2), and then press **<Enter>**. The Personality Selection dialog box appears with a list of available personalities.

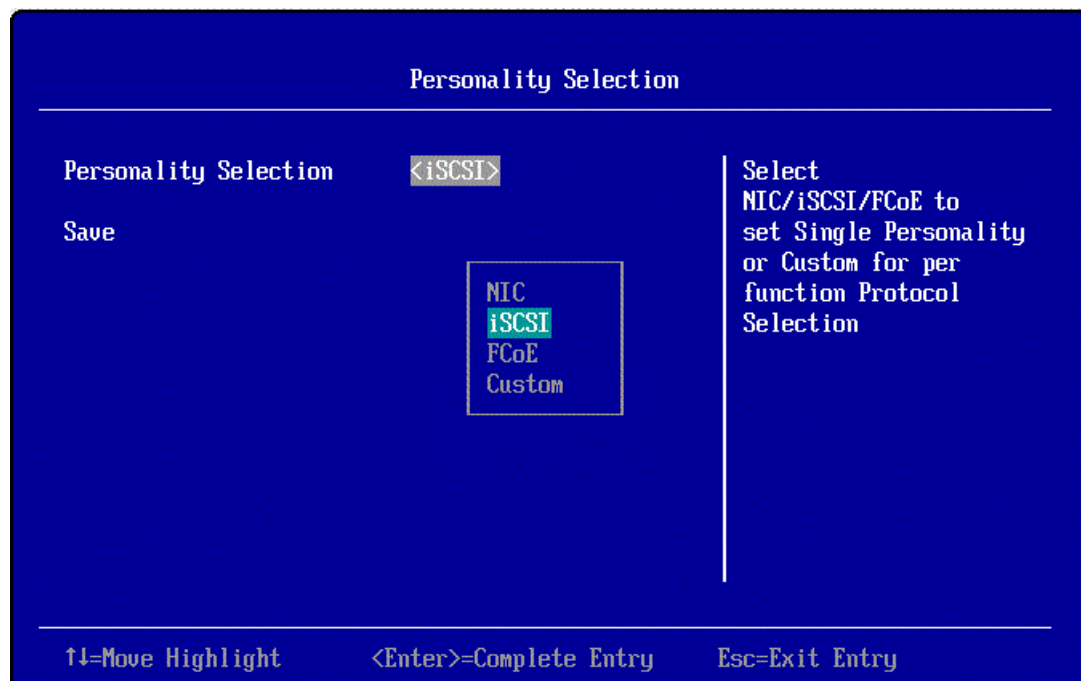


Figure 10-9 Personality Selection Dialog Box

To change the personality of the adapter:

1. On the Emulex NIC Selection Screen (Figure 10-2), select **Personality** and press **<Enter>**. The Personality Selection dialog box appears.
2. Select the desired personality from the drop-down menu and press **<Enter>**.

3. If you select the Custom personality, the Custom Personality Selection dialog box appears.

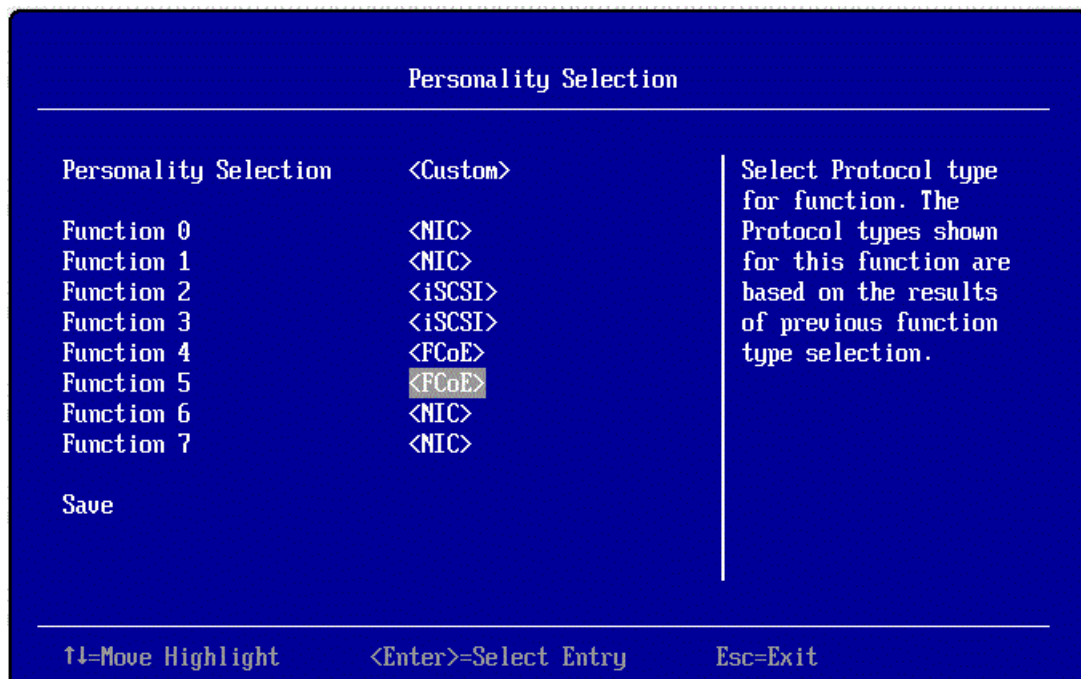


Figure 10-10 Custom Personality Selection Dialog Box

4. Select the desired personality for the appropriate function from the drop-down menu and press **<Enter>**.

As mentioned previously for the Custom personality, iSCSI and FCoE personalities may only be enabled on one function per adapter port.

Note: Additional configuration changes may be made after changing the Personality setting; however, a reboot is required before the new Personality setting will take effect.

Configuring the Controller When Multichannel is Disabled or Not Supported

Note: If your adapter has Multichannel Mode enabled, refer to “Configuring Universal Multichannel” on page 122. If you are using an IBM adapter, refer to “Configuring Multichannel for IBM Adapters” on page 128.

When Multichannel Mode is disabled, or it is not supported, the following Controller Configuration screen appears when you select **Controller Configuration** on the Emulex NIC Selection Screen.

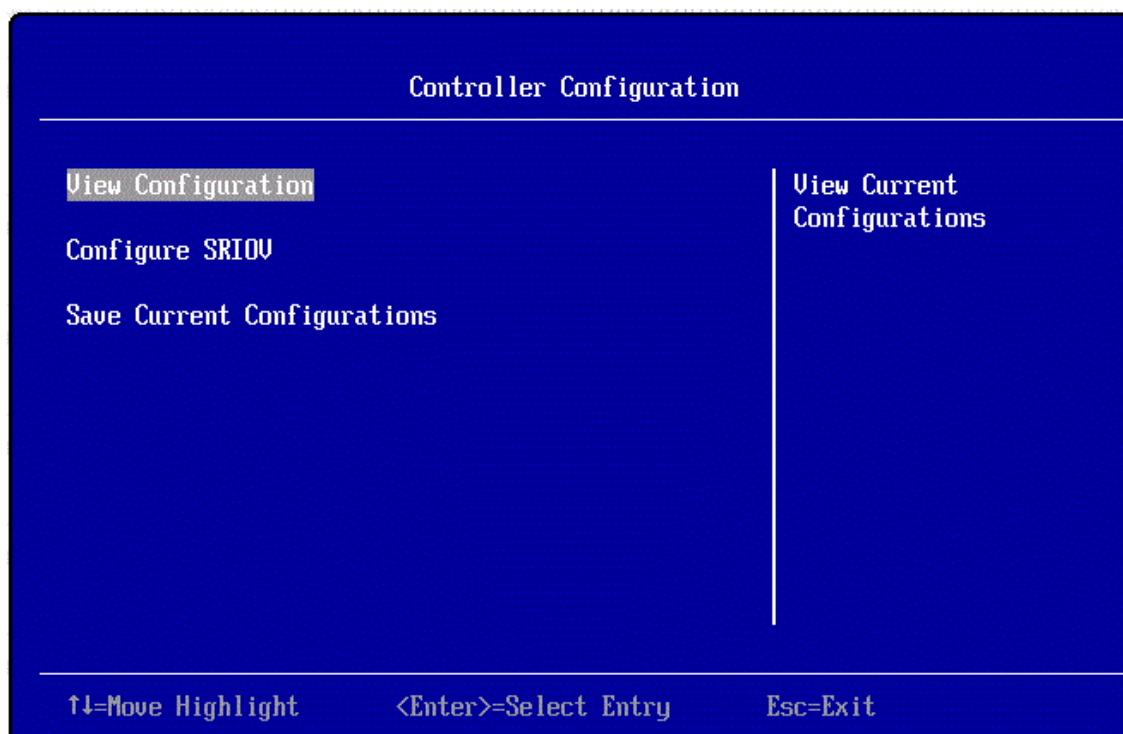


Figure 10-11 Controller Configuration Screen

The Controller Configuration screen enables you to perform the following tasks:

- View the current configuration
- Configure SR-IOV
- Save the current configuration

Viewing the Configuration

To view the current configuration:

1. On the Controller Configuration screen, select **View Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. The View Configuration screen appears.

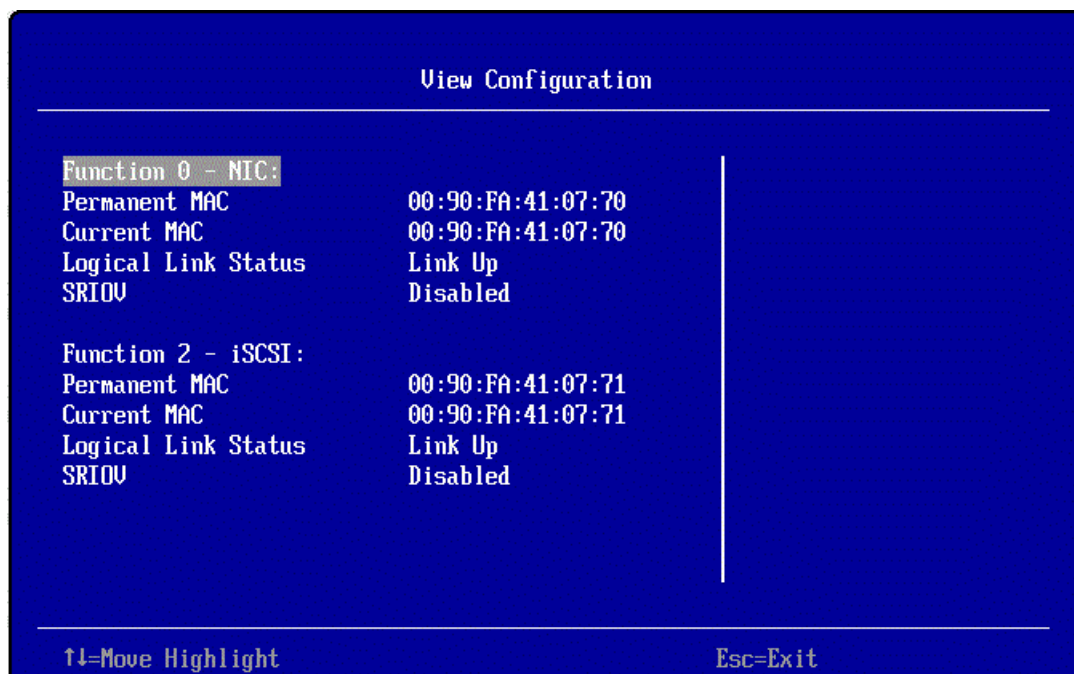


Figure 10-12 View Configuration Screen

From the View Configuration screen, you can view information for that specific function, including the permanent and current MAC addresses, the logical link status, and the SR-IOV status for NIC functions.

2. When you are finished viewing the configurations, press **<Esc>** to return to the Controller Configuration screen.

Configuring SR-IOV

If your system BIOS supports SR-IOV, you can enable it. SR-IOV support can only be enabled when multichannel is disabled or it is not supported.

Note: SR-IOV is only available for NIC functions and not for storage (iSCSI or FCoE) functions.

For more information on SR-IOV configuration, see the appropriate Emulex driver manual.

To configure SR-IOV:

1. On the Controller Configuration screen, select **Configure SRIOV** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure SRIOV screen appears.

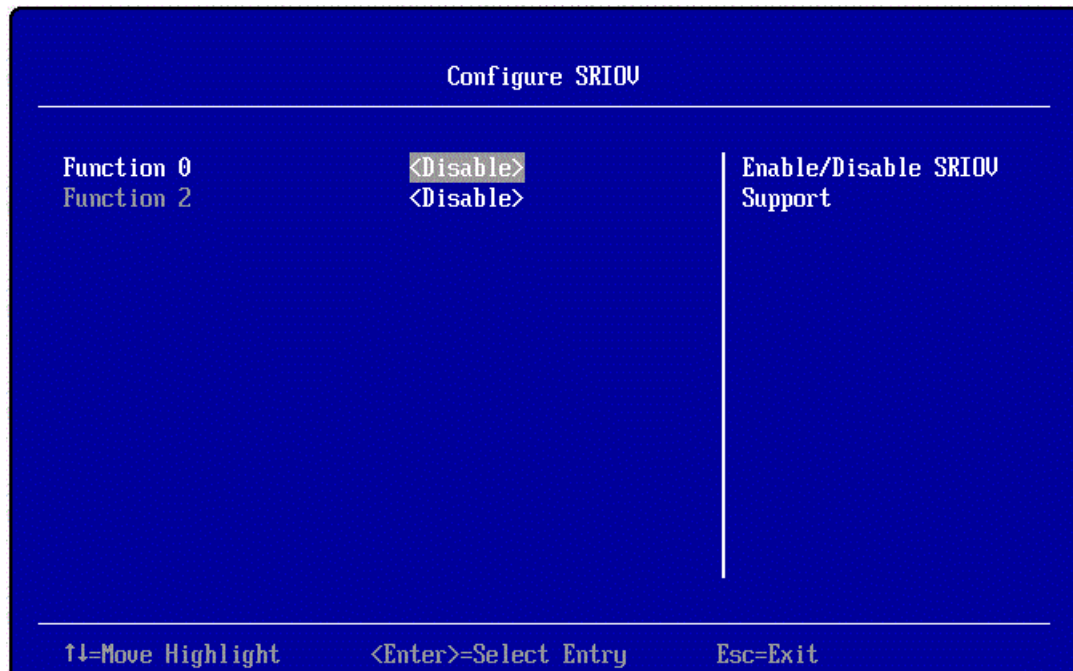


Figure 10-13 Configure SRIOV Screen

1. Select the current setting for a particular NIC function and a drop-down menu appears.
2. From the drop-down menu, select **Enable** or **Disable** and press **<Enter>**.
3. When you are finished, press **<Esc>** to return to the Controller Configuration screen.

Saving the Current Configuration

To save the configuration changes, on the Controller Configuration screen, select **Save Current Configurations** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring Universal Multichannel

Note: Universal multichannel is only available on OCe11100-series and OCe14000-series adapters.

Note: If your adapter has Multichannel Mode enabled and also supports IBM Virtual Fabric Mode or IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode, refer to “Configuring Multichannel for IBM Adapters” on page 128 for additional information. If Multichannel Mode is disabled or not supported on the adapter, refer to “Configuring the Controller When Multichannel is Disabled or Not Supported” on page 119.

UMC provides the ability to configure multiple PCI functions or I/O channels for each adapter port. For additional information on UMC support, see the *Emulex Universal Multichannel Reference Guide*.

Note: When UMC is enabled, you must configure the multichannel settings (minimum and maximum bandwidths) for iSCSI and FCoE storage functions in the NIC BIOS before they can be configured further from their respective utilities (iSCSI or FCoE BIOS). Otherwise, the Logical Link for that function will still show as down, and you will not be able to log into targets or find LUNs behind those targets.

Note: Multichannel functionality is only supported on OneConnect adapters running in 10 Gb mode. The 1 Gb mode does not support UMC.

If multichannel functionality is supported on your system, the Emulex UEFI NIC utility enables you to perform the following tasks:

- Enable or disable multichannel functionality (Multichannel Mode)
- View the current controller configuration
- Configure the minimum and maximum bandwidth for each channel
- Configure the LPVID for each channel

Note: Your system may not support all multichannel options.

To enable multichannel support:

1. On the Emulex NIC Selection screen, select **Multichannel Mode** and press **<Enter>**. The Multichannel Mode dialog box appears.

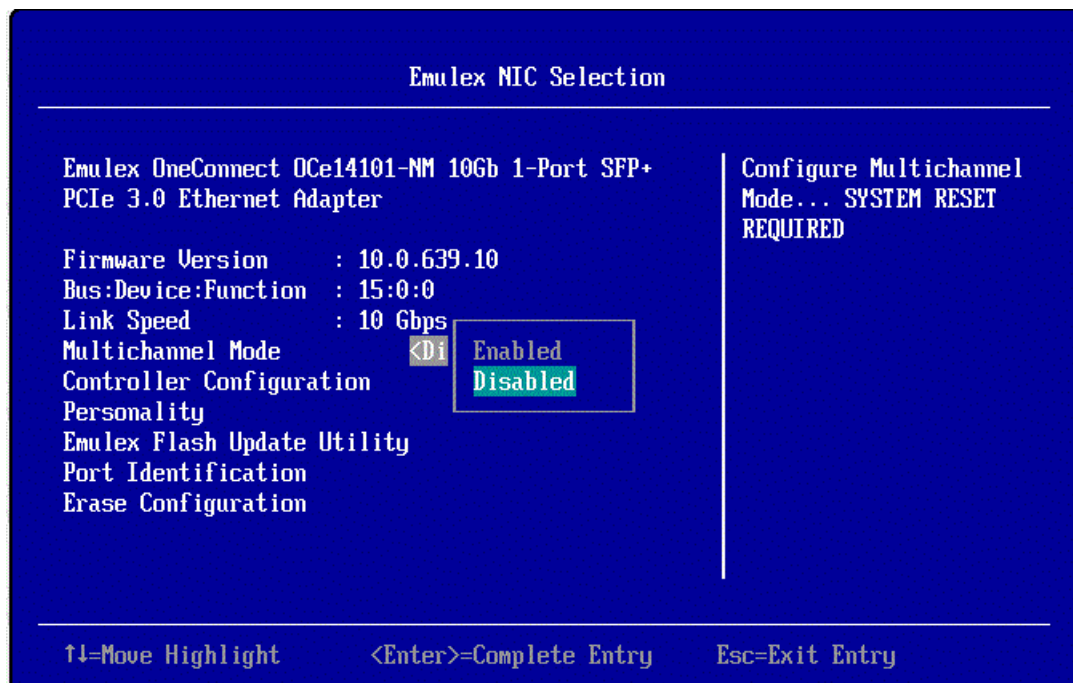


Figure 10-14 Multichannel Mode

2. Select **Enable** to activate multichannel support and press **<Enter>**.

To configure the multichannel configuration:

1. On the Emulex NIC Selection screen, select **Controller Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. A list of available options is displayed.

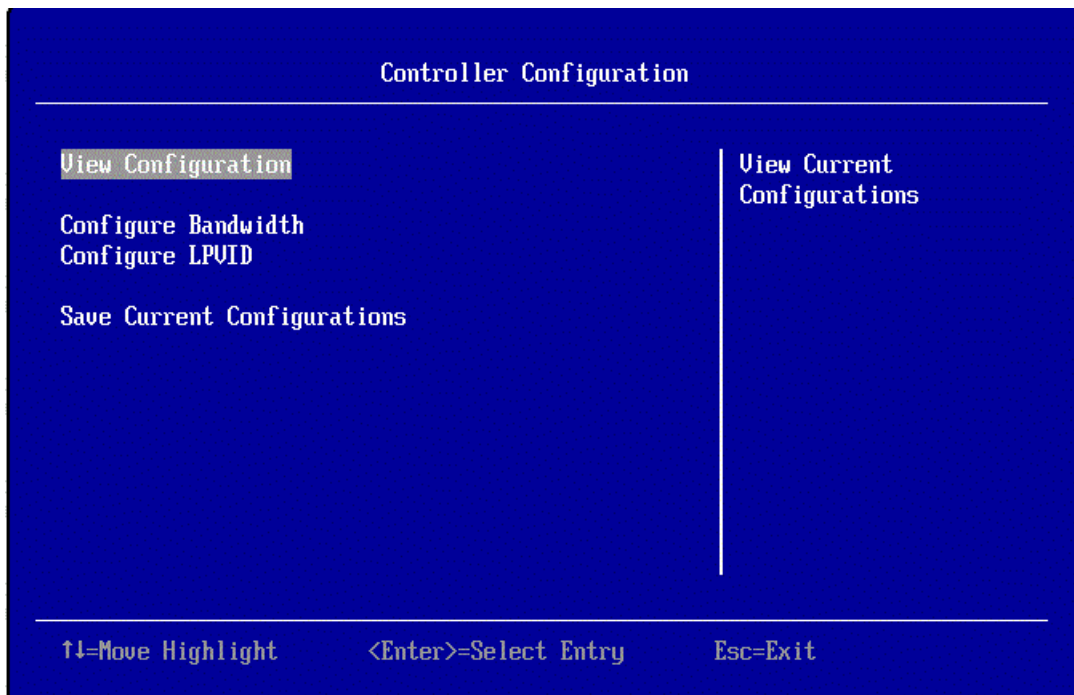


Figure 10-15 Controller Configuration Screen

From the Controller Configuration screen, you can view the current configuration of each function, configure the minimum and maximum bandwidth percentage, configure the LPVID per function, and save the current configuration.

Viewing the Configuration

To view the current multichannel configuration:

1. On the Controller Configuration screen, select **View Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. The View Configuration screen appears.

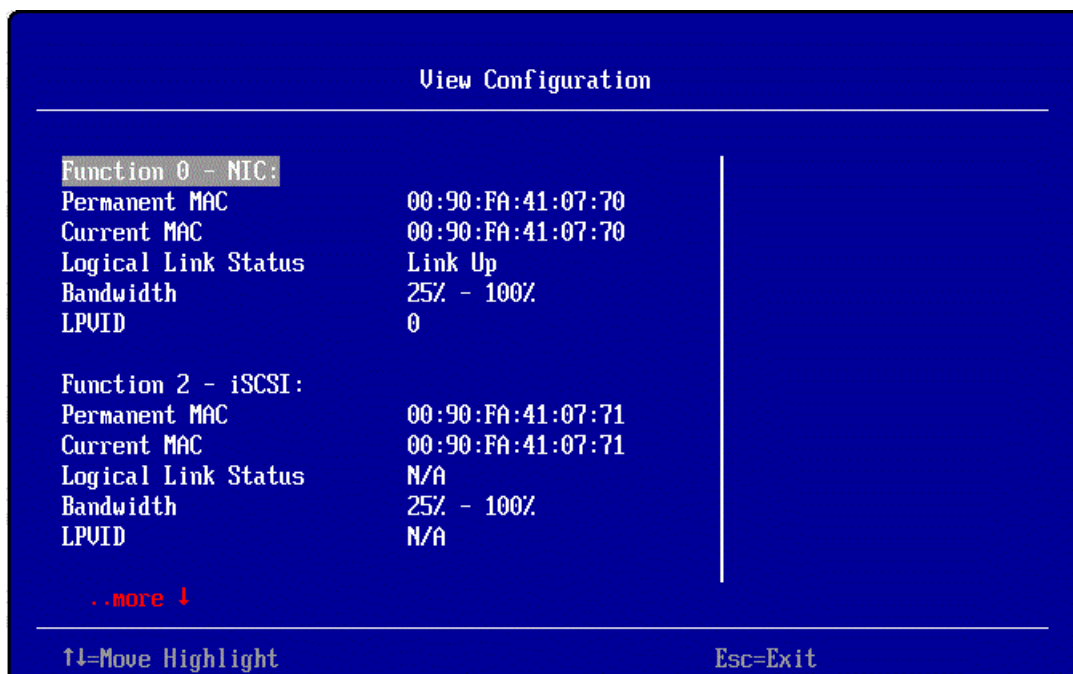


Figure 10-16 Multichannel Configuration for Function 0 Screen

From the View Configuration screen, you can view information for that specific function, including the permanent and current MAC addresses, the logical link status, the minimum and maximum bandwidth settings, and LPVID of all of the NIC functions.

Note: Logical Link Status and LPVID for storage functions (iSCSI and FCoE) display as "N/A".

2. When you are finished viewing the configurations, press **<Esc>** to return to the Controller Configuration screen.

Configuring Minimum and Maximum Bandwidth

To configure bandwidth:

1. On the Controller Configuration screen, select **Configure Bandwidth** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure Bandwidth screen appears.

Configure Bandwidth	
Configure Minimum Bandwidth	
Function 0	[25]
Function 2	[25]
Function 4	[25]
Function 6	[25]
Configure Maximum Bandwidth	
Function 0	[100]
Function 2	[90]
Function 4	[100]
Function 6	[100]
↑↓=Move Highlight <Enter>=Select Entry Esc=Exit	

Figure 10-17 Configure Bandwidth Screen

2. Select a specific function under Configure Minimum Bandwidth or Configure Maximum Bandwidth and press **<Enter>**.
 - The Minimum Bandwidth value is the least amount of bandwidth that the function can provide. It is represented as a percentage. The Minimum Bandwidth value must be less than or equal to the Maximum Bandwidth value. The total of the Minimum Bandwidth values for all enabled functions on that port must be equal to 100.
 - The Maximum Bandwidth value is the greatest amount of bandwidth that the function can provide. It is represented as a percentage.
3. Enter the value for the specified function and press **<Enter>**.
4. When you are finished configuring bandwidths, press **<Esc>** to return to the Controller Configuration screen.

Note: To disable a function, set the Minimum Bandwidth value to 0.

Configuring the LPVID

The LPVID is used to enforce a VLAN ID on all traffic originating from an IP address, channel, or PCI function. If the operating system for that PCI function has set up a VLAN ID, then the operating system-configured VLAN ID takes precedence over the LPVID for transmit packets while the operating system-configured VLAN ID and LPVID-tagged packets will both be received. If the operating system has not set up any VLAN IDs, then the LPVID is used for tagging.

Note: LPVID and user-configured VLAN IDs from the operating system must be different.

Note: LPVIDs also need to be configured on the switch port.

Each LPVID must be unique and is relevant for NIC traffic only. The LPVID is not supported for storage functions. For iSCSI storage functions, you must configure a VLAN ID through iSCSISelect or through the host. For additional information, see “Configuring VLAN ID and VLAN Priority” on page 87.

To configure an LPVID:

1. On the Controller Configuration screen, select **Configure LPVID** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure LPVID screen appears.

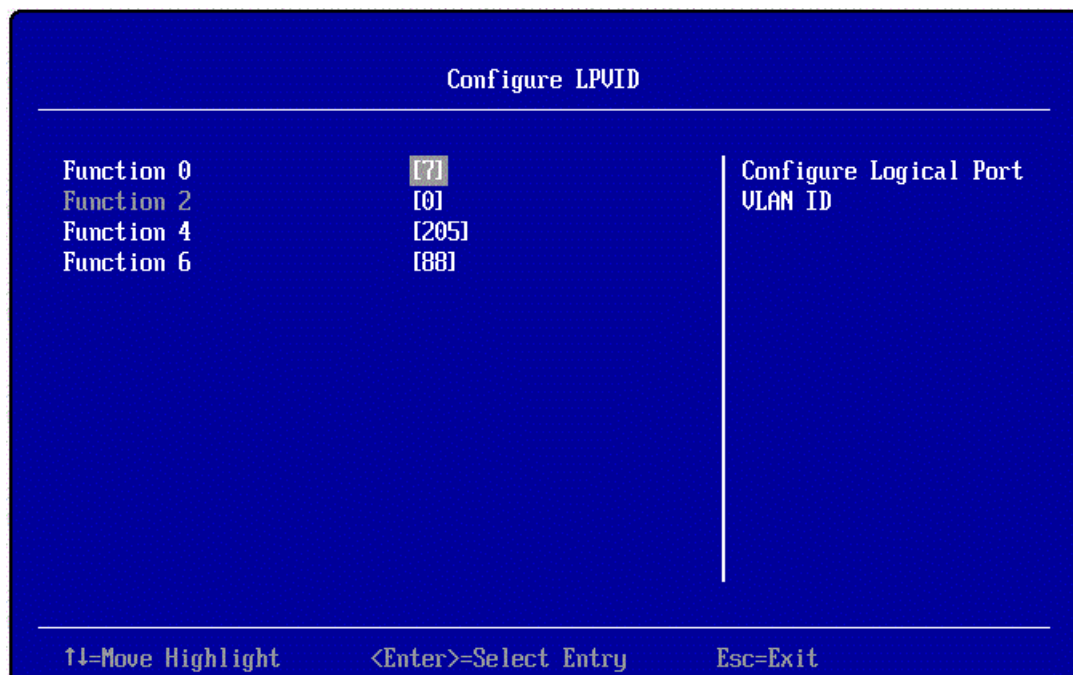


Figure 10-18 Configure LPVID Screen

2. Select the LPVID value for a specific function and press **<Enter>**.
3. Enter a value and press **<Enter>**. The LPVID range is 2-4094. A value of 0 disables the LPVID.

Note: LPVID values 1 and 4095 are currently reserved and cannot be used or configured.

- When you are finished configuring LPVIDs, press <Esc> to return to the Controller Configuration screen.

Saving the Current Configuration

To save the configuration changes, on the Controller Configuration screen, select **Save Current Configurations** and press <Enter>.

Configuring Multichannel for IBM Adapters

Note: This section only pertains to certain Emulex OneConnect adapters that support IBM Virtual Fabric multichannel or Unified Fabric Protocol.

Multichannel provides the ability to configure multiple PCI functions or I/O channels for each adapter port.

Note: Setting up IBM Virtual Fabric or UFP multichannel depends on cooperation with adjacent switches.

To enable multichannel support:

- On the Emulex NIC Selection screen, select **Multichannel Mode** and press <Enter>. The Multichannel Mode dialog box appears.

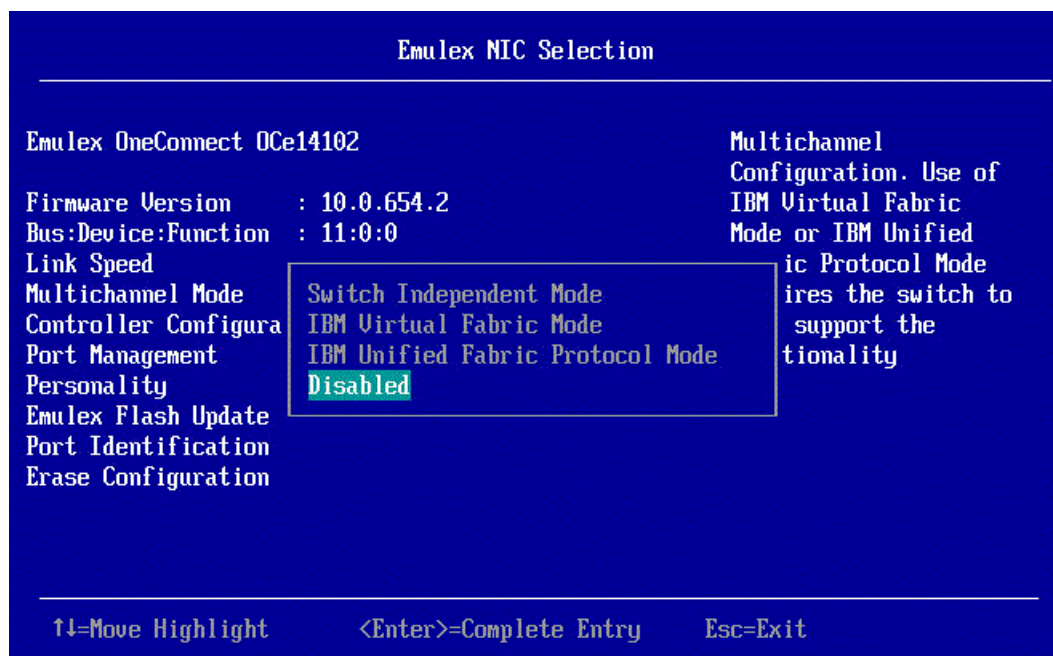


Figure 10-19 Multichannel Mode Dialog Box

- Select one of the following settings and press <Enter>:
 - Switch Independent Mode
 - IBM Virtual Fabric Mode
 - IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode
 - Disabled

Note: For more information on the available Multichannel Modes, see “Multichannel Modes”.

With the Multichannel Mode selected, you can now configure multichannel support. See “Multichannel Configuration” on page 129 for more information.

Multichannel Modes

Note: The following modes are only available on certain adapters and systems that support IBM Virtual Fabric and Unified Fabric Protocol modes.

An IBM Virtual Fabric-enabled switch provides the ability to configure an LPVID for a virtual channel or I/O channel on an adapter port. If multichannel is supported on your system, you can select one of the following modes:

- IBM Virtual Fabric Mode – select this mode when a OneConnect adapter is attached to an IBM Virtual Fabric-enabled switch.
- IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode – select this mode when a OneConnect adapter is attached to an IBM UFP-enabled switch.

Note: Some IBM switches support both UFP and IBM Virtual Fabric Mode.

- Switch Independent Mode – select this mode if you are using a switch other than an IBM Virtual Fabric or UFP-enabled switch.

Note: Multichannel functionality is only supported on OneConnect adapters running in 10 Gb mode. The 1 Gb mode does not support multichannel.

Note: An LPVID is optional for IBM Virtual Fabric Mode, but it is required for every function when using Switch Independent Mode.

Multichannel Configuration

The available options for configuring multichannel are dependent on the selected multichannel mode. Refer to the appropriate section below based on the mode you have selected.

IBM Virtual Fabric Mode Multichannel Configuration

To configure the multichannel configuration when the Multichannel Mode is set to IBM Virtual Fabric Mode:

1. On the Emulex NIC Selection screen, select **Controller Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. A list of available options is displayed.

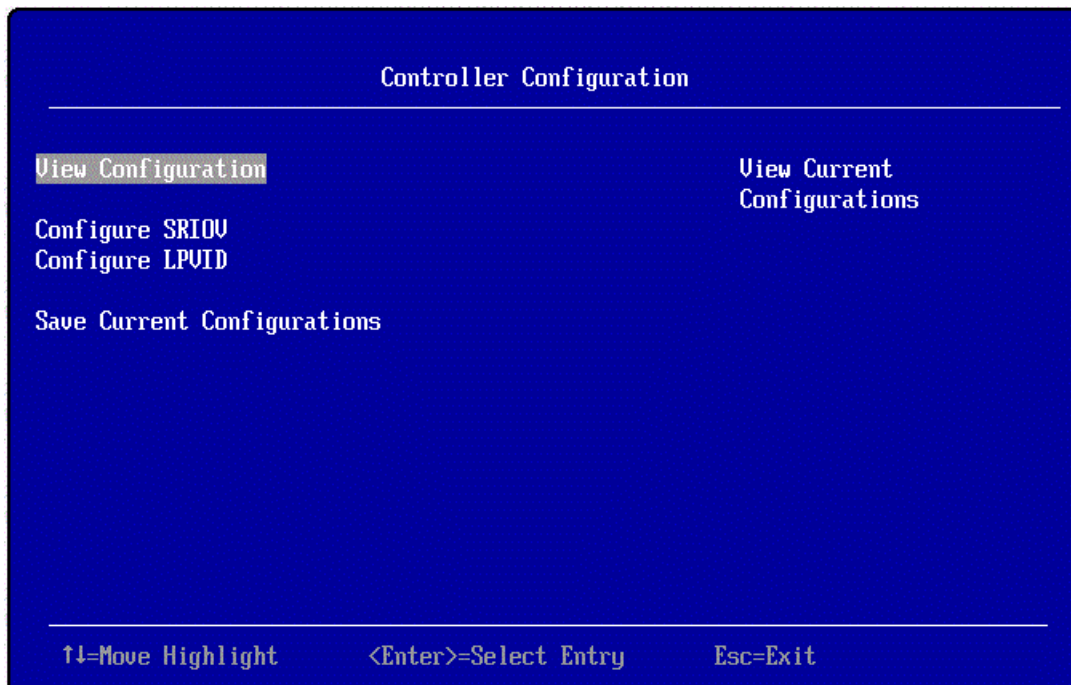


Figure 10-20 IBM Virtual Fabric Mode Controller Configuration Screen

2. From the Controller Configuration screen, you can perform the following tasks:
 - View the current configuration of each function – see “Viewing the Configuration” on page 125.
 - Configure SR-IOV – see “Configuring SR-IOV” on page 120.

Note: SR-IOV cannot be configured with multichannel enabled. The Configure SRIOV option only displays the current SR-IOV status, which is disabled.

 - Configure the LPVID per function – see “Configuring the LPVID” on page 127.
 - Save the current configuration – see “Saving the Current Configuration” on page 128.

IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode Multichannel Configuration

To configure the multichannel configuration when the Multichannel Mode is set to IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode:

1. On the Emulex NIC Selection screen, select **Controller Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. A list of available options is displayed.

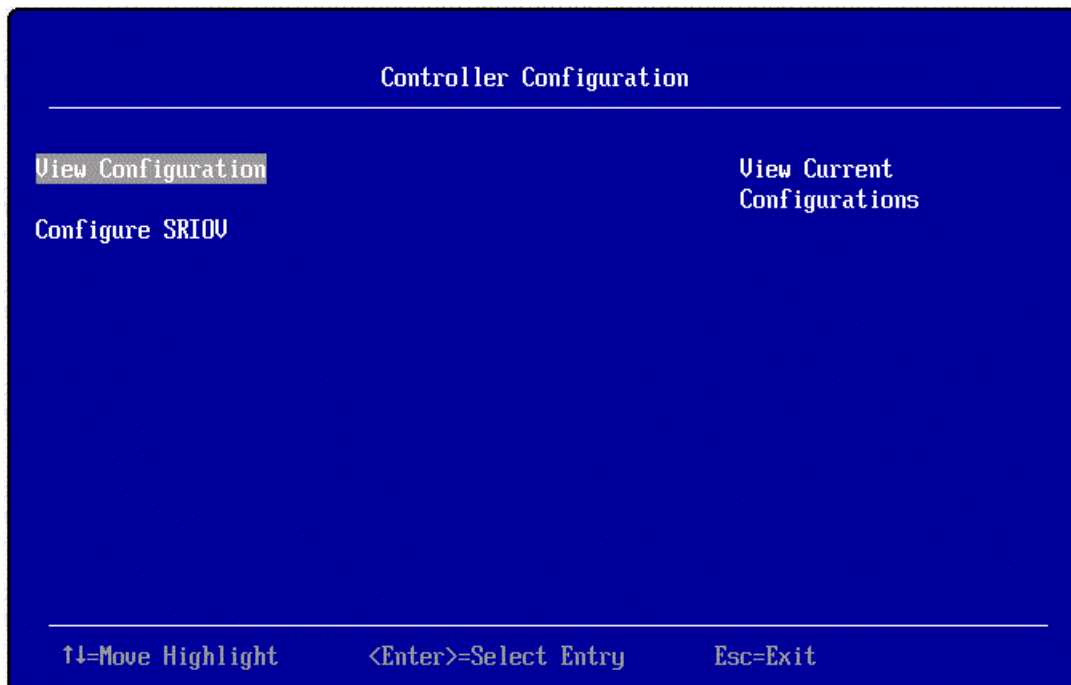


Figure 10-21 IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode Controller Configuration Screen

2. From the Controller Configuration screen, you can perform the following tasks:
 - View the current configuration of each function – see “Viewing the Configuration” on page 125 for more information.
 - Configure SR-IOV – see “Configuring SR-IOV” on page 120.

Note: SR-IOV cannot be configured with multichannel enabled. The Configure SRIOV option only displays the current SR-IOV status, which is disabled.

Switch Independent Mode Multichannel Configuration

To configure the multichannel configuration when the Multichannel Mode is set to Switch Independent Mode:

1. On the Emulex NIC Selection screen, select **Controller Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. A list of available options is displayed.

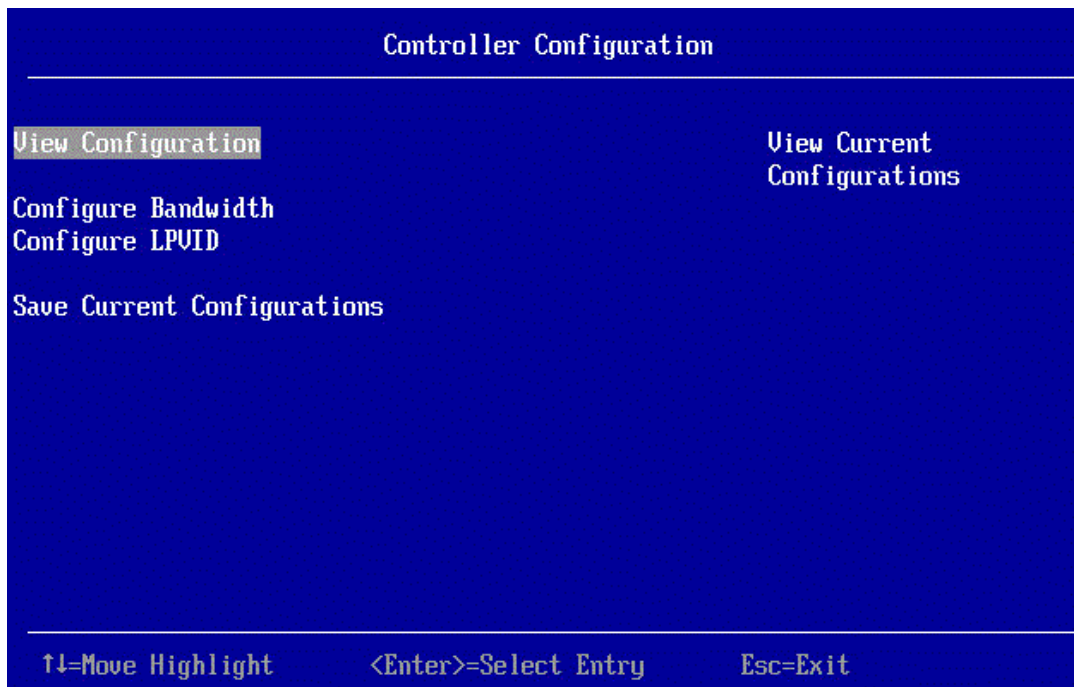


Figure 10-22 Switch Independent Mode Controller Configuration Screen

2. From the Controller Configuration screen, you can perform the following tasks:
 - View the current configuration of each function – see “Viewing the Configuration” on page 125.
 - Configure the minimum and maximum bandwidth percentage – see “Configuring Minimum and Maximum Bandwidth” on page 126.
 - Configure the LPVID per function – see “Configuring the LPVID” on page 127.

Note: An LPVID is required for every function when using Switch Independent Mode, but it is optional for IBM Virtual Fabric Mode and IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode.

 - Save the current configuration – see “Saving the Current Configuration” on page 128.

Port Management

Note: The Port Management functionality is only available on IBM NIC adapters, and the configuration menu is only available on port 0.

The Port Management option is used to enable or disable the physical ports.

When port 0 is disabled, it brings down the physical link for port 0 and the power consumption of the adapter is lowered; however, the PCI functions associated with that port must remain enabled.

When any other port is disabled, all of the corresponding functions associated with that port are disabled and removed from the PCI configuration space. Disabling these ports also lowers the power consumption of the adapter.

Enabling any of the ports restores the previously removed PCI functions and restores the power consumption back to its normal state.

Note: Enabling and disabling ports is applicable in both multichannel and non-multichannel configurations. If multichannel is enabled, all virtual functions associated with the disabled port will also be disabled.

To configure port management:

1. On the Controller Configuration screen, select **Port Management** and press **<Enter>**. The Port Management screen appears.

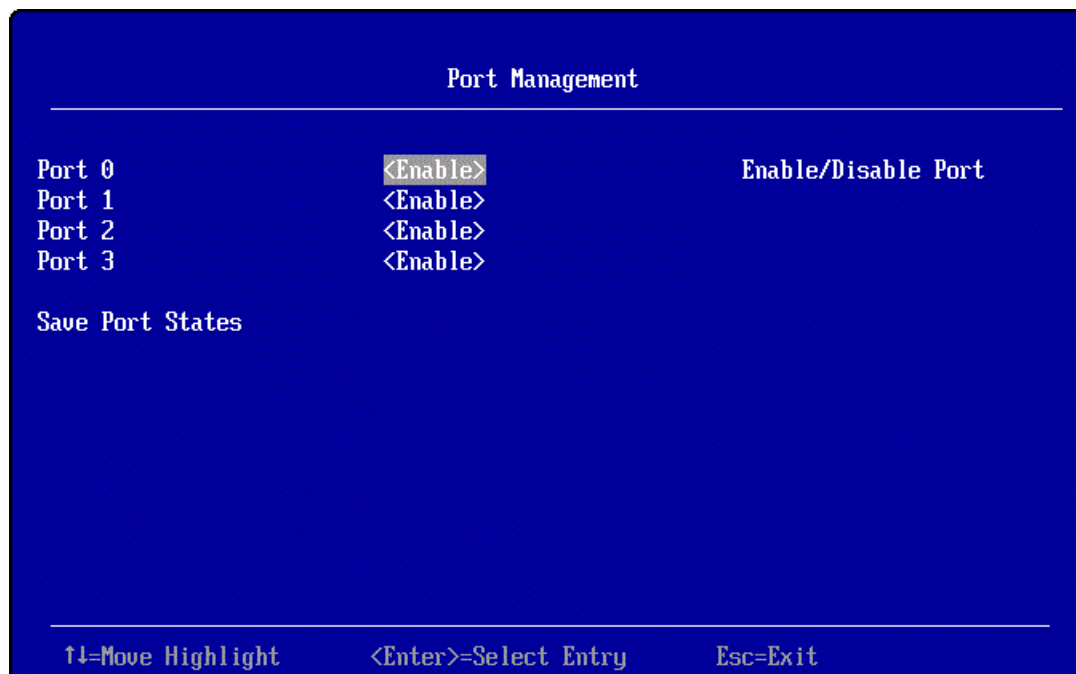


Figure 10-23 Port Management Screen

2. Select the current setting for a particular port and a drop-down menu appears.
3. From the drop-down menu, select **Enable** or **Disable** and press **<Enter>**.
4. When you are finished, select **Save Port States** to save the current settings.

5. Press <Esc> to return to the Controller Configuration screen.

Note: A reboot is required for this setting to take effect.

Feature on Demand

Note: The Feature on Demand functionality is only available on some IBM adapters.

FoD is an IBM proprietary protocol that enables storage functions on Emulex adapters. This feature requires a unique license key to be applied from IBM's IMM. For additional information on obtaining a license key, contact your IBM representative.

The FoD Type and FUI fields are required by IBM to generate a unique license key for the specific adapter for which you have requested a license. Each controller in the system should obtain its own license key.

To view Feature on Demand information, from the Emulex NIC Selection screen, select **Feature On Demand** and press <Enter>. The Feature On Demand screen appears.

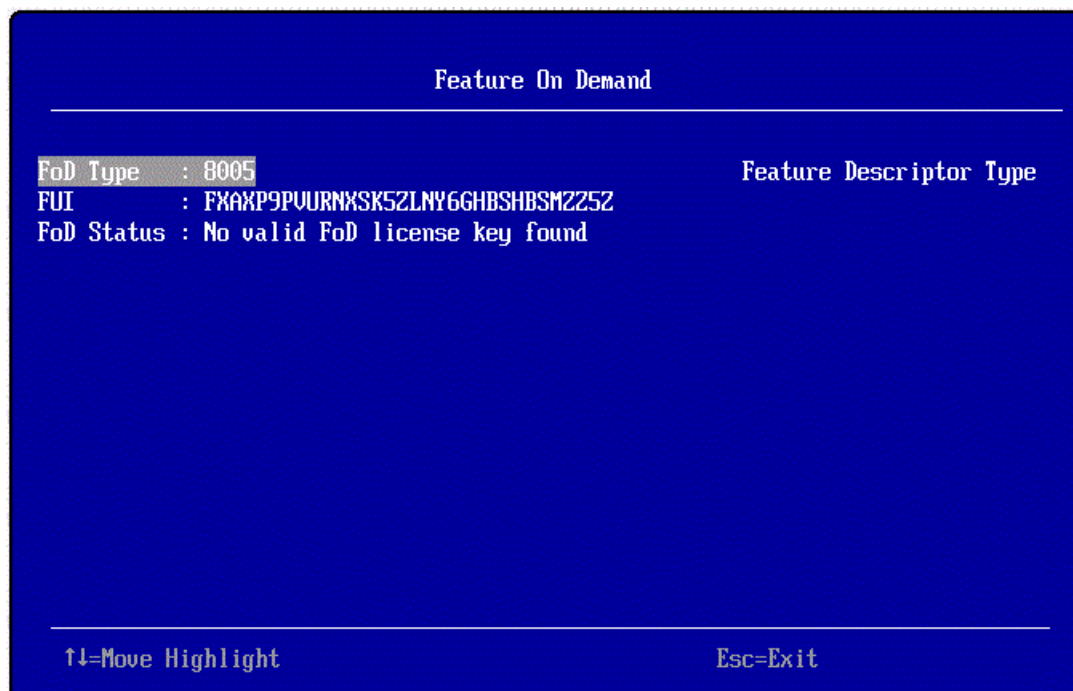


Figure 10-24 Feature On Demand Screen

From the Feature On Demand screen, you can view information on the feature type, the FoD Unique Identifier, and its current status.

FoD Type: The FoD Type field is unique for each platform. Different products have different FoD types. For example, LOM products have a different FoD type than mezzanine cards.

FUI: The FUI field is internally generated by the Emulex firmware using the FoD type and the adapter's serial number. The FUI is unique to each adapter because each card will have its own unique serial number.

FoD Status: The FoD Status field indicates whether a license key has been applied properly or not.

- When the FoD status field is set to “Enabled”, it indicates that the FoD license key has been successfully applied and FoD is enabled. When FoD is enabled, you will see all of the storage personalities under the Personality menu option, including NIC, iSCSI, and FCOE.
- In all other cases, the FoD Status field indicates that a failure has occurred or that an FoD license has not been applied.

Identifying a Port

To physically identify a port on the Emulex NIC Selection screen, select **Port Identification** and press **<Enter>**. The LEDs on your controller start blinking indicating the selected port.

Note: Not all controllers have LEDs that are visible externally. If you are using an add-in card in a blade server environment, the port identification or beaconing capability does not work.

Note: If port identification is not supported on your system, you will receive a message stating that it is not supported.

Erasing Ports and Controller Configuration

Note: When selecting this setting, all previous configuration settings are returned to their factory default settings except for the current personality selection. Emulex recommends performing this action to provide a clean environment for new configuration settings to take effect.

To erase ports and the controller configuration:

1. On the Emulex NIC Selection Screen, select **Erase Configuration** and press **<Enter>**.

A warning appears asking if you want to erase the configurations for both ports of the controller.

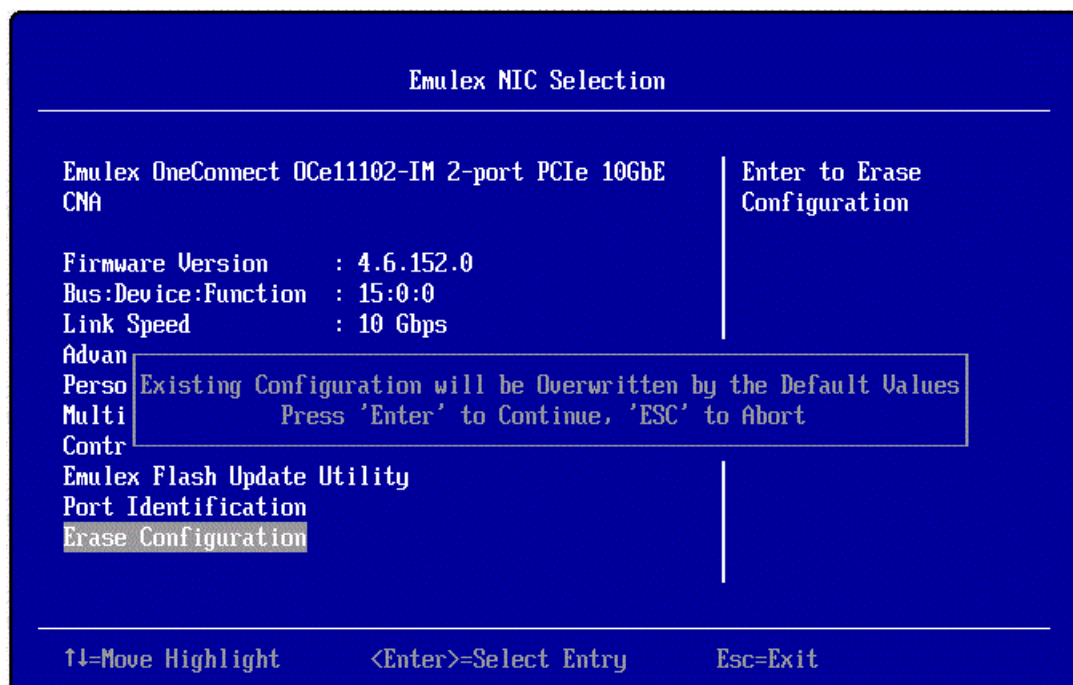


Figure 10-25 Erase Configuration Screen

2. Press **<Enter>** to delete the controller configuration, or press **<Esc>** to abort the operation.

UEFI NIC Diagnostics

The UEFI NIC driver diagnostics protocol can be used to run diagnostic tests on each NIC function of the card. This protocol is used by a platform management utility to allow you to run driver specific diagnostics on a controller.

EFI_DRIVER_DIAGNOSTICS_PROTOCOL

Syntax:

```
drvdiag [-c] [-l XXX] [-s] [-e] [-m] [driverhandle [devicehandle  
[childhandle]]]
```

Description:

The UEFI NIC driver diagnostics protocol can be used to run diagnostic tests on each NIC function of the card. Diagnostics can be run in standard mode, extended mode, and manufacturing mode.

Parameters:

-c	Diagnose all child devices.
-l XXX	Diagnose using the ISO 639-2 language specified by XXX.
-s	Run diagnostics in standard mode. Diagnostics in standard mode run the LED test, Link test, Get MAC test, and the DMA test (Read, Write, and Read and Write)
-e	Run diagnostics in extended mode. Diagnostics in extended mode run the ARM Timer test, the MAC Loopback test, and the Physical Loopback test.
-m	Run diagnostics in manufacturing mode. Diagnostics in manufacturing mode run the Network Loopback test for the OCe10100-series adapters and the Low-level Subsystem NLB test for the OCe11100-series, OCe14000-series, and LPe16202/OCe15100 adapters.
driverhandle	Handle of the driver being configured.
devicehandle	Handle of a device that the driverhandle is managing.
childhandle	Handle of a device that is a child of the devicehandle.

Examples:

The following examples show you a way of using the EFI_DRIVER_DIAGNOSTICS_PROTOCOL.

The `driver` command identifies the handle of the driver:

```
Shell> drivers
```

```
122 Emulex 10G NIC
```

The `drvdiag` command list all the devices available for diagnostics. Each Ctrl [XXX] corresponds to a NIC function, which may be physical or virtual. The command returns handles for NIC functions on both ports.

```
Shell> driverdiag
```

```
Drv[122] Ctrl[121]
```

```
Drv[122] Ctrl[123]
```

To run the standard diagnostic tests on function 0:

```
Shell> drvdiag -s 122 121
```

To run the standard diagnostic tests on all NIC functions:

```
Shell> drvdiag -s 122
```

11. Configuring UEFI for iSCSI

Note: For systems with multiple adapters, the UEFI system firmware or boot code uses the highest version driver installed on any of the adapters. Adapters with older versions of EFIBoot are managed by the more recent version, but only as long as the adapter with the most recent version is in the system. The latest firmware and boot code must be installed on each adapter in the system to ensure that each adapter runs the latest firmware and boot code.

Overview

UEFIBoot supports:

- EFI protocols – Configuration and component name are supported.
- Operating systems – Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2012 R2, Red-Hat Linux 6 and SLES 11 SP2
- Multi-Device path – SCSI device path is selectable through the driver configuration protocol.
- Multi-initiators – Up to 96 adapters in a system.
- Multi-target – 256 targets are selectable through the driver configuration protocol.
- Multi-LUNs – Up to 256 LUNs are supported.
- Multi-utility – Setup is supported.

This version of UEFIboot is loaded from flash into system memory.

When UEFIBoot is loaded in an EFI Shell, type “drivers” and press <Enter> to see if the driver is loaded.

Note: If you are using Dell adapters, refer to appendix F., “Dell UEFI,” on page 226 for information on using the Dell UEFI utility.

Navigating the Emulex iSCSI Configuration Utility

The Emulex iSCSI configuration utility has menus and configuration screens. Use the following methods to navigate them:

- Press the up/down arrows on your keyboard to navigate menu options or configuration fields. When multiple adapters are listed, use the up/down arrows to scroll to the additional adapters.
- Press the <+>, <->, or <Enter> keys to change numeric values.
- Press <Enter> to select an option.
- Press <Esc> to exit the current screen and show the previous screen.

Starting the Emulex iSCSI Configuration Utility

Depending on the OEM UEFI configuration, the Emulex iSCSI configuration utility may appear under different setup menus in the OEM system firmware or BIOS (such as **Storage**).

To start the Emulex iSCSI configuration utility:

1. Select the **Emulex iSCSI Utility** for a particular function and press **<Enter>**.

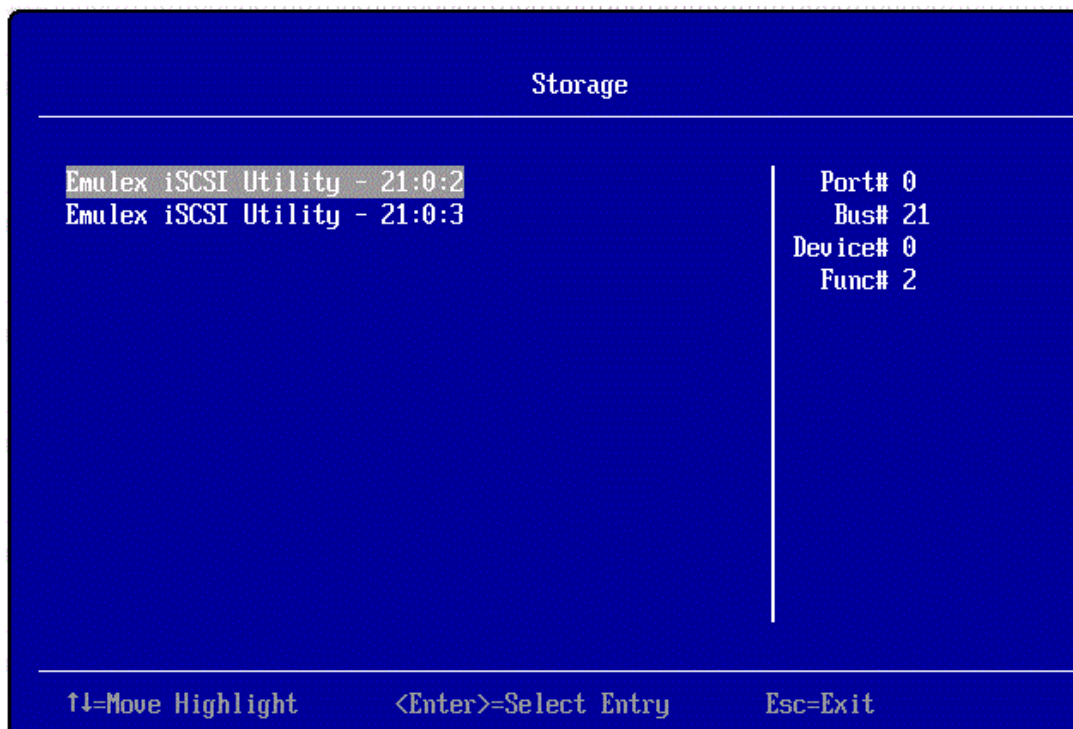


Figure 11-1 Storage Screen

The Controller Configuration Menu screen is displayed.

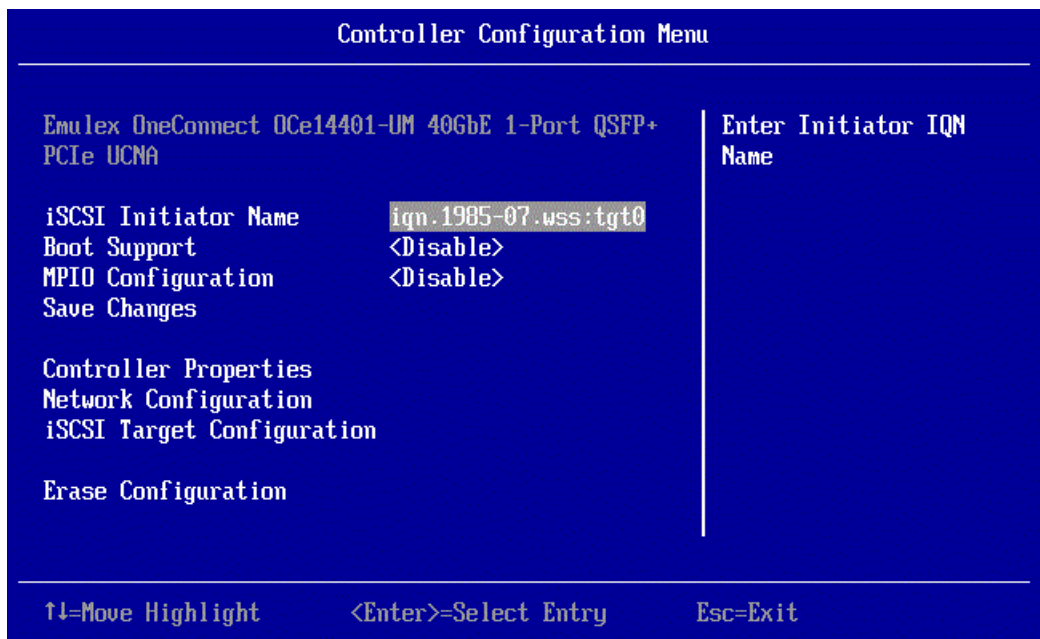


Figure 11-2 Controller Configuration Menu Screen

2. Highlight **iSCSI Initiator Name** and press **<Enter>** to edit the initiator name.

This is a global setting. The initiator name configured on one adapter is reflected on all adapters in the system.

Note: HP systems are an exception to the previous statement. Each port on an HP system can be configured with a unique initiator name.

3. To save changes, select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring MPIO

MPIO support allows the initiator to log in dual sessions to the same target. In this way I/O can be sent over either TCP/IP connection to the target. If one session fails another session can continue processing I/O without interruption to the application. In iSCSI target configuration, you have the option of setting dual network paths to a single boot LUN.

Note: Although MPIO boot support allows the initiator to log into multiple sessions, the iSCSI BIOS currently limits the number of sessions to two iSCSI sessions for a single boot LUN.

You must follow these steps in this order to configure MPIO boot support for each operating system.

1. Use the Emulex iSCSI configuration utility to configure the first path to a boot target.
2. Complete normal operating system installation.

3. Install third-party MPIO software for your operating system.
4. Configure the second path to a single boot LUN through the Emulex iSCSI configuration utility.

To configure MPIO:

1. From the Controller Configuration Menu screen, select **MPIO Configuration** and press **<Enter>**.

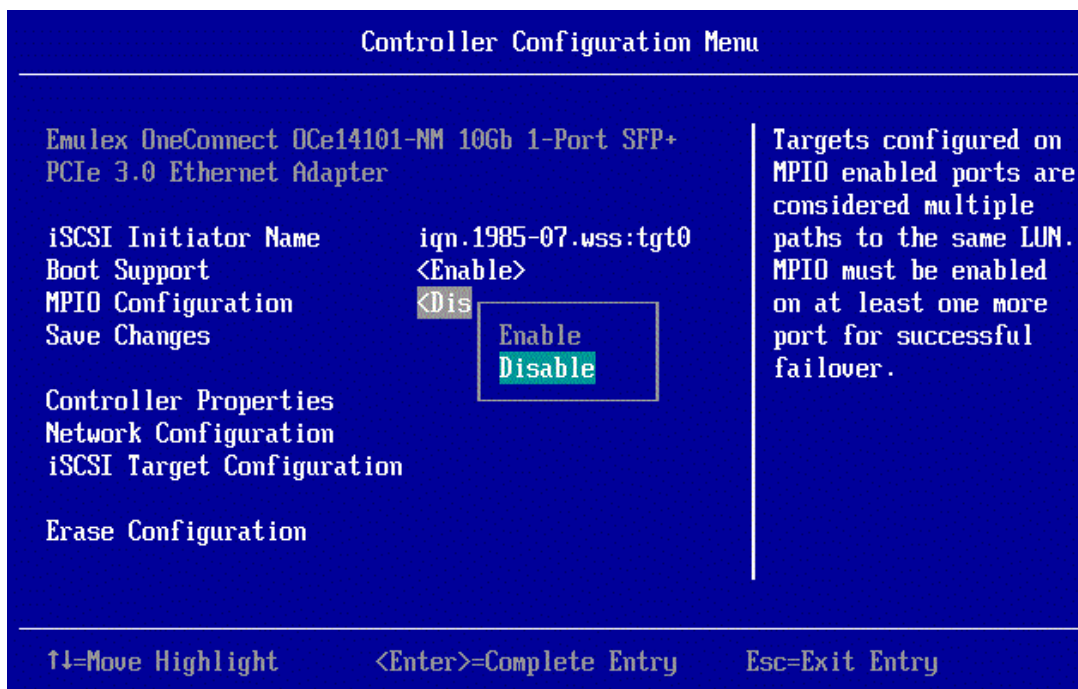


Figure 11-3 Controller Configuration Menu Screen with MPIO Configuration Setting Highlighted

2. From the MPIO Configuration drop-down menu, select **Enable** or **Disable** and press **<Enter>**.
3. To save your changes, select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring Boot Support

Boot support is provided for each port or function. If boot support is enabled, you can boot from the specified function. If boot support is disabled, you will not be able to boot from the function.

To configure boot support:

1. From the Storage screen (Figure 11-1), select the **Emulex iSCSI Utility** for a particular function and press **<Enter>**. The Controller Configuration Menu is displayed.

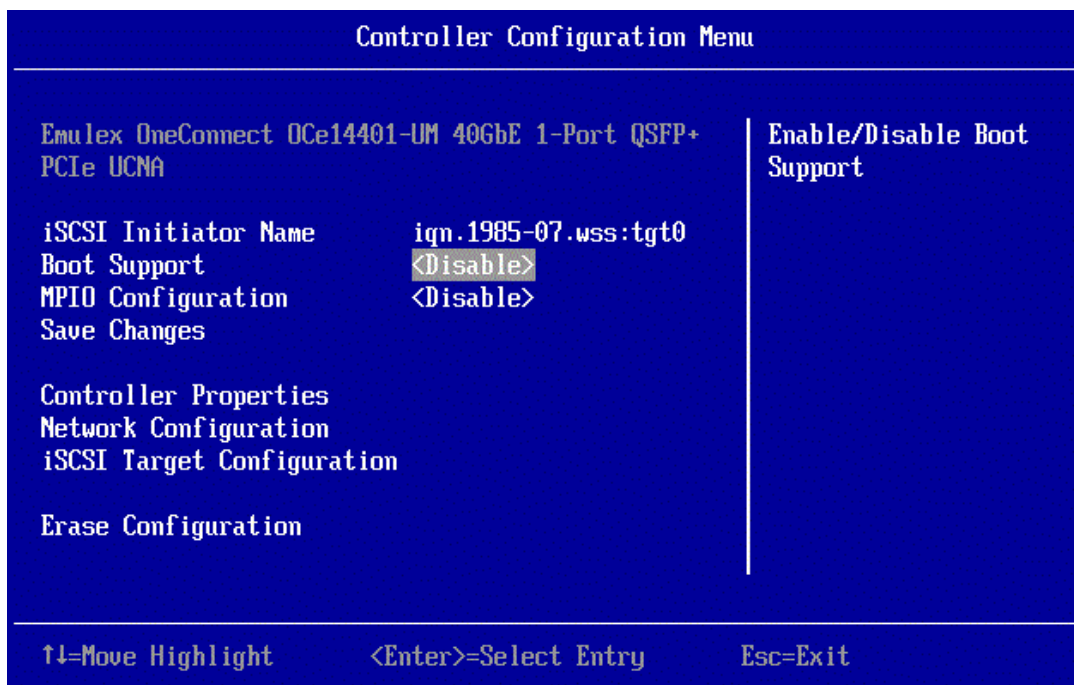


Figure 11-4 Controller Configuration Menu Screen with Boot Support Setting Highlighted

2. Select **Boot Support** and press **<Enter>**.
3. From the Boot Support drop-down menu, select **Enable** or **Disable** and press **<Enter>**.
4. To save your changes, select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>**.

Viewing the Controller Properties

To view the controller properties:

1. From the Storage screen (Figure 11-1), select the **Emulex iSCSI Utility** for a particular function and press **<Enter>**. The Controller Configuration Menu is displayed (Figure 11-2).
2. From the Controller Configuration Menu screen, select **Controller Properties** and press **<Enter>**. The Controller Properties screen is displayed.

Controller Properties		
Controller Model Number	Emulex OneConnect DCe14101-NM 10Gb 1-Port SFP+ PCIe 3.0 Ethernet Adapter	Controller Model Number
Controller Description	Emulex OneConnect DCe14101-NM 10Gb 1-Port SFP+ PCIe 3.0 Etherne	
BIOS Version	v100.00a6	
Firmware Version	10.0.694.0	
Discover Boot Target via DHCP	<Disable>	
Save Changes		
↑↓=Move Highlight		Esc=Exit

Figure 11-5 Controller Properties Screen

Configuring the Network

To configure the network:

1. From the Controller Configuration Menu screen (Figure 11-2), select **Network Configuration** and press <Enter>. The Network Configuration screen is displayed.

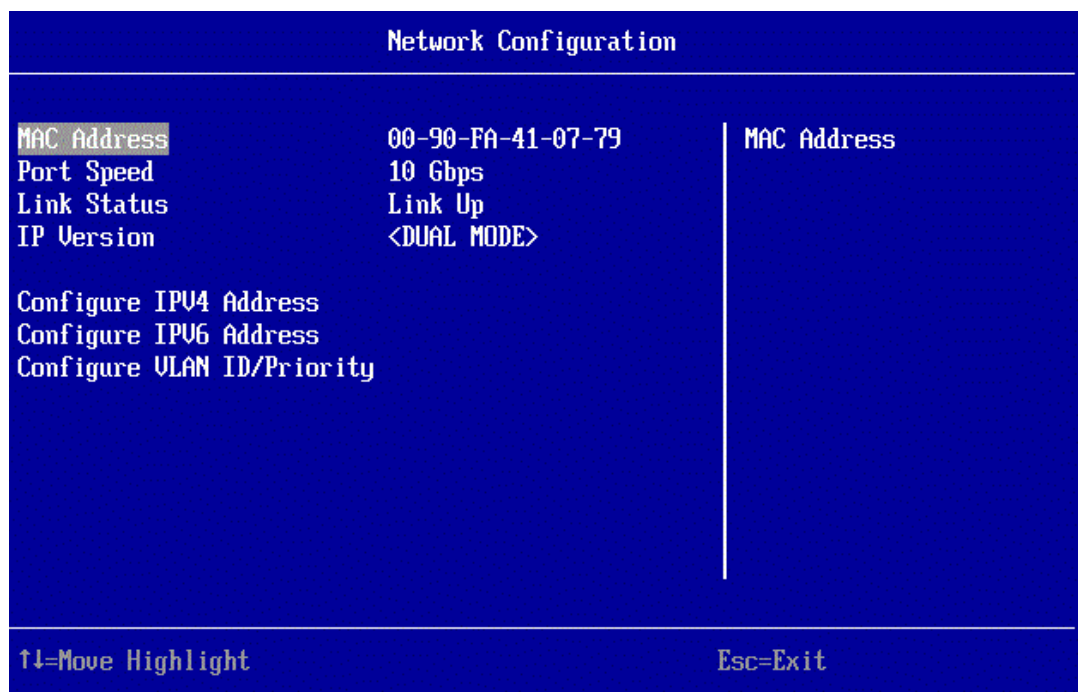


Figure 11-6 Network Configuration Screen

The Network Configuration screen displays the MAC address, port speed, and link status for the adapter. From the Network Configuration screen, you can configure the following items:

- IP version
- IPv4 address
- IPv6 address
- VLAN ID/priority

Configuring the IP Version

To configure the IP version:

1. On the Network Configuration screen (Figure 11-6), select **IP version** and press **<Enter>**.

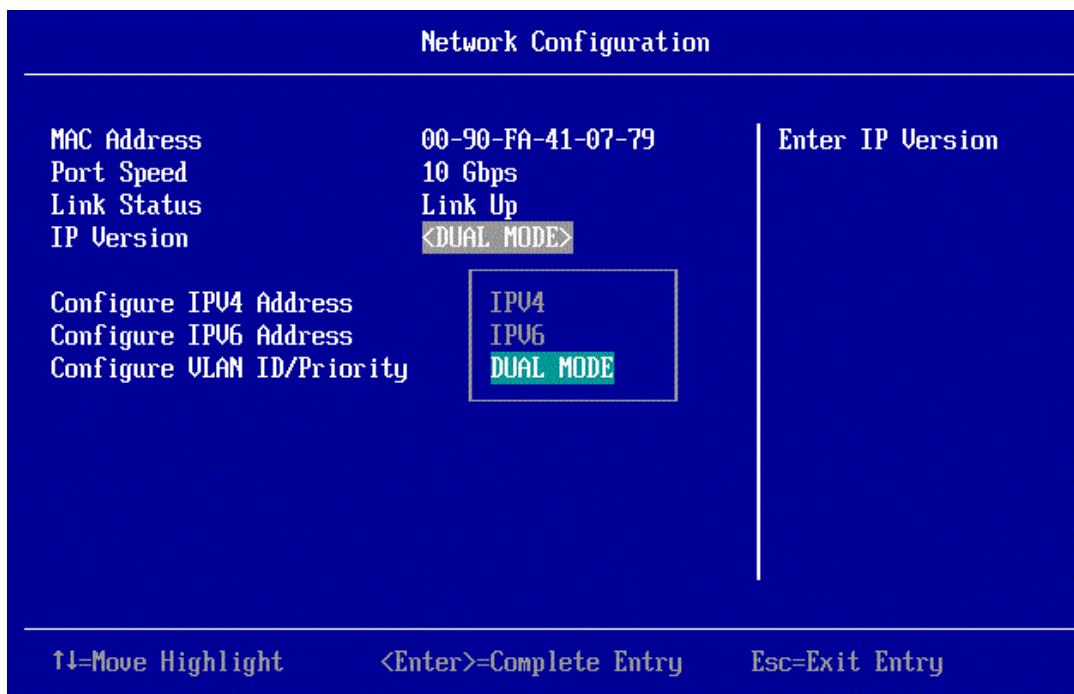


Figure 11-7 Network Configuration Menu Screen with IP Version Setting Highlighted

2. From the IP Version drop-down menu, select **IPV4**, **IPV6**, or **DUAL MODE** and press **<Enter>**.
3. To save your changes, select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring an IPV4 Address

To configure an IPv4 address:

1. On the Network Configuration screen (Figure 11-6), ensure the IP version is set to IPv4 or DUAL MODE.
2. Select **Configure IPV4 Address** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure IPV4 Address screen is displayed.

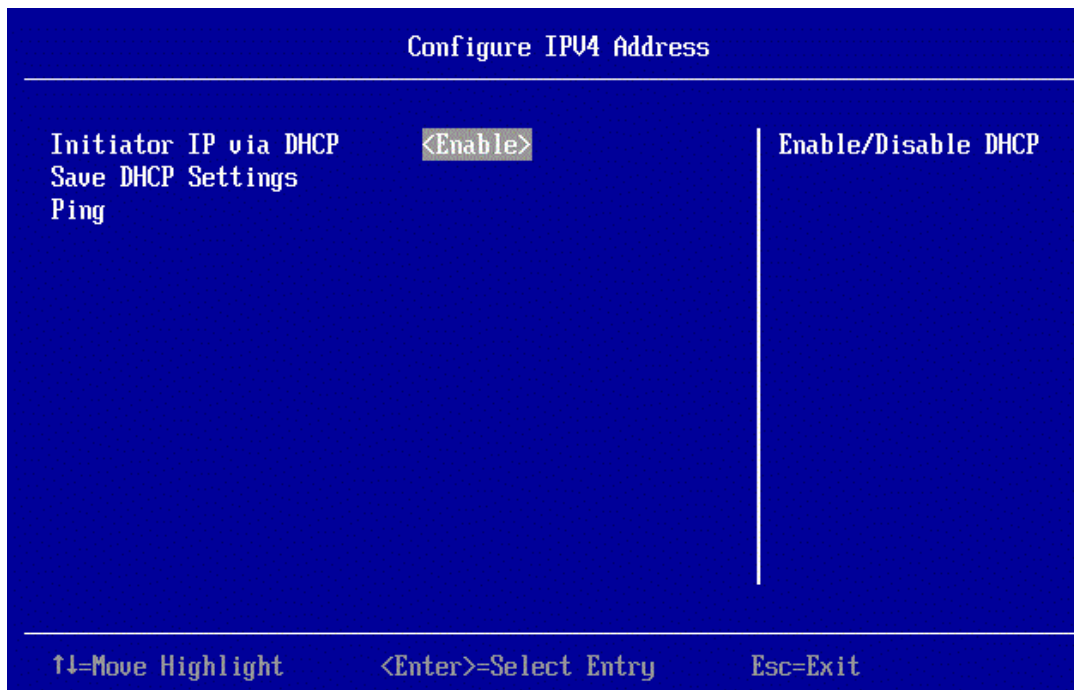


Figure 11-8 Configure IPV4 Address Screen

3. From the Configure IPV4 Address screen, you can do the following:
 - Enable DHCP for automatic assignment of the IP address through a DHCP server. See “Automatically Assigning an IP Address through a DHCP Server” on page 147 for more information.
 - Configure a static IP address (when Initiator IP via DHCP is disabled). See “Manually Assigning an IP Address” on page 148 for more information.
 - Ping the iSCSI initiator. See “Pinging the iSCSI Initiator” on page 148 for more information.

Automatically Assigning an IP Address through a DHCP Server

To enable DHCP for automatic assignment of the IP address through a DHCP server:

1. On the Configure IPV4 Address screen (Figure 11-8), select **Initiator IP via DHCP** and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Initiator IP via DHCP drop-down menu, select **Enable** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Save DHCP Settings** and press **<Enter>**.

Manually Assigning an IP Address

To manually assign an IP address:

1. On the Configure IPV4 Address screen (Figure 11-8), ensure that the Initiator IP via DHCP is set to **<Disable>**. If you change this setting from **<Enable>** to **<Disable>**, select **Save DHCP Settings** and press **<Enter>**.
2. Select **Configure Static IP Address** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure Static IP Address screen appears.

Configure Static IP Address

IP Address	0.0.0.0	Enter the IP Address
Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0	
Default Gateway	0.0.0.0	

Save Changes

↑↓=Move Highlight <Enter>=Select Entry Esc=Exit

Figure 11-9 Configure Static IP Address Screen

3. Enter the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway in the corresponding fields.
4. Select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>**.

Pinging the iSCSI Initiator

To ping the iSCSI initiator, on the Configure IPV4 Address screen (Figure 11-8), select **Ping** and press **<Enter>**.

- If the ping is successful, a reply message is displayed with the iSCSI initiator IP address.
- If the ping is not successful, a failure message is displayed.

Configuring an IPV6 Address

To configure an IPv6 address:

1. On the Network Configuration screen (Figure 11-6), ensure the IP version is set to IPV6 or DUAL MODE.
2. Select **Configure IPV6 Address** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure IPV6 Address screen is displayed.

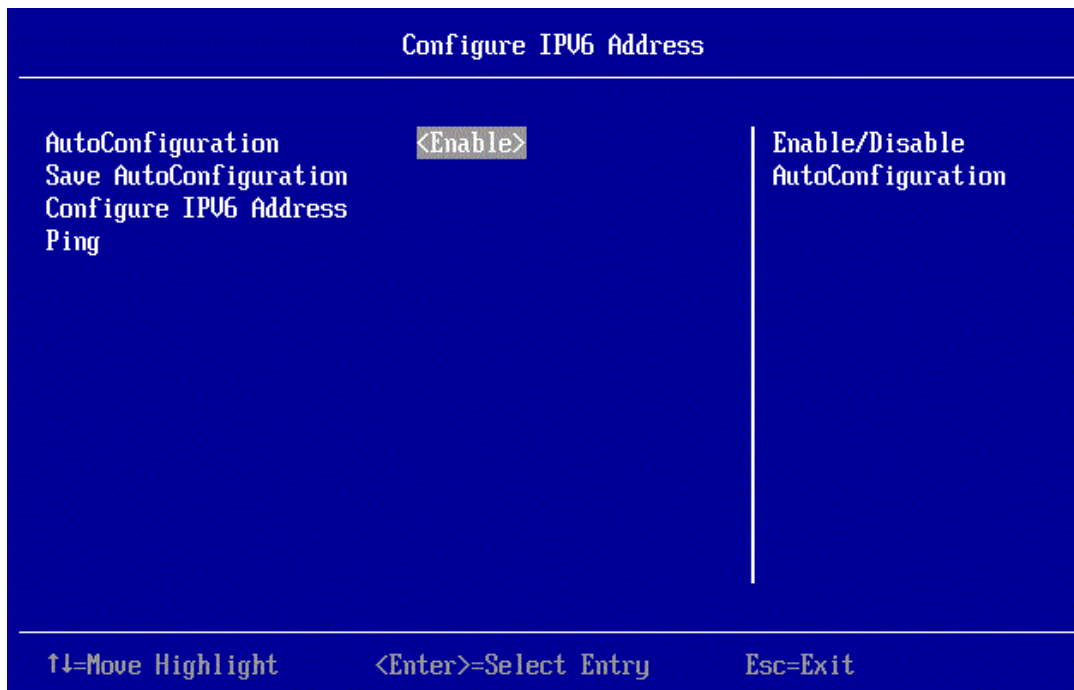


Figure 11-10 Configure IPV6 Address Screen

3. From the Configure IPV6 Address menu, you can do the following:
 - Enable automatic configuration of the IP address. See “Automatically Configure an IP Address” on page 149 for more information.
 - Configure the IPv6 address. See “Configuring the IPv6 Address” on page 150 for more information.
 - Ping the iSCSI initiator. See “Pinging the iSCSI Initiator” on page 150 for more information.

Automatically Configure an IP Address

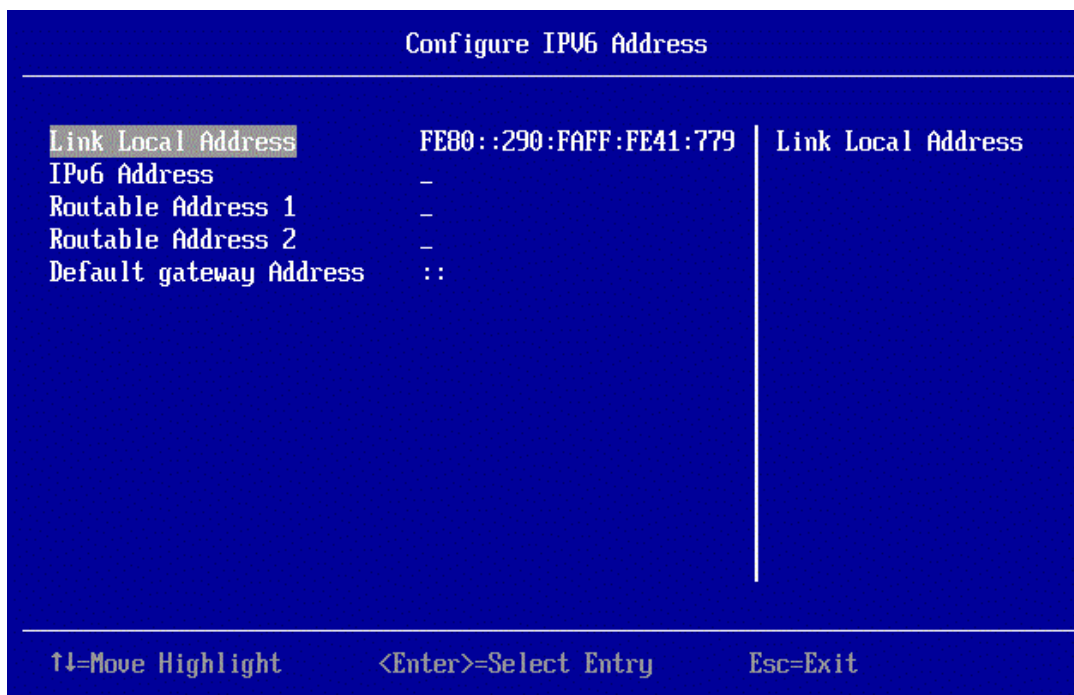
To enable automatic IP address configuration:

1. On the Configure IPV6 Address screen (Figure 11-10), select **AutoConfiguration** and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the AutoConfiguration drop-down menu, select **Enable** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Save AutoConfiguration** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring the IPv6 Address

To configure the IPv6 address:

1. On the Configure IPV6 Address screen (Figure 11-10), select **Configure IPV6 Address** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure IPV6 Address screen appears.



Configure IPV6 Address	
Link Local Address	FE80::290:FAFF:FE41:779
IPv6 Address	-
Routable Address 1	-
Routable Address 2	-
Default gateway Address	::

↑↓=Move Highlight <Enter>=Select Entry Esc=Exit

Figure 11-11 Configure IPV6 Address Settings Screen

2. Enter the link local address, IPv6 address, routable address 1, routable address 2, and default gateway address in the corresponding fields.
3. Press **<Esc>** to exit the menu.

Pinging the iSCSI Initiator

To ping the iSCSI initiator, on the Configure IPV6 Address screen (Figure 11-10), select **Ping** and press **<Enter>**.

- If the ping is successful, a reply message is displayed with the iSCSI initiator IP address.
- If the ping is not successful, a failure message is displayed.

Configuring VLAN ID/Priority

A VLAN is a way of partitioning the network. If the LAN is made up of all devices within a broadcast domain, a VLAN is a broadcast domain made up of switches. You first create a VLAN and then assign ports to a VLAN. All ports in a single VLAN are in a single broadcast domain.

You do not have to configure VLANs unless your network is already using them. Some reasons why VLANs are used include:

- A LAN increases in size with numerous devices
- A LAN has extensive broadcast traffic on it
- Groups of users on a LAN need more security

A VLAN ID, like an IP address or initiator name, is assigned a value to uniquely identify it on a network. A VLAN priority is set to determine what packet gets priority order within a VLAN.

To configure a VLAN ID/priority:

1. On the Network Configuration menu (Figure 11-6), select **Configure VLAN ID/Priority** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure VLAN ID/Priority dialog box appears.

Configure VLAN ID/Priority	
VLAN Support	<Enable>
VLAN ID	[0]
VLAN Priority	[0]
Save Changes	
↑↓=Move Highlight <Enter>=Select Entry Esc=Exit	

Figure 11-12 Configure VLAN/ID Priority Dialog Box

2. To enable VLAN support:
 - a. Select **VLAN Support** and press **<Enter>**.
 - b. From the VLAN Support drop-down menu, select **Enable** and press **<Enter>**.
3. To assign a VLAN ID number:

- a. Select **VLAN ID** and press **<Enter>**. This is a unique value you assign to each VLAN on a single device. There are a maximum of 4093 possible values ranging from 2-4094.
 - b. Enter a VLAN ID value and press **<Enter>**.
4. To set a VLAN priority, if necessary:
 - a. Select **VLAN PRIORITY** and press **<Enter>**. This unique value assigns a priority to outbound packets containing a specified VLAN ID. Valid values range from 0-7, with 0 the highest priority level.
 - b. Enter a VLAN priority value and press **<Enter>**.
5. Select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>**.
6. Press **<Esc>** to return to the Network Configuration menu.

Updating Firmware

To update firmware, you must use the NIC firmware update utility which revises the iSCSI function with a single firmware download image. For more information on downloading firmware, see “Using the Emulex NIC Configuration Utility” on page 109.

Adding and Configuring Targets

Once the initiator has been configured you need a process that shows you how to make an iSCSI target available to that initiator host. The discovery process presents an initiator with a list of available targets. The discovery methods used for discovering targets are:

- DHCP discovery
- SendTargets discovery
- Manually configuring targets

Before you begin the login session, gather the following information:

- iSCSI target name (only for manual configuration) – The target name that you are adding. The iSCSI target name is not required if you are using DHCP or SendTargets discovery. It is required only for manually configured targets. This name should be known to you based on how you configured your iSCSI target.
- iSCSI target IP address – The IP address of the target into which you are logging.
- TCP port number – The TCP port number of the target portal. Typically this is 3260, which is the well-known port number defined for use by iSCSI.

Discovering and Adding Boot Targets through DHCP

To automatically discover and add boot targets through DHCP:

1. On the Controller Properties screen (Figure 11-5), set **Discover Boot Target via DHCP** to **<Enable>** and press **<Enter>**.

2. Select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Reboot the system.
4. On the Controller Configuration menu (Figure 11-2), select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. The iSCSI Target Configuration screen shows the discovered targets.

Note: For more information on configuring a DHCP boot target, refer to “Discovering Targets through DHCP for iSCSI” on page 105.

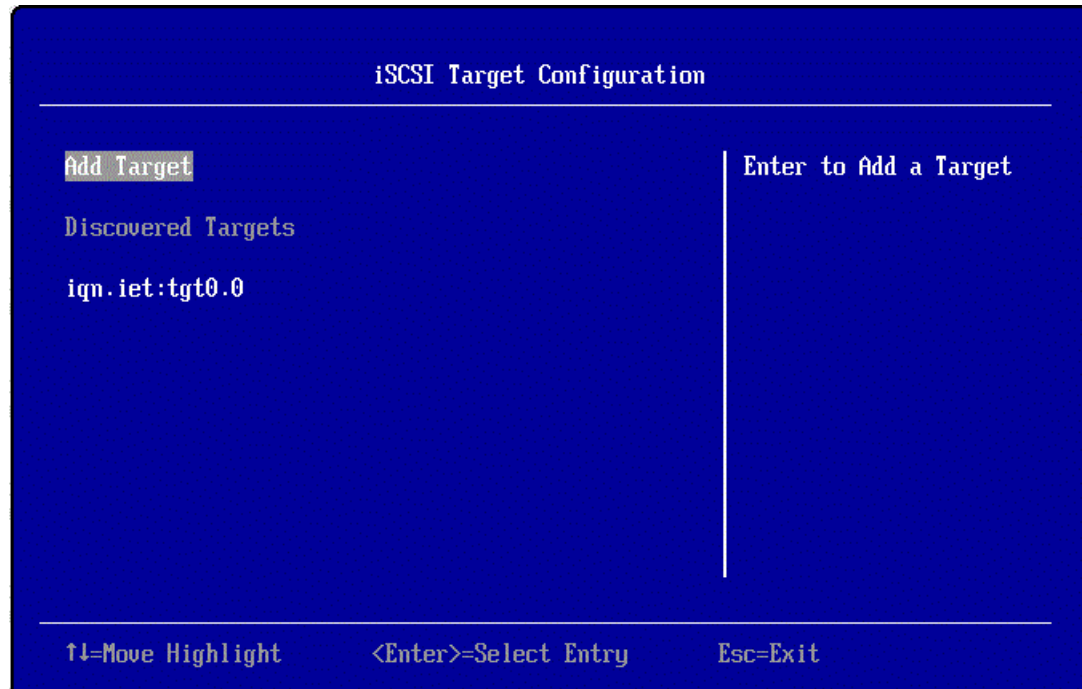


Figure 11-13 iSCSI Target Configuration Screen

Using SendTargets Discovery to Add an iSCSI Target

SendTargets discovery asks an iSCSI target to provide the list of target names that can be logged into by the initiator. The iSCSI initiator then uses the SendTargets Discovery option to perform the device discovery. Use this method if an iSCSI node has a large number of targets. When adding an iSCSI target, leave the iSCSI target name option blank, you can use the iSCSI SendTargets mechanism to add a target.

To configure an iSCSI target using the SendTargets discovery:

1. On the Controller Properties screen (Figure 11-5), set **Discover Boot Target via DHCP** to **<Disable>** and press **<Enter>**.
2. Select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Reboot the system.
4. From the Controller Configuration Menu screen (Figure 11-2), select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press **<Enter>**.
5. Select **Add Target** and press **<Enter>**.

6. In the Add/Ping iSCSI Target dialog box, leave the iSCSI Target Name blank for a SendTargets response.

Note: Only the first 64 sessions are returned during a single discovery session.

7. Enter the iSCSI target IP address.
8. Change the TCP port number value, if necessary. The default target port number is 3260.
9. Change the ISID qualifier value, if necessary. A unique ISID value is necessary if you connect dual sessions to the same target portal group. Enter a number up to 65535.
10. For a boot target, accept the default (None), even if you want to enable the target as a boot target.

Note: You must enable the Boot Target option after you add the target via SendTargets (see step 16).

11. Select **Yes** from the Header Digest drop-down menu if you want to enable header digest. When set to Yes, and the iSCSI initiator is set accordingly, the integrity of an iSCSI PDU's header segment is protected by CRC32C checksum. The default setting is No.
12. Select **Yes** from the Data Digest drop-down menu if you want to enable Data Digest. When set to Yes, and the iSCSI initiator is set accordingly, the integrity of an iSCSI PDU's data segment is protected by CRC32C checksum. The default setting is No.
13. Select an authentication method (optional). If you are enabling an authentication method, you are prompted to enter CHAP configuration.
14. Select **Save/Login**. A message reminds you that you have left the iSCSI Target name blank and that the SendTargets mechanism will be used. If you want to continue, press **<Y>**.
15. After you send your SendTargets request to the target, the iSCSI Target Configuration screen appears with a list of targets. From this list of targets specify which targets to add.

To do this, select the target or targets you want to add from the menu and press the space bar. After you have selected your targets, you can add these targets to the list of iSCSI targets available for the initiator to login. To do this, select **Save Target** and press **<Enter>**. If you enabled CHAP Authentication, you are prompted to enter CHAP configuration for each target, one at a time.

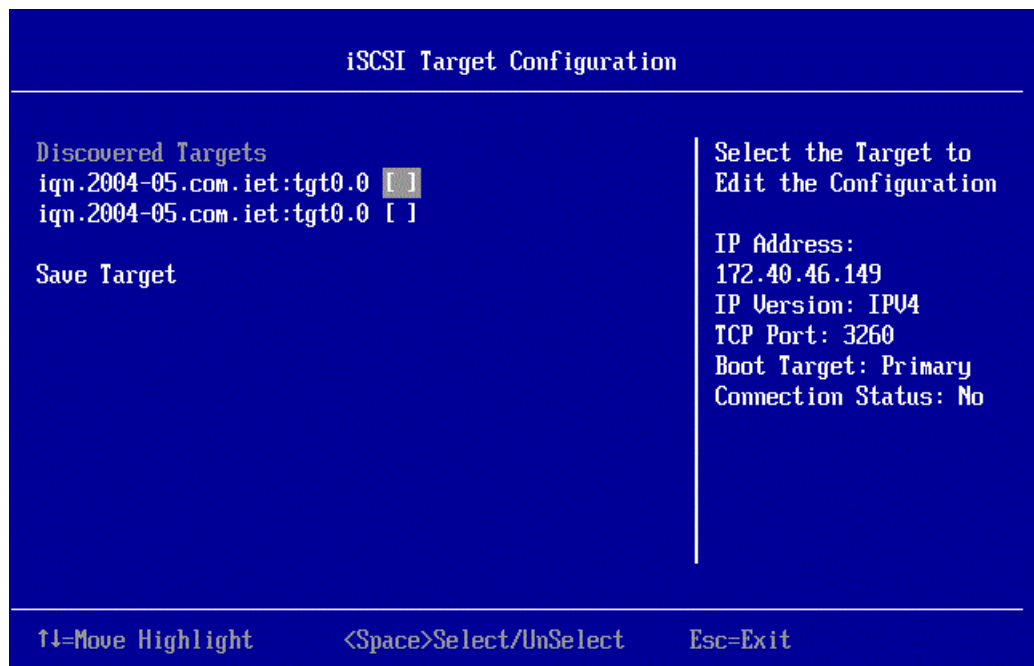


Figure 11-14 Discovered Targets Screen

16. After you have added your targets, from the Controller Configuration menu, select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press **<Enter>** to view the added target information.

Note: If you set the Boot Target option in step 5 before adding the target, the Boot Target displays No on this menu. To enable Boot Target, proceed to step 17.

17. To enable Boot Target or make any other changes to your target or targets, select the target and press **<Enter>**. The Edit/Ping iSCSI Target menu is displayed. From this menu, you can edit your target.

Manually Adding, Discovering, and Managing Boot Targets

To manually add and discover boot targets:

1. On the Controller Properties screen (Figure 11-5), set **Discover Boot Target via DHCP** to **<Disable>** and press **<Enter>**.
2. Select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Reboot the system.

4. On the iSCSI Target Configuration screen, select **Add Targets** and press **<Enter>**. The Add/Ping iSCSI Target screen is displayed.

Add/Ping iSCSI Target		
iSCSI Target Name	ign.1919-05.com.emulex:	Select the Authentication Method
IP Version	<IPv6>	
iSCSI Target IP Address	fd00::1	
TCP Port Number	[3260]	
BladeEngine Port Number	0	
ISID Qualifier	[1]	
Boot Target	<None>	
Header Digest	<No>	
Data Digest	<No>	
Authentication Method	<None>	
Ping		
Save/Login		
↑↓=Move Highlight <Enter>=Select Entry Esc=Exit		

Figure 11-15 Add/Ping iSCSI Target Screen

5. Enter the target IP address and TCP port number (the default target port number is 3260).
6. Change the ISID qualifier value, if necessary. A unique ISID value is necessary if you connect dual sessions to the same target portal group. Enter a number up to 65535. For more information, see “Setting an ISID Value” on page 99.
7. For a boot target, use the default setting (No), even if you want to enable the target as a boot target. For more information about the boot target, see “Setting a Boot Target” on page 157.
8. Select **Yes** from the Header Digest drop-down menu if you want to enable header digest. When set to Yes, and the iSCSI initiator is set accordingly, the integrity of an iSCSI PDU’s header segment is protected by the CRC32C checksum. The default setting is No.
9. Select **Yes**, from the Data Digest drop-down menu if you want to enable Data Digest. When set to Yes, and the iSCSI initiator is set accordingly, the integrity of an iSCSI PDU’s data segment is protected by the CRC32C checksum. The default setting is No.
10. Select an authentication method (optional). If you are enabling an Authentication method, you are prompted to enter CHAP configuration. For more information about the authentication method, see “Selecting an Authentication Method” on page 158.
11. Select **Save/Login** and press **<Enter>** to discover targets.

Setting a Boot Target

The discovered target must be set as a boot target to enable iSCSI boot.

To set a boot target:

1. On the iSCSI Target Configuration screen, select the target name and press **<Enter>**. The Edit/Ping Target screen is displayed.

Edit/Ping Target		
iSCSI Target Name	iqn.2004-05.com.iet:tgt	Boot From This Target
IP Version	0.0	
iSCSI Target IP Address	IPv4	
TCP Port Number	172.40.46.149	
BladeEngine Port Number	326	
ISID Qualifier	0	
Boot Target	[1] <div>None Primary Secondary</div>	
Header Digest	<No>	
Data Digest	<No>	
Authentication Method	<None>	
Ping		
Save/Login		
Advanced Properties		
..more ↓		
↑↓=Move Highlight <Enter>=Complete Entry Esc=Exit Entry		

Figure 11-16 Boot Target Option on the Edit/Ping Target Screen

2. Select the **Boot Target** option and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Primary** or **Secondary** from the drop-down menu and press **<Enter>**.
4. Select **Save/Login** and press **<Enter>**.

Selecting an Authentication Method

The Emulex iSCSI configuration utility uses CHAP to authenticate initiators and targets for added network security. By using a challenge/response security mechanism, CHAP periodically verifies the initiator's identity. This authentication method depends on a secret known only to the initiator and the target. Although the authentication can be one-way, you can negotiate CHAP in both directions with the help of the same secret set for mutual authentication. You must make sure however, that what you configure on the target side, matches the initiator side. The Emulex iSCSI configuration utility supports both one-way and mutual authentication.

To configure the CHAP authentication method:

1. On the iSCSI Target Configuration screen, select the target name and press **<Enter>**. The Edit/Ping Target screen is displayed.

Edit/Ping Target		
iSCSI Target Name	iqn.2004-05.com.iet:tgt	Select the Authentication Method
IP Version	0.0	
iSCSI Target IP Address	IPV4	
TCP Port Number	172.40.46.149	
BladeEngine Port Number	3	
ISID Qualifier	0	
Boot Target	None	
Header Digest	[One-way CHAP	
Data Digest	< No>	
Authentication Method	< None>	
Ping		
Save/Login		
Advanced Properties		
..more ↓		
↑↓=Move Highlight <Enter>=Complete Entry Esc=Exit Entry		

Figure 11-17 Authentication Method Option on the Edit/Ping Target Screen

2. Select the **Authentication Method** option and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **None**, **One-way CHAP**, or **Mutual CHAP** from the drop-down menu and press **<Enter>**.
 - One-way CHAP – With one-way CHAP authentication, the target authenticates the initiator. Use one-way CHAP authentication for a one-way challenge/response security method – you must configure the username and password (secret), which is authenticated by the target.
 - Mutual CHAP – With mutual CHAP authentication, the target authenticates the initiator and the initiator authenticates the target. Use mutual CHAP authentication for a two-way challenge/response security method – you must configure different CHAP and mutual CHAP usernames and passwords.

Note: When you configure the CHAP parameters, verify that those parameters match the parameters on the storage side.

4. Select **Save/Login** and press **<Enter>**.

Pinging a Target

Note: If you want to verify that you can connect to a target before you log in, you must ping the target before you configure the target on the Edit/Ping Target screen.

To ping a target:

1. On the iSCSI Target Configuration screen, select the target name and press **<Enter>**. The Edit/Ping Target screen is displayed.

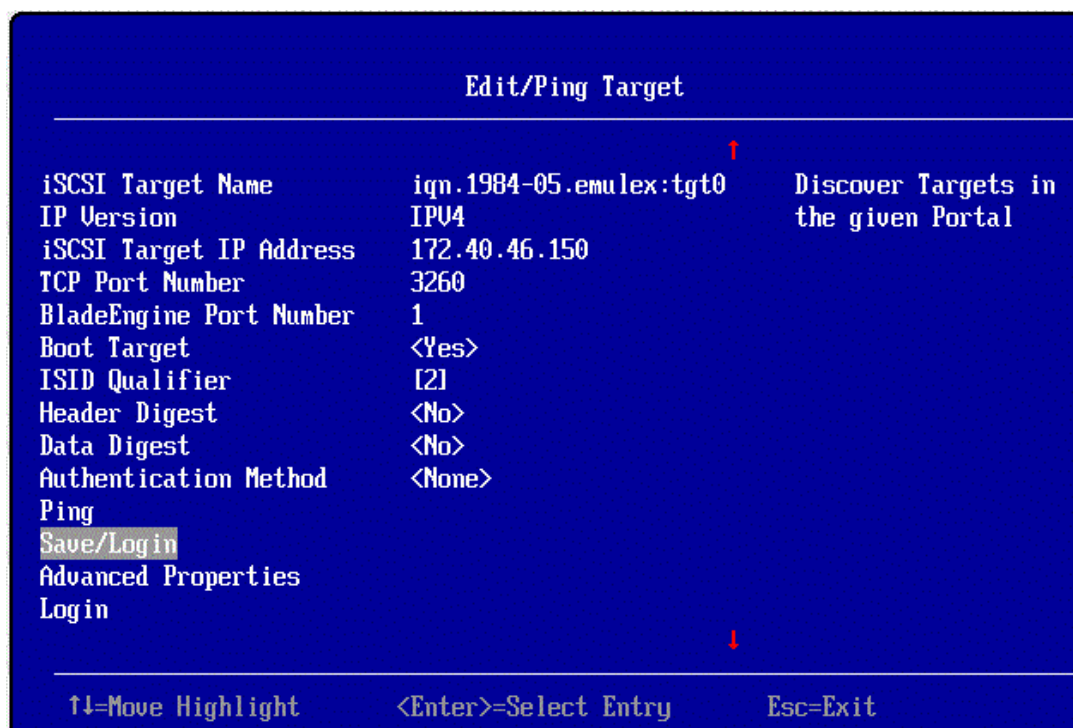


Figure 11-18 Edit/Ping Target Screen

- From the Add/Ping iSCSI Target screen or the Edit/Ping Target screen, select **Ping** and press **<Enter>**. If the ping is successful, a screen similar to the following is displayed.

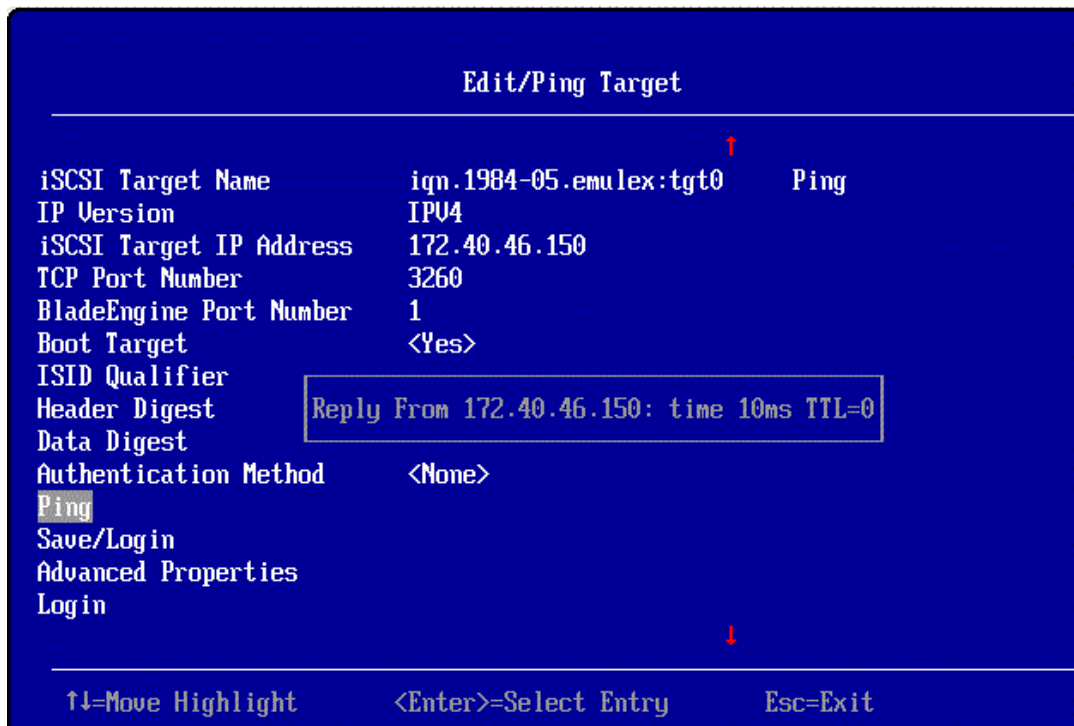


Figure 11-19 Successful Target Ping

If the ping is not successful, a failure message is displayed.

Viewing Advanced Properties

To view advanced properties:

- On the Edit/Ping Target screen (Figure 11-18), select **Advanced Properties** and press **<Enter>**. The Advanced iSCSI Target Information screen is displayed.

Note: You may need to select **..more** to display additional configuration options.

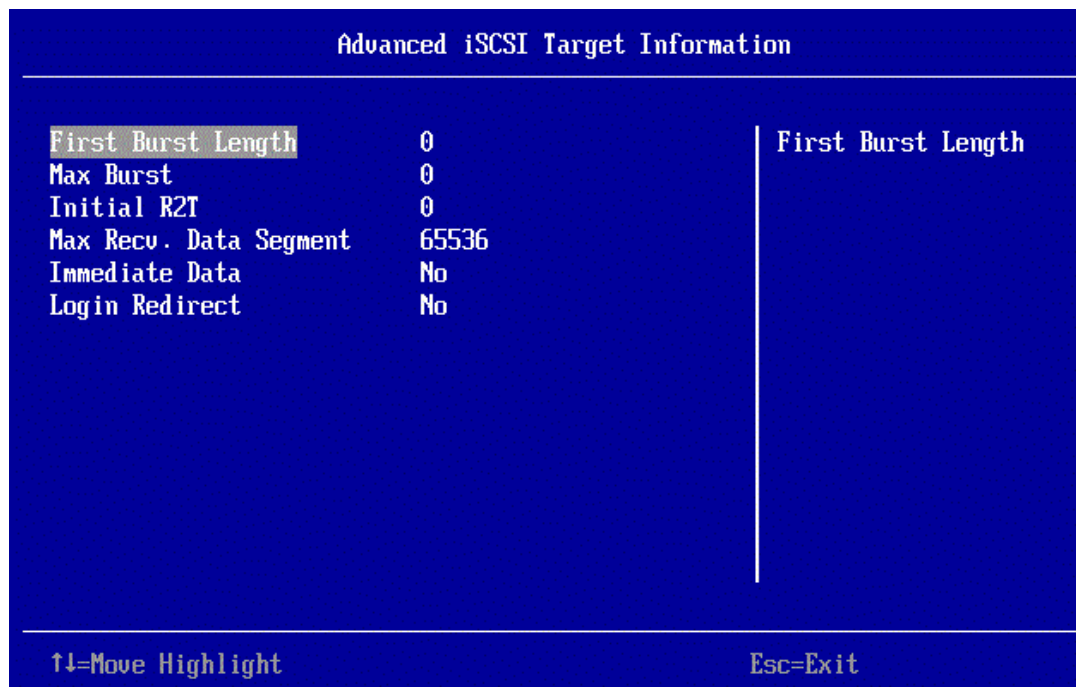


Figure 11-20 Advanced iSCSI Target Information Screen

Logging In or Logging Out of a Target

To log in or out of a target:

1. On the Edit/Ping Target screen (Figure 11-18), select **Login** or **Logout** to explicitly log in or log out of a target, and then press **<Enter>**.

Note: You may need to select **..more** to display additional configuration options.

Deleting a Target

A target can be deleted only if it is not a boot target.

If a target is set as a boot target:

1. On the Edit/Ping Target screen (Figure 11-18), select **Boot Target** and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the drop-down menu, select **No** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Save/Login** and press **<Enter>**.

To delete the target:

1. On the Edit/Ping Target screen, select **..more** to display additional configuration options.
2. Select **Delete Target** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring LUNs

To configure LUNs:

1. On the Edit/Ping Target screen (Figure 11-18), select **LUN Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. The LUN Configuration screen is displayed.

Note: You may need to select **..more** to display additional configuration options.

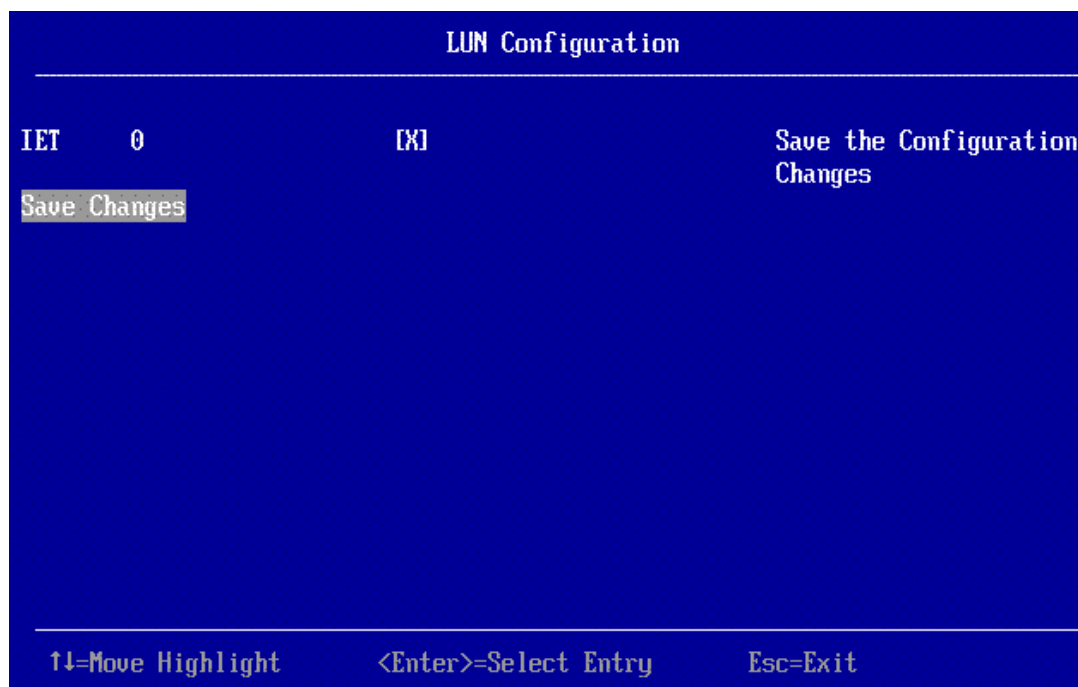


Figure 11-21 LUN Configuration Screen

2. If the target is a boot target, select any single LUN as a boot LUN using the **<Space>** bar.

Note: If the target is not a boot target, you cannot select any LUNs.

3. Select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>**.

iSNS Configuration

Note: This functionality is only available on UEFI-capable HP adapters.

The Internet Storage Name Service (iSNS) Protocol allows automated discovery, management and configuration of iSCSI and FC devices (using iFCP gateways) on a TCP/IP network.

To view the iSNS Configuration screen:

1. On the Controller Configuration menu (Figure 11-2), select **iSCSI Target Configuration** and press **<Enter>**.

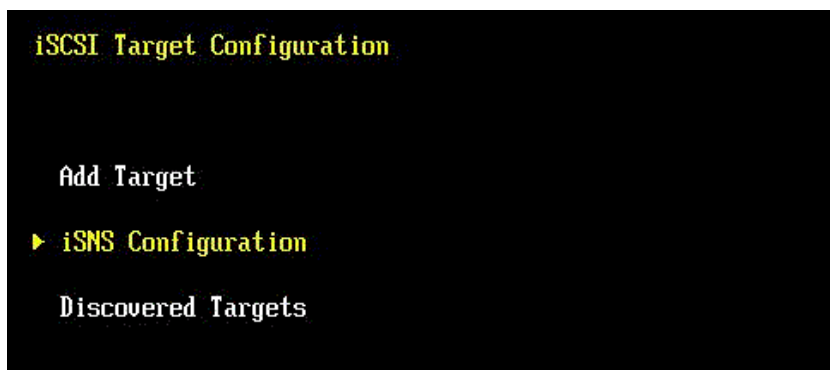


Figure 11-22 iSCSI Target Configuration Screen

2. On the iSCSI Target Configuration screen, select **iSNS Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. The iSNS Configuration screen is displayed.

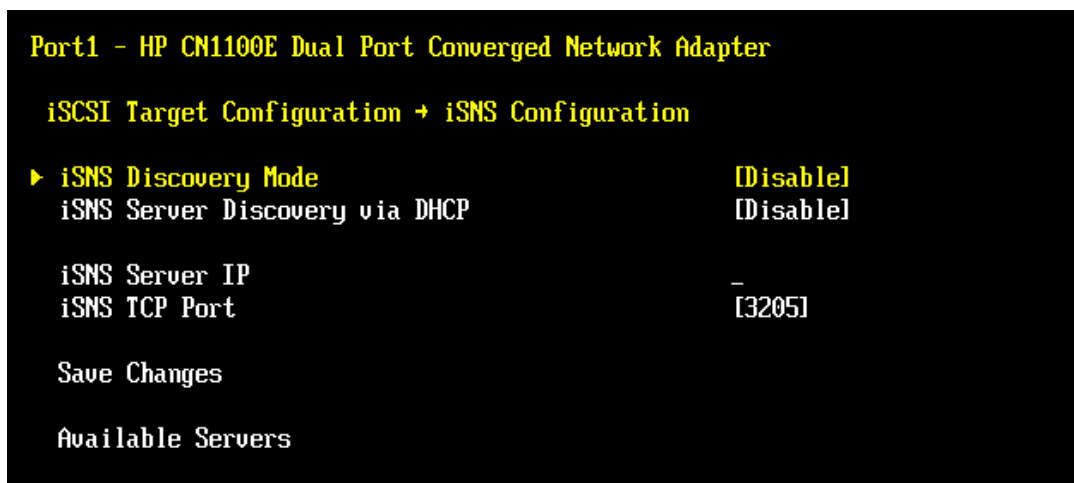


Figure 11-23 iSNS Configuration Screen

The iSNS Configuration screen enables you to perform the following tasks:

- Enable or disable iSNS discovery mode
- Enable or disable iSNS server discovery via DHCP
- Configure the iSNS server IP address and TCP port number manually
- Save any changes made to the iSNS configuration
- View a list of available iSNS servers

Enabling iSNS Discovery

This option enables or disables iSNS discovery. iSNS targets are only discovered when this option is enabled.

To enable or disable iSNS discovery:

1. From the iSNS Configuration screen, select **iSNS Discovery Mode** and press **<Enter>**.

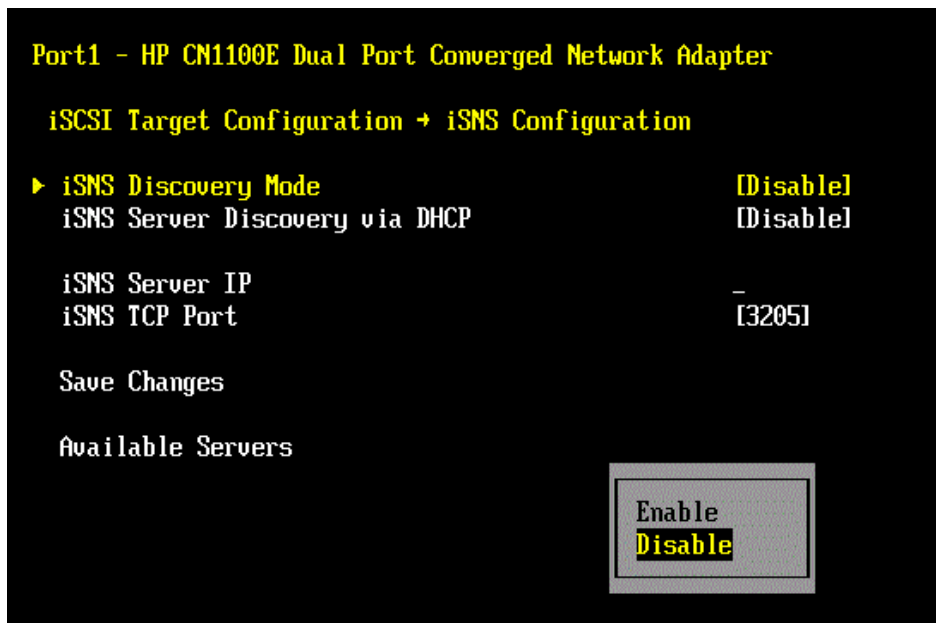


Figure 11-24 iSNS Discovery Mode Screen

2. Select either **Enable** or **Disable** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>** to save the current settings.

Enabling iSNS Server Discovery via DHCP

This option discovers iSNS servers configured on the network using DHCP.

Note: If you leave iSNS Server Discovery via DHCP disabled (default), you must manually configure the iSNS server.

To enable or disable iSNS server discovery using DHCP:

1. From the iSNS Configuration screen (Figure 11-25), select **iSNS Server Discovery via DHCP** and press **<Enter>**.

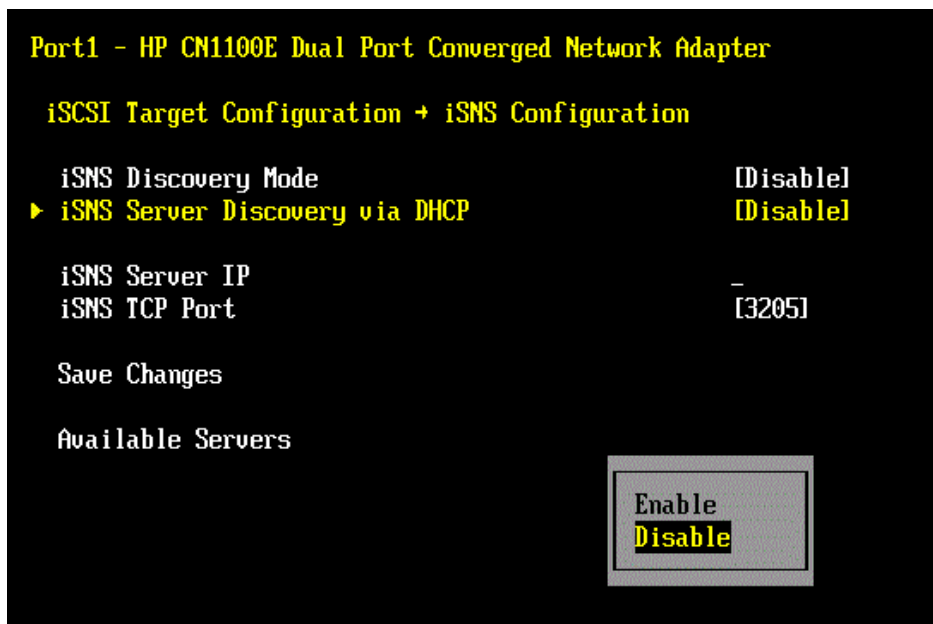


Figure 11-25 iSNS Server Discovery via DHCP Screen

2. Select either **Enable** or **Disable** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Save Changes** and press **<Enter>** to save the current settings.

Configuring the iSNS Server IP Address and TCP Port Number Manually

An iSNS server can also be configured manually by entering the server IP address and the TCP port. Only one iSNS server can be configured at present.

Note: This option is only available when the iSNS Server Discovery via DHCP option is disabled.

To add an iSNS server manually:

1. From the iSNS Configuration screen (Figure 11-26), select **iSNS Server IP** and press **<Enter>**.

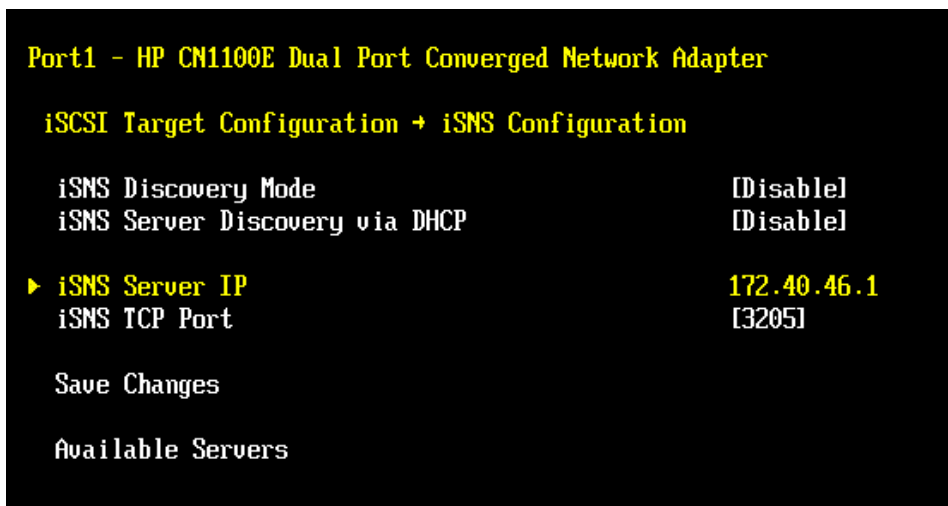


Figure 11-26 iSNS Server IP Screen

2. Enter the iSNS server's IP address and press <Enter>.
3. Select **iSNS TCP Port** and press <Enter>. The default iSNS Port is 3205. The valid range is 1024–65535.
4. Select **Save Changes** and press <Enter> to save the current settings.

The added server is displayed under the Available Servers list.

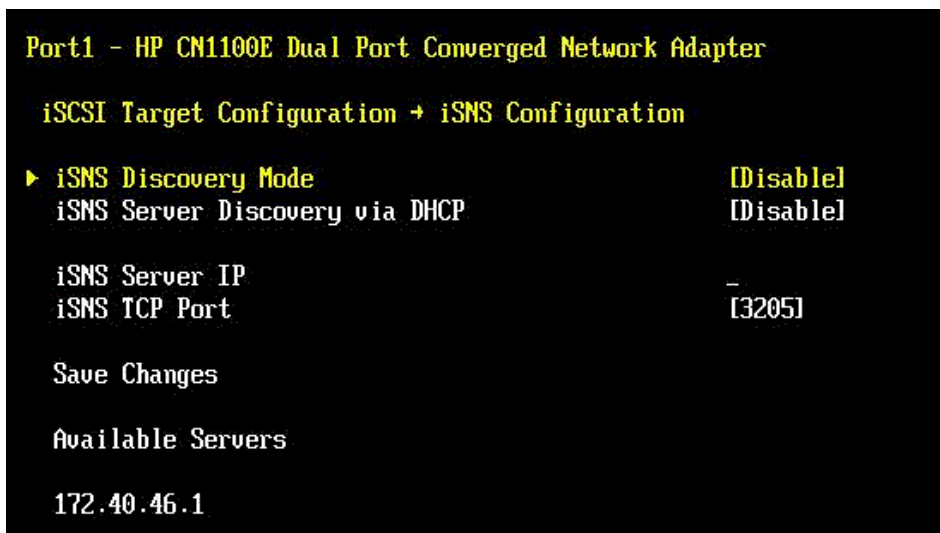


Figure 11-27 Available Servers Screen

Discovering Targets Using the iSNS Server

To configure targets using the iSNS server, from the iSNS Configuration screen (Figure 11-22), select the iSNS server under the Available Servers list and press <Enter>.

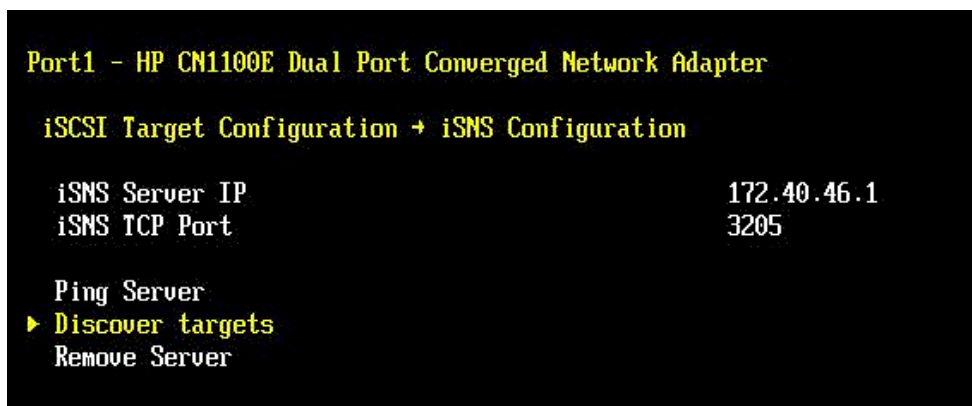


Figure 11-28 iSNS Server Options Screen

The iSNS server IP and TCP port information is displayed.

The following iSNS server options are available on this screen:

- Ping Server – select this option to check connectivity to the server.
- Discover Targets – select this option to display a list of targets available on the iSNS server.

One or more targets can be added by logging into the targets individually. All added targets are listed under Discovered Targets on the iSCSI Target Configuration screen (Figure 11-22).

- Remove Server – select this option to remove the server from the Available Servers list.

Note: This only removes the server and not the targets added by this server. To remove the targets, select the target from the Discovered Targets list under the iSCSI Target Configuration screen (Figure 11-22), select **Delete Target**, and press <Enter>.

Erasing the Configuration

Erase Configuration erases the configuration of a single controller. Configuration data is erased for both ports on the selected controller. Erase configuration restores the default settings only for that particular controller. When an initiator name is global for all adapters, the IQN configured on the first adapter is reflected on all controllers.

Note: For HP systems, the initiator name on all ports of the selected controller are reset to their respective default values.

Note: You must select **Erase Configuration** to clear out existing IQN data if you purchase a different or subsequent license for the adapter.

To erase a controller configuration:

1. From the Controller Configuration menu, select **Erase Configuration** and press **<Enter>**.

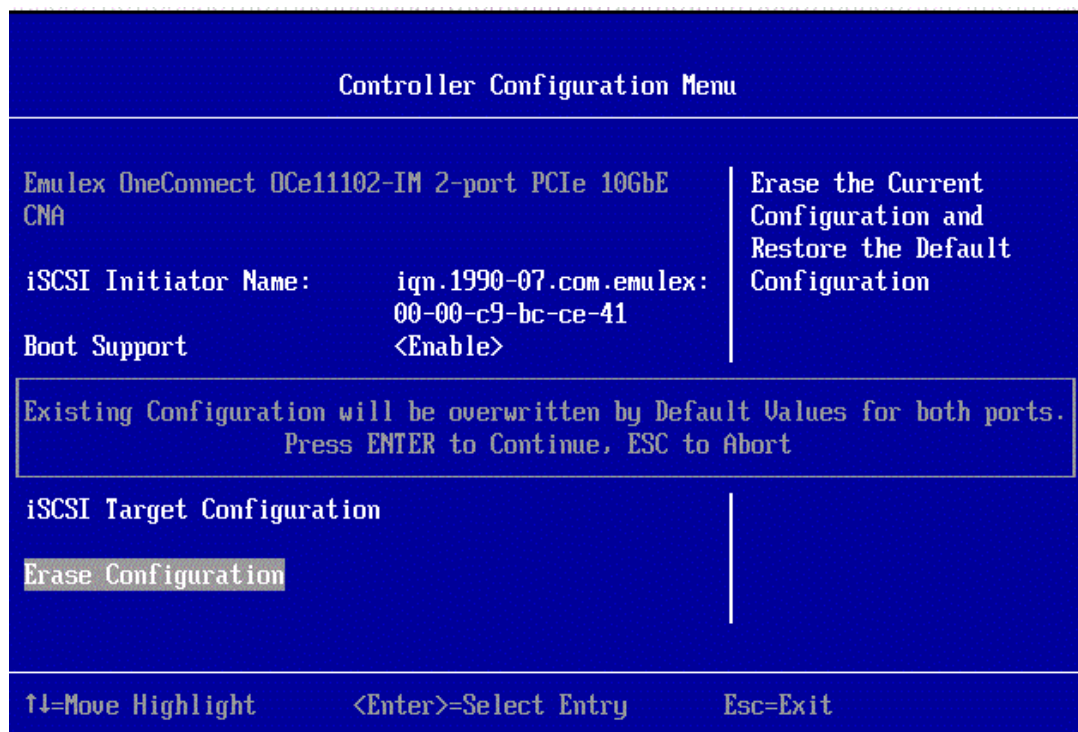


Figure 11-29 Erase Configuration Screen

A warning message appears asking for confirmation.

2. Press **<Enter>** to erase the configuration, or press **<Esc>** to abort the operation.

When the controller configuration is erased, the Controller Configuration menu is displayed.

12. Configuring UEFI for FCoE

Note: If you have several adapters in your system, the UEFI system firmware or boot code uses the highest version driver installed on any of the adapters. Adapters with older versions of EFIBoot are managed by the more recent version, but only as long as the adapter with the most recent version is in the system. The latest firmware and boot code must be installed on each adapter in the system to ensure that each adapter runs the latest firmware and boot code.

Overview

UEFIBoot supports:

- Single-topology – Only Fabric point to-point is supported.
- EFI protocols – All applicable UEFI 2.3 driver protocols are supported.
- Operating systems – All UEFI-aware operating systems are supported.
- Multi-Device path – Fibre/SCSI device path is selectable through the driver configuration application.
- Multi-initiators – Up to 256 ports are supported.
- Multi-boot – Eight targets are selectable through the driver configuration application.
- Multi-LUNs – Up to 4096 LUNs are supported.
- Multi-utility – Setup and firmware updates are supported.

The Emulex FCoE UEFIboot is loaded from flash into system memory.

To verify that the Emulex UEFIBoot driver is loaded, enter the EFI Shell, type “drivers”, and then press **<Enter>**.

Note: If you are using Dell adapters, refer to appendix F, “Dell UEFI,” on page 226 for information on using the Dell UEFI utility.

Navigating the Emulex FCoE Configuration Utility

The Emulex FCoE configuration utility has menus and configuration screens. Use the following methods to navigate them:

- Press the up/down arrows on your keyboard to move through and select menu options or configuration fields. When multiple adapters are listed, use the up/down arrows to scroll to the additional adapters.
- Press the **<+>**, **<->**, or **<Enter>** keys to change numeric values.
- Press **<Enter>** to select a menu option, to select a row in a configuration screen, or to change a configuration default.
- Use the navigation entries on the page to move about the utility.
- Press **<Esc>** to exit the current screen and show the previous screen.
- Select **Commit** to save changes. Select **Discard** to not save changes.

- Select **Back to Display Adapters and RECONNECT DEVICES** from the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu when you are finished to ensure the changes are made active; otherwise, a system restart is required to make your changes active. You are then returned to the adapter list.

Starting the Emulex FCoE Configuration Utility

Depending on the OEM UEFI configuration, the Emulex FCoE configuration utility may appear under different setup menus in the OEM system firmware or BIOS (such as **System Settings > Storage**). This description applies to systems where the Emulex utility is found in the Device Manager.

To start the Emulex FCoE configuration utility using HII:

1. Exit the EFI shell.



```
Shell> exit
```

Figure 12-1 Exiting the EFI Shell

2. A front page is displayed. Launch the Device Manager.
3. On the Device Manager screen, a list of all the adapters in the system is displayed. Your list may vary depending on the installed adapters. Locate the adapter you want to configure. Use the up/down arrows on your keyboard to select it, and press **<Enter>**.

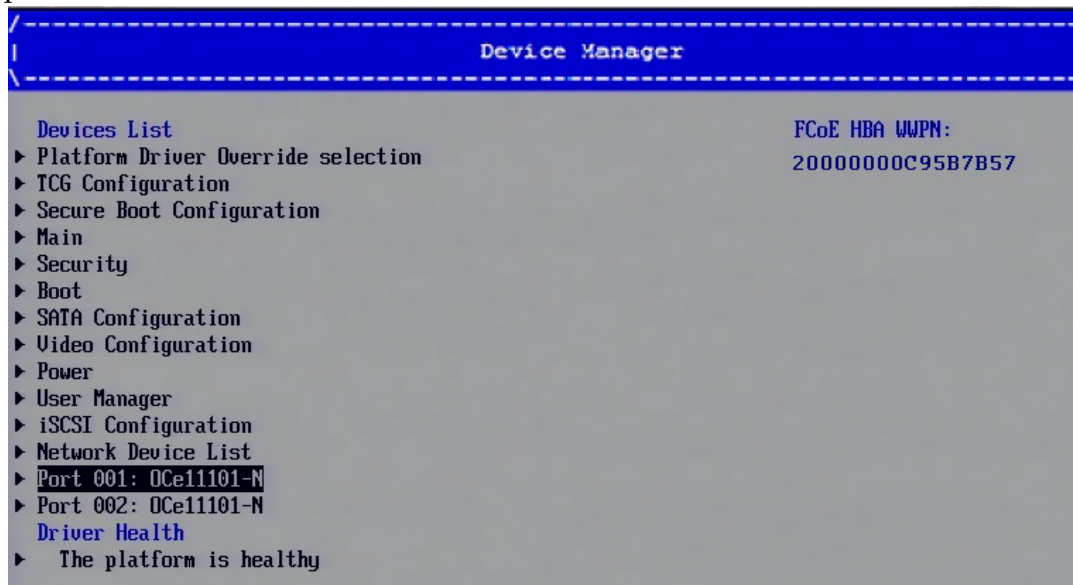


Figure 12-2 Device Manager Screen

The Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu is displayed.

```

/-----
|                                     Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu
|-----
001: OCe10102-FM      PCIe2.5Gb/s , x8          Back to Display
Seg#: 00 Bus#: 04 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02 VlanID: 0002  Adapters and RECONNECT
OCe10102-FM Node Name : 20000000C95B7B57          DEVICES

Back to Display Adapters and RECONNECT DEVICES
Set Boot from SAN      <Enable>
Configure DCBX Mode    <CEE>
Configure CEE FCF Parameters
Configure CIN FCF Parameters
Scan for Fibre Devices
Add Boot Device
Delete Boot Device
Change Boot Device Order
Configure HBA and Boot Parameters
Set Emulex Adapter to Default Settings

/-----
| B/b=Previous Page      R/r=Reset to Defaults      S/s=Save
| ^v=Move Highlight      <Enter>=Select Entry      X/x=Exit this Menu
|-----

```

Figure 12-3 Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu

Updating Firmware and Boot Code

To update the firmware and boot code to the latest versions, you must use the NIC firmware update utility, which revises the FCoE function with a single firmware and boot code image. For more information on revising firmware versions, see chapter 10., “Configuring UEFI for Ethernet,” on page 108.

Enabling an Adapter to Boot from SAN

To enable an adapter to boot from SAN:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter whose network boot setting you want to change and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Set Boot from SAN**. The current setting is displayed. A Disable/Enable menu is displayed. Press **<Enter>**.

3. Select **Enable** and press **<Enter>**. The selection is changed to NVRAM and the current setting is displayed.

```

/-----
|                               Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu
|-----
001: OCe10102-FM      PCIe2.5Gb/s , x8                               Back to Display
Seg#: 00 Bus#: 04 Dev#: 00 Func#: 02 VlanID: 0002                   Adapters and RECONNECT
OCe10102-FM Node Name : 20000000C95B7B57                           DEVICES

Back to Display Adapters and RECONNECT DEVICES
Set Boot from SAN          <Enable>
Configure DCBX Mode        <CEE>
Configure CEE FCF Parameters
Configure CIN FCF Parameters
Scan for Fibre Devices
Add Boot Device
Delete Boot Device
Change Boot Device Order
Configure HBA and Boot Parameters
Set Emulex Adapter to Default Settings

/-----
| B/b=Previous Page      R/r=Reset to Defaults      S/s=Save
| ^v=Move Highlight      <Enter>=Select Entry      X/x=Exit this Menu
|-----

```

Figure 12-4 Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu - Network Boot Options Menu

Configuring DCBX Mode

To configure DCBX mode for the FCoE initialization protocol:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter to configure and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Configure DCBX Mode** and press **<Enter>**. The current setting is displayed.
3. Select **CEE** if the attached switch is CEE compatible, or select **CIN** if the attached switch is CIN compatible. (For more information, see the switch documentation.) Press **<Enter>**.

The selection is changed to NVRAM and the current setting is displayed.

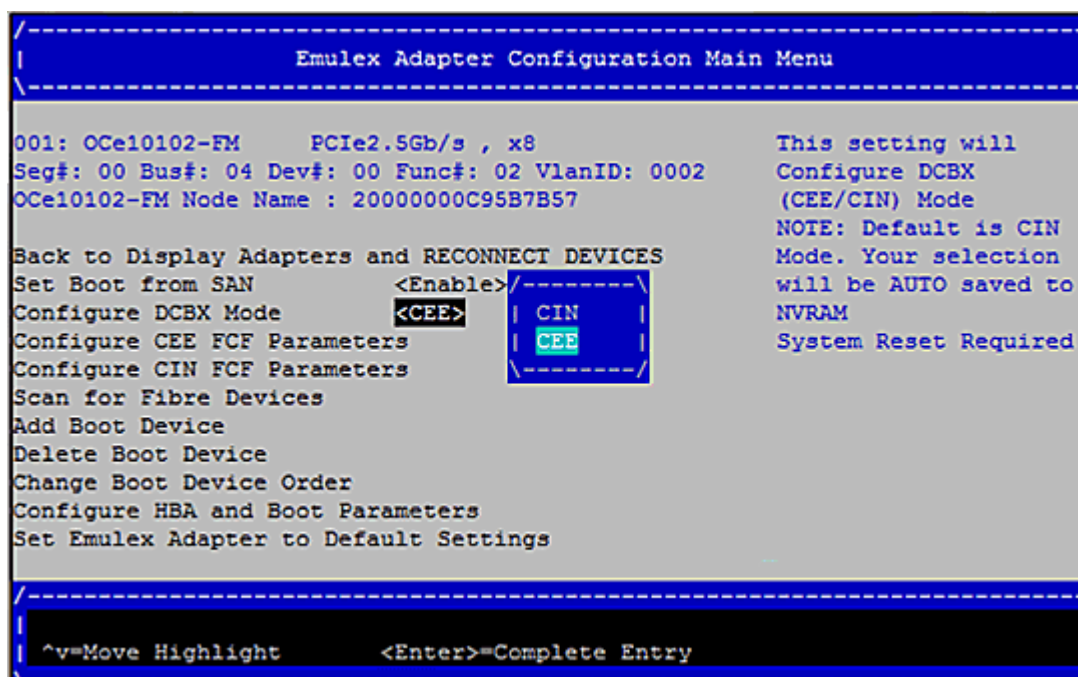


Figure 12-5 Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu - DCBX Menu

Configuring CEE FCF Parameters

To configure CEE FCF parameters:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter to configure and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Configure CEE FCF Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. A listing of current CEE FCF record information is displayed.

```

/-----
|                               Select the CEE Record you wish to modify (in Flash)
|-----
Configure CEE FCF Parameters

Go to Configuration Main Menu
01. UNSD VLANID: 000 Sw Name: 00000000 00000000,
Fab Name: 00000000 00000000
02. UNSD VLANID: 000 Sw Name: 00000000 00000000,
Fab Name: 00000000 00000000
03. UNSD VLANID: 000 Sw Name: 00000000 00000000,
Fab Name: 00000000 00000000
04. UNSD VLANID: 000 Sw Name: 00000000 00000000,
Fab Name: 00000000 00000000
05. UNSD VLANID: 000 Sw Name: 00000000 00000000,
Fab Name: 00000000 00000000
06. UNSD VLANID: 000 Sw Name: 00000000 00000000,
Fab Name: 00000000 00000000

/-----
| B/b=Previous Page      R/r=Reset to Defaults      S/s=Save
| ^v=Move Highlight      <Enter>=Select Entry      X/x=Exit this Menu
|-----

```

Figure 12-6 CEE Record Selection List

3. Select the CEE FCF record to modify and press **<Enter>**. The current record information is displayed.

```

/-----
|                                     Configure CEE FCF Parameters
|-----
Configure CEE FCF Parameters                                     Set Record State

Set Record State                                     <UNUSED>
Enter VLAN ID                                       [0]
Enter Switch Name (Low)                             00000000
Enter Switch Name (Hi)                              00000000
Enter Fabric Name (Low)                             00000000
Enter Fabric Name (Hi)                              00000000
Discard Changes
Commit Changes
Select From FCF Table

/-----
|                                     ^v=Move Highlight      <Enter>=Complete Entry
|-----

```

Figure 12-7 CEE FCF Record Information

4. Change the record information as needed.
 - Set Record State can be set to unused, active, or boot.
 - VLAN ID must be a three digit hexadecimal number.
 - Switch Name (Low). Enter the low bits of the FC switch's WWN to which to connect. This must be an 8-digit hexadecimal number.
 - Switch Name (Hi). Enter the high bits of the FC switch's WWN to which to connect. This must be an 8-digit hexadecimal number.
 - Fabric Name (Low). Enter the low bits of the FC fabric's WWN to which to connect. This must be an 8-digit hexadecimal number.
 - Fabric Name (Hi). Enter the high bits of the FC fabric's WWN to which to connect. This must be an 8-digit hexadecimal number.
5. Do one of the following:
 - To save your changes, select **Commit Changes** and press **<Enter>**. The changed CEE FCF record information is displayed.
 - To discard all changes, select **Discard Changes** and press **<Enter>**. The CEE record selection list is displayed (Figure 12-6).
 - To discard your changes and use the CEE parameters from the FCF table, select **Select From FCF Table** and press **<Enter>**. The FCF table parameters are displayed.
6. Press **<Enter>**. The Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu is displayed.

Configuring CIN FCF Parameters

To configure CIN FCF parameters:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter to configure and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Configure CIN FCF Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. A listing of current CIN FCF record information is displayed.
3. Select the CIN FCF record to modify and press **<Enter>**. Current record information is displayed.

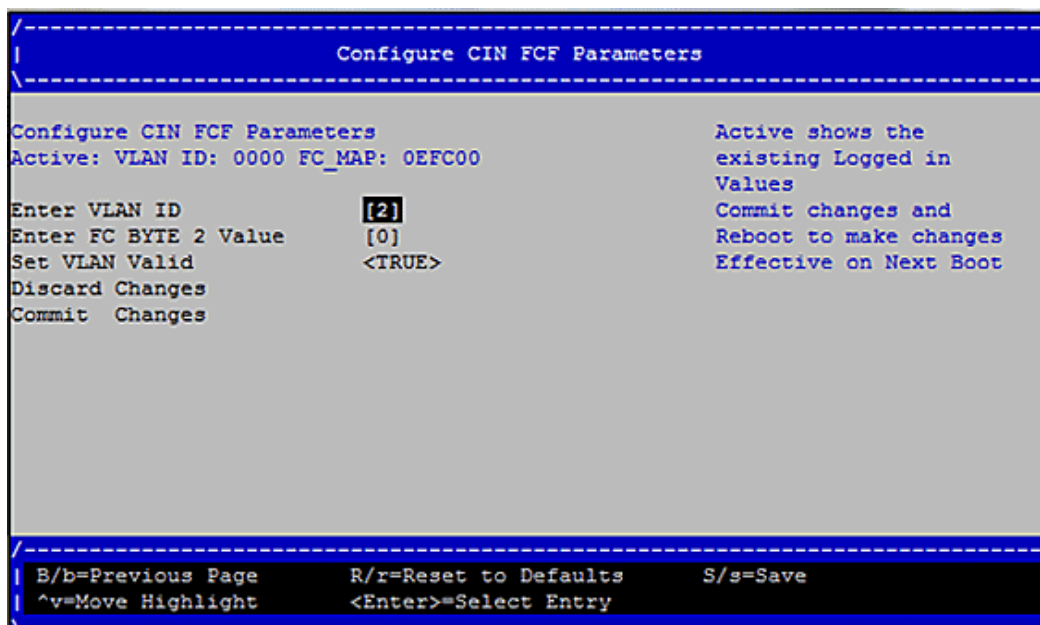


Figure 12-8 CIN FCF Record Information

4. Change the record information as needed.
 - VLAN ID. Enter the VLAN on which the adapter FCoE services are available. This must be a 3-digit hexadecimal number.
 - FC Byte 2. Enter the bit value that completes the fabric-provided MAC ADDRESS. Value can be incremented or decremented with the **<+>** and **<->** keys. FC BYTE 0 and 1 are predefined (unchangeable) to "0E", "FC" and only the second byte is selectable.
 - Set VLAN Valid. Select TRUE to enable VLAN or FALSE to disable it.
5. Select **Commit Changes** and press **<Enter>**.

Scanning for Fibre Devices

When LUNs are set up on the SAN before POST has completed (that is, before the boot driver has been started), you can select 'Scan for Fibre Devices' or 'Add Boot Device' to discover all available LUNs. Although this procedure does not perform a complete HBA initialization, it executes faster than selecting "Reconnect Devices".

Note: If you dynamically add LUNs after POST has completed and the driver has been started, you must select **Reconnect Devices** to perform a complete HBA initialization and discovery. If this step is not performed, all LUNs may not be properly discovered.

You should also select **Reconnect Devices** after adding any discovered LUNs to the NVRAM list.

To scan for Fibre devices:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter that you want to scan for Fibre devices and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu, select **Scan for Fibre Devices** and press **<Enter>**. A list of discovered targets is displayed. This is only a list of discovered target devices to quickly determine SAN connectivity and provide you with a mechanism to have the port logged in for zoning.

Adding Boot Devices

To add a boot device:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter to which you want to add a boot device and press **<Enter>**.

2. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Add Boot Device** and press **<Enter>**. Discovered targets are displayed.

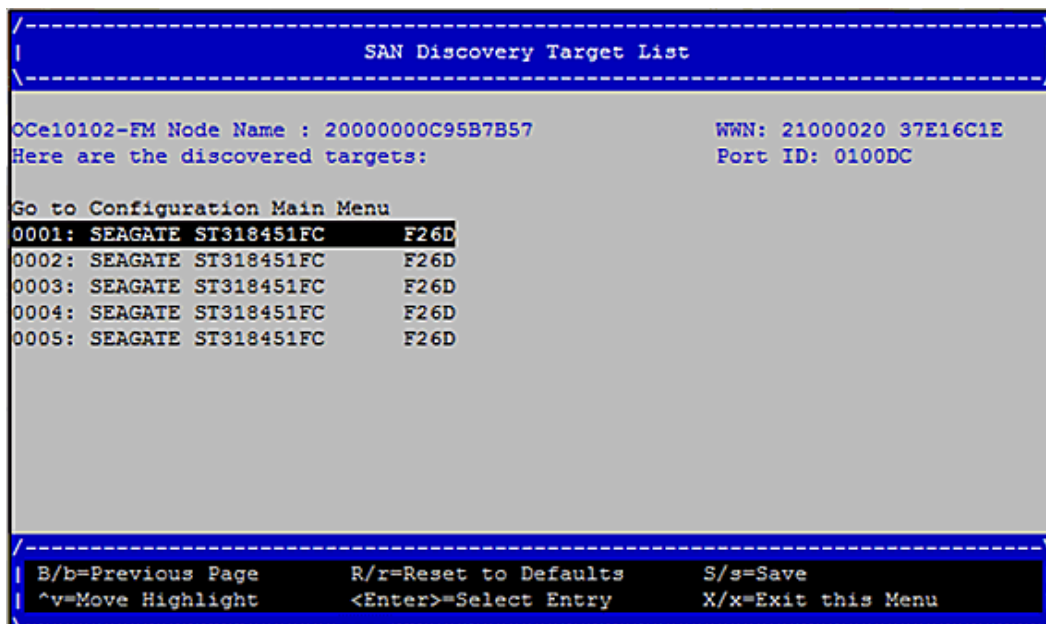


Figure 12-9 SAN Discovery Targets List

3. Select a target and press **<Enter>**.
4. Select a LUN from the list and press **<Enter>**. The target list is displayed.

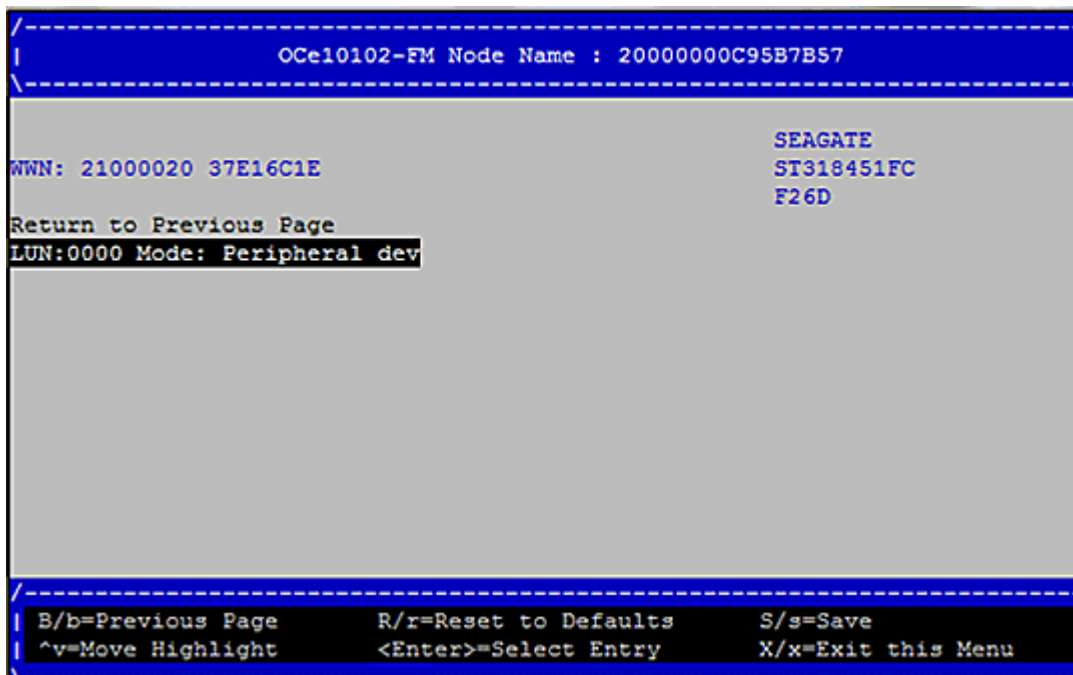


Figure 12-10 LUN Listing

5. Select **Commit Changes** and press **<Enter>**. The Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu is displayed.

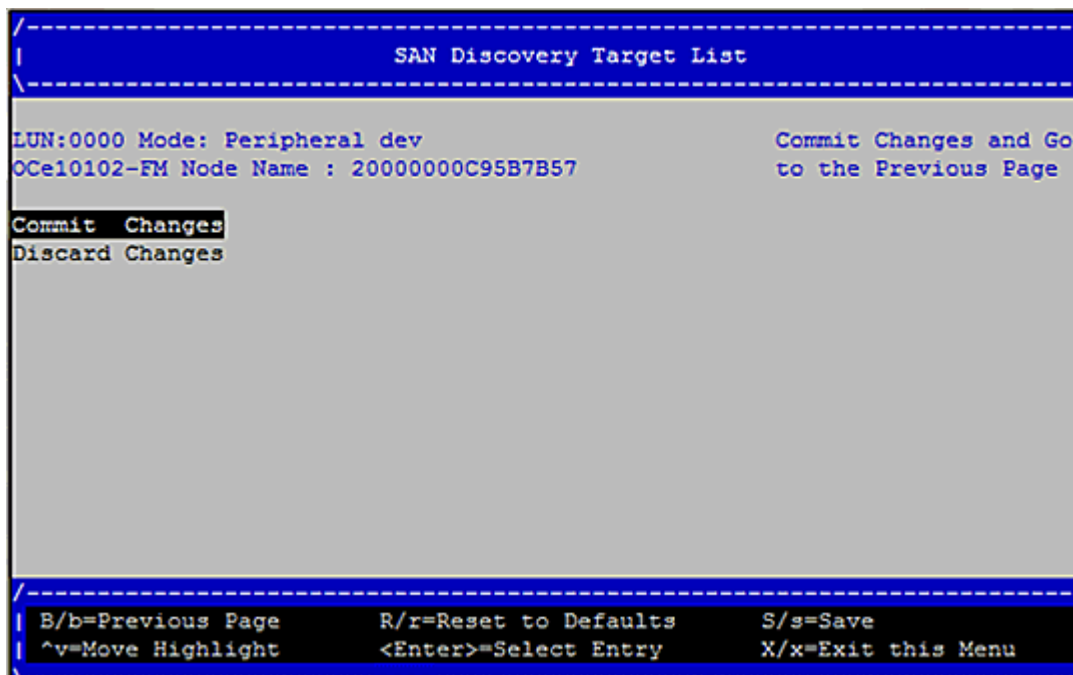


Figure 12-11 Commit/Discard Change

Deleting Boot Devices

To delete boot devices:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter from which you want to delete a boot device and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Delete Boot Device** and press **<Enter>**. A list of eight boot devices is displayed.

3. Select the device and press **<Enter>**. The Delete Boot Device menu for that device is displayed.

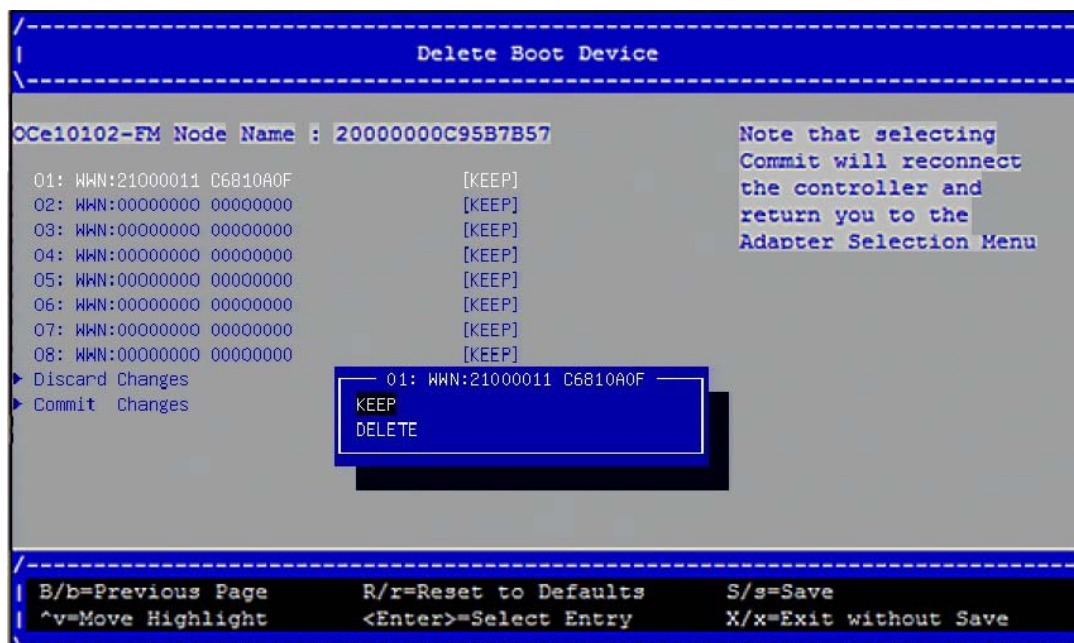


Figure 12-12 Delete Boot Device Screen

4. Select either **KEEP** or **DELETE** and press **<Enter>**.
5. Select **Commit Changes** and press **<Enter>**. The Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu is displayed.

Changing Boot Device Order

Note: The boot device order has no relationship to the system BIOS boot device order. Changing the boot device order with this procedure will only change the order that the devices are discovered by UEFIBoot.

To change boot device order:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter whose boot device order you want to change and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Change Boot Device Order** and press **<Enter>**. The Change Boot Device Order screen is displayed.

3. Select **Boot Device Order** and press <Enter>.

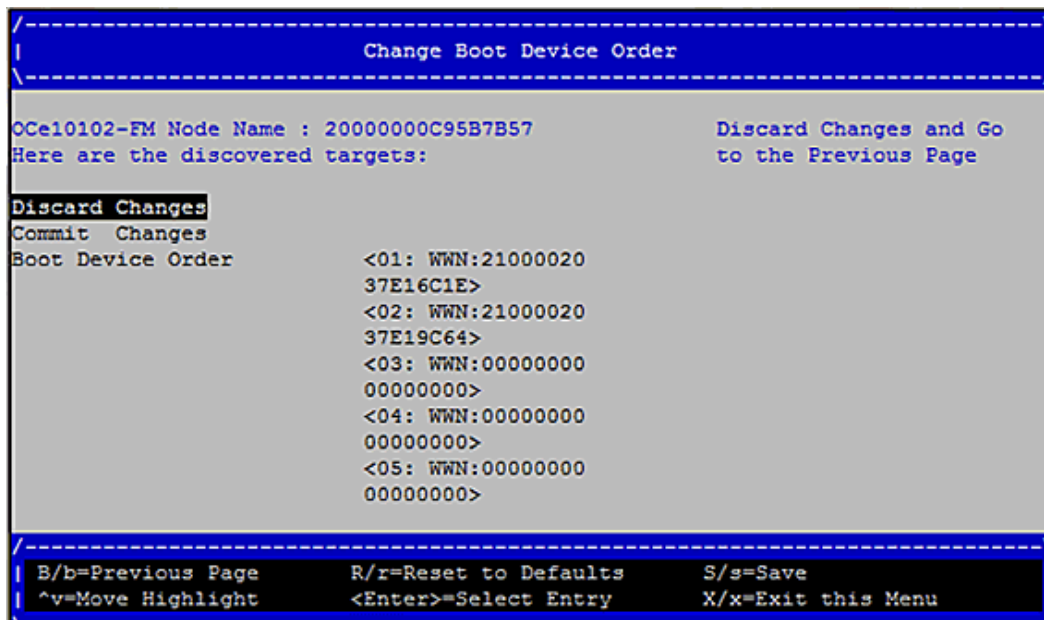


Figure 12-13 Change Boot Device Order Screen

4. Select a device from the list of eight boot devices and press <Enter>.

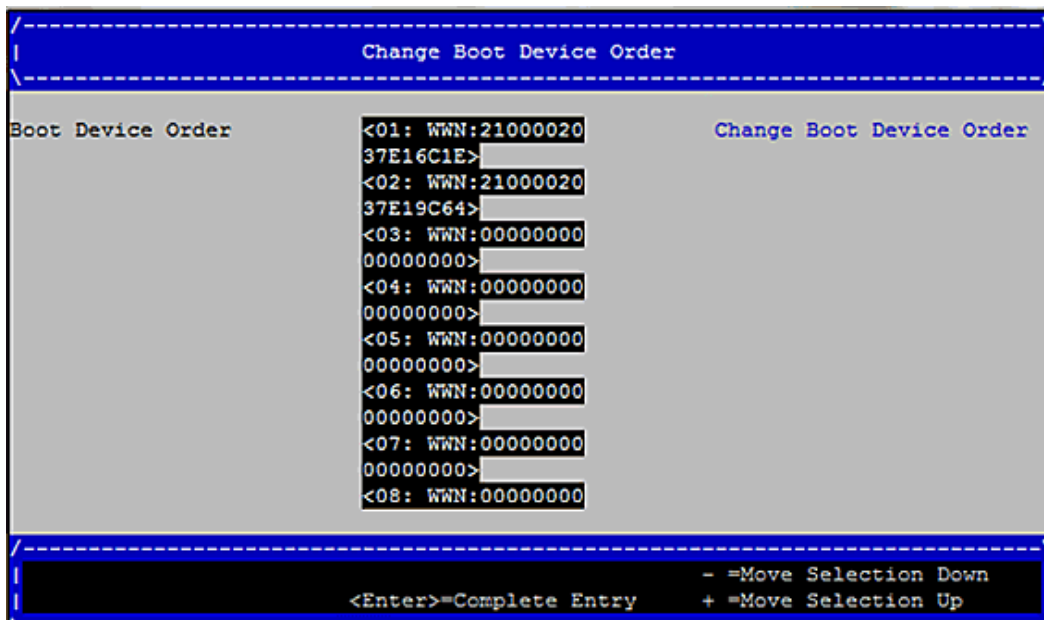


Figure 12-14 Boot Device Order Screen

5. Use the <+> or <-> keys to change the order of the selected device on the dialog box and press <Enter>. A screen shows the new boot device order.

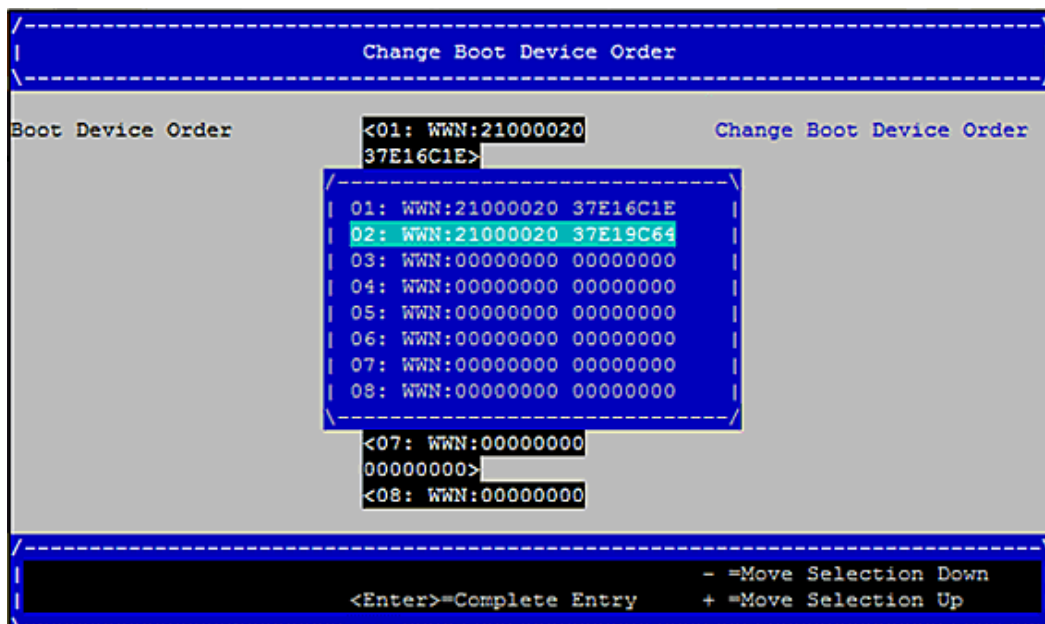


Figure 12-15 Change Boot Device Order Screen

6. Verify that the boot device list order is correct. Press <Enter>.

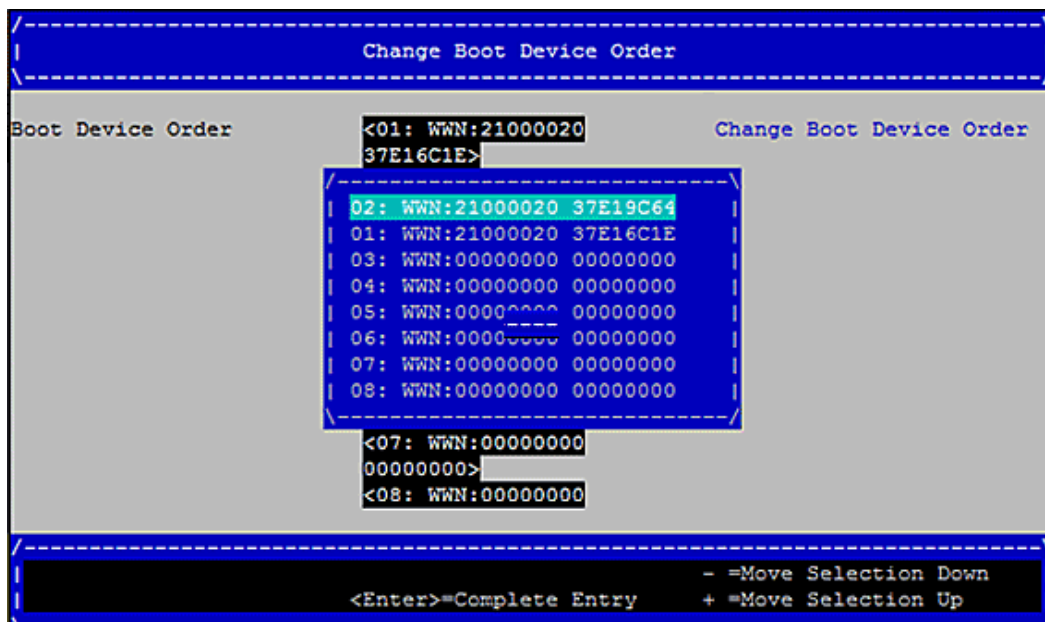


Figure 12-16 Change Boot Device Order Screen with Revised Boot Order

7. Select **Commit Changes** and press **<Enter>**. The revised order is saved to the NVRAM. The Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu is displayed.

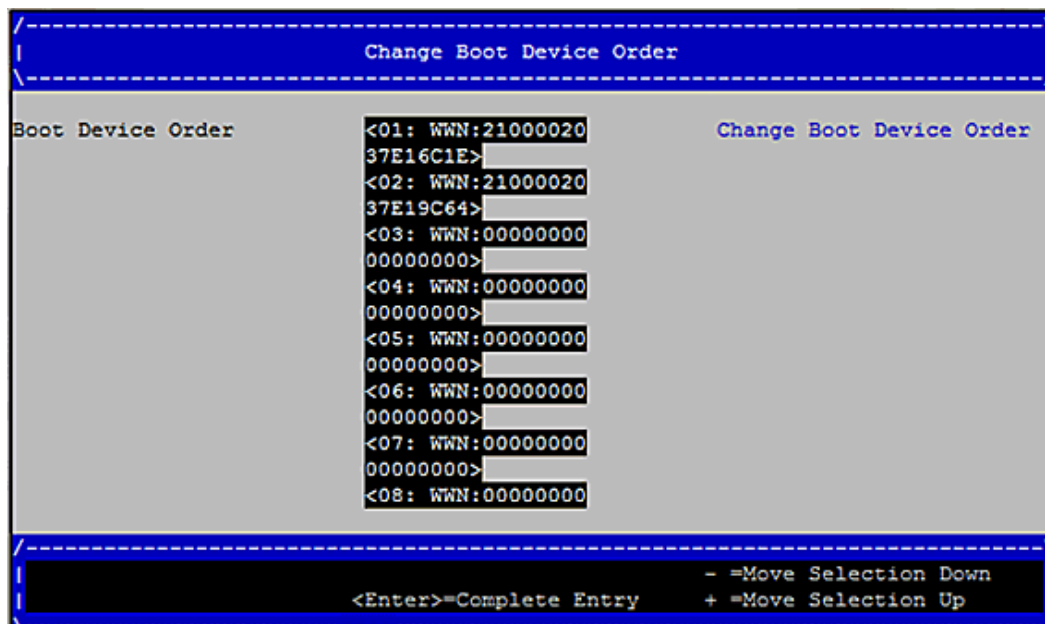


Figure 12-17 Change Boot Device Order

8. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu, select **Back to Display Adapters and RECONNECT DEVICES** to complete configuration or select another configuration option.

Configuring Adapter Parameters

Changing the PLOGI Retry Timer

This option allows you to set the interval for the PLOGI retry timer. This option is especially useful for Tachyon-based RAID arrays. Under very rare occasions, a Tachyon-based RAID array resets itself and the port goes offline temporarily in the loop. When the port comes to life, the PLOGI retry interval scans the loop to discover this device.

You can choose:

- Disable – Default
- 50 Msec
- 100 Msec
- 200 Msec

To change timer values:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter to configure and press **<Enter>**.

- From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Configure HBA Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure HBA Parameters screen is displayed.
- From the Configure HBA Parameters screen, select **PLOGI Retry Timer** and press **<Enter>**. The PLOGI Retry Timer menu is displayed.

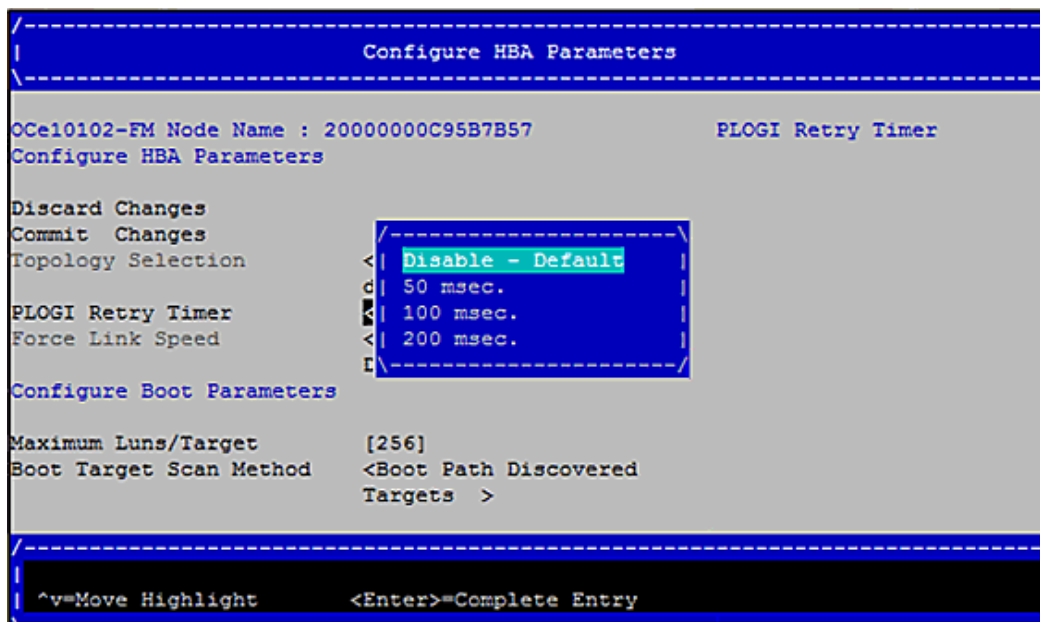


Figure 12-18 PLOGI Retry Timer

- Select a retry timer option and press **<Enter>**. The screen is refreshed with the modified value.
- Note:** Press **<Esc>** to return to the EFI utility menu.
- Select **Commit Changes** and press **<Enter>**. The Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu is displayed.

Changing the Maximum LUNs per Target

The maximum number of LUNs represents the maximum number of LUNs that are polled during device discovery. The minimum value is 1, the maximum value is 4096. The default is 256.

To change the maximum number of LUNs:

- From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter whose LUNs per target information you want to change and press **<Enter>**.
- From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Configure HBA Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure HBA Parameters screen is displayed.

- From the Configure HBA Parameters screen, select **Maximum LUNs/Target** and press **<Enter>**.

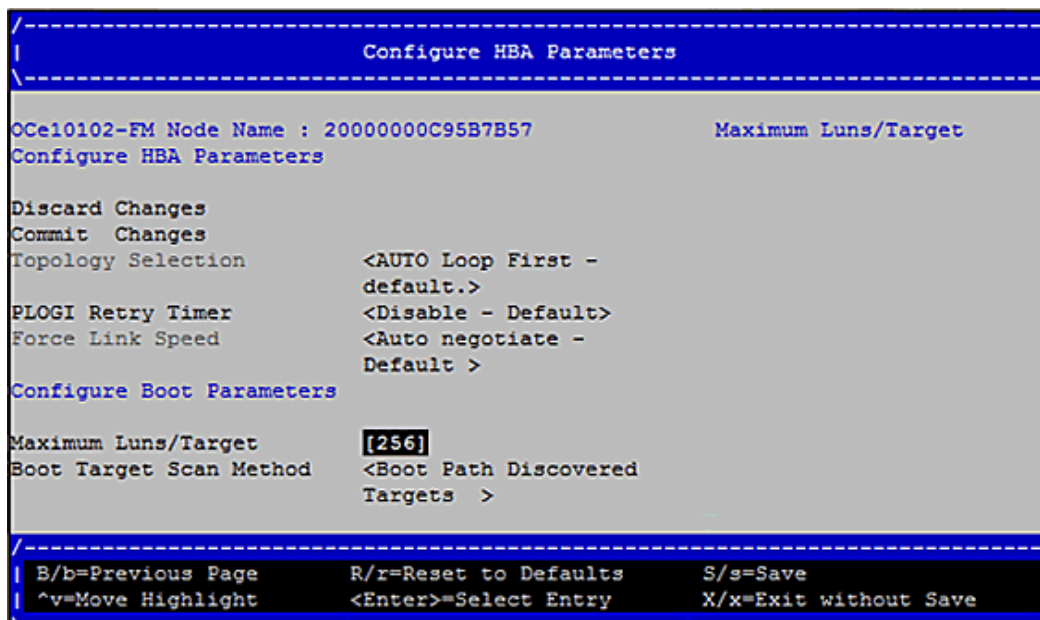


Figure 12-19 Configure HBA Parameters - Maximum LUNs/Target Field

- Type a decimal value between 1 and 4096 and press **<Enter>**. The screen is refreshed with the modified value.

Note: The default and typical maximum number of LUNs in a target device is 256. A higher number of maximum LUNs causes the discovery to take more time.

- Select **Commit Changes** and press **<Enter>**. The Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu is displayed.

Changing Boot Target Scan Method

This option is only available if none of the eight boot entries is configured to boot from the DID or WWPN. The Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu is used to configure up to eight boot entries. With boot scan enabled, the first device issues a Name Server Inquiry.

The boot scan options are:

- Boot Path from NVRAM Targets – Boot scan discovers only LUNs that are saved to the adapter's NVRAM. Select up to eight attached devices to use as potential boot devices. Limiting discovery to a set of eight selected targets can greatly reduce the time it takes for the EFIBoot driver to complete discovery.
- Boot Path from Discovered Targets – Boot scan discovers all devices that are attached to the FC port. Discovery can take a long time on large SANs if this option is used.
- Do not create boot path.

- EFIFCScanLevel: NVRAM Targets – Boot scan sets the EFIFCScanLevel environment variable to inform the driver to configure only targets in the NVRAM boot table.
- EFIFCScanLevel - Discovered Targets – Boot scan sets the EFIScanLevel environment variable to inform the driver to configure all available targets on the SAN.

To change the boot target scan method:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter whose boot target scan method you want to change and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Configure HBA Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure HBA Parameters is displayed.
3. From the Configure HBA Parameters menu, select **Boot Target Scan Method** and press **<Enter>**. The Boot Target Scan Method menu is displayed.

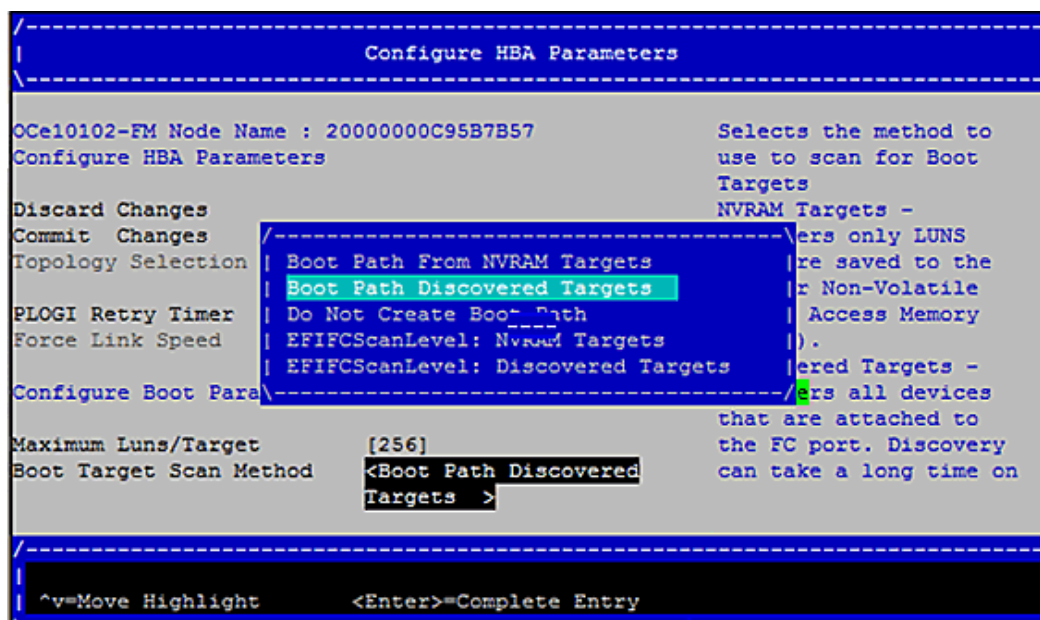


Figure 12-20 Configure HBA Parameters - Boot Target Scan Method Menu

4. Select a boot scan option and press **<Enter>**. The screen is refreshed with the modified value.

Note: If you have a large SAN and set the boot path to “Boot Path Discovered Targets,” discovery takes a long time. Press **<Esc>** to return to the EFI utility menu.

5. Select **Commit Changes** and press **<Enter>**. The Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu is displayed.

Changing Device Discovery Delay

This parameter sets a delay to occur after an loop initialization and before a scan is initiated to discover the target. The default is off or 0 seconds. Change the default if you have an HP MSA1000 or HP MSA1500 RAID array and if both of the following conditions exist:

- The MSA array is direct connected or part of an arbitrated loop (for example, daisy chained with a JBOD).
- The boot LUN is not reliably discovered. In this case, a delay may be necessary to allow the array to complete a reset.

Caution: Do not change the delay device discovery time if your MSA array is connected to a fabric switch. Setting it to any other time guarantees that the maximum delay time is seen on every loop initialization.

If both of the above conditions exist, typically set this parameter to 20 seconds. However, the delay should be only long enough for the array to be reliably discovered after a reset. Your value may be different.

To change the delay device discovery value:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter whose device discovery delay settings you want to change and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Configure HBA Parameters** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure HBA Parameters is displayed.
3. From the Configure HBA Parameters menu, select **Delay Device Discovery** and press **<Enter>**.

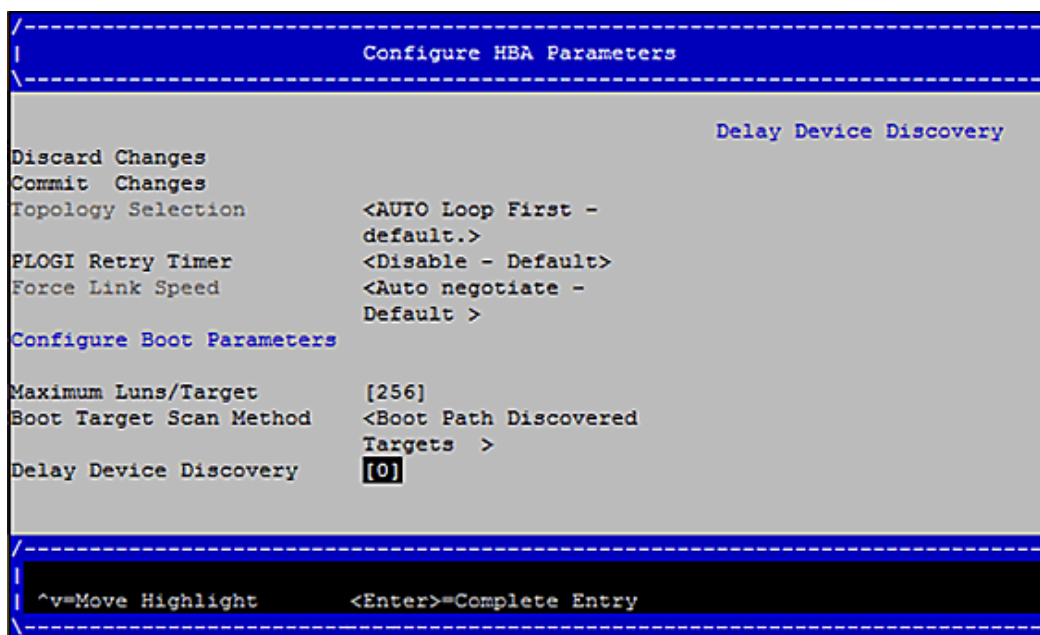


Figure 12-21 Configure HBA Parameters - Delay Device Discovery

4. Use the +/- keys to change the delay device discovery value in increments of 10 seconds and press <Enter>. The screen is refreshed with the modified value.
5. Select **Commit Changes** and press <Enter>. The Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu is displayed.

Resetting Emulex Adapters to Default Values

The EFI utility enables you to clear the NVRAM target list and set all boot device WWNNs back to 0, along with setting the adapter back to the default values. These default values are listed in Table 12-1.

Table 12-1 Adapter Default Values

Parameter	Default Value	Valid Values
Enable/Disable BIOS	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
PLOGI Retry Timer	Disabled	Disabled 50 msec 100 msec 200 msec
Boot Target Scan	Boot path from NVRAM targets	Boot path from NVRAM targets Boot path discovered targets Do not create boot path
Maximum LUNs Setting	0256	0-4096
Delay Device Discovery	0000	0000-0255
Advanced Mode	Enabled (OCe11100-series and OCe14000-series 2-port and 4-port controllers, and the LPe16202/OCe15100 CFA) Disabled (OCe10100-series controllers)	Enabled Disabled
PXE Boot Support	The default for this parameter varies depending on the vendor configuration.	Enabled Disabled
SR-IOV	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
VLAN Support	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
VLAN ID	0	0-4094
VLAN Priority	0	0-7
Multichannel Support	The default for this parameter varies depending on the vendor configuration.	Enabled Disabled

Table 12-1 Adapter Default Values (Continued)

Parameter	Default Value	Valid Values
Function En/Dis	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
Bandwidth	0%	Must have a total of 100% across all ports.
LPVID	0	2-4094
Switch Option (IBM Virtual Fabric-capable configuration, if available)	IBM Virtual Fabric Mode	IBM Virtual Fabric Mode IBM Unified Fabric Protocol Mode Switch Independent Mode

Note: The following example sets the default values for FC and FCoE adapters only. To set other adapters to their default settings, you must use the utility for that specific protocol.

To set Emulex adapters to their default settings:

1. From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter whose default settings you want to change and press **<Enter>**.
2. From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Set Emulex Adapter to Default Settings** and press **<Enter>**.

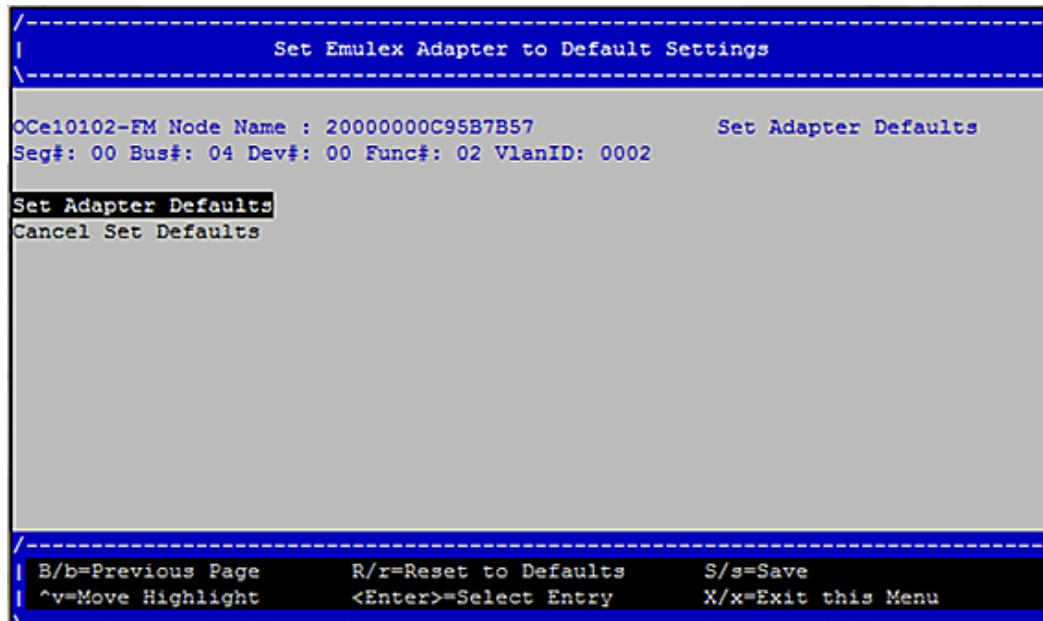


Figure 12-22 Set Adapter Defaults

Note: This will set the adapter to the FCoE driver default settings only.

3. Select **Set Adapter Defaults** and press **<Enter>** to set the adapter back to its default values. The Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu is displayed.

- From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu, select **Back to Display Adapters and RECONNECT DEVICES** to complete configuration or select another configuration option.

Displaying Adapter Information

The Adapter Information screen shows the following information about the selected adapter:

- Adapter status
- Network boot status
- Link speed
- Topology
- Firmware version – refer to this firmware version if reporting a problem to Emulex Technical Support
- Universal boot version
- EFI Boot version

To display adapter information:

- From the Device Manager screen (Figure 12-2), select the adapter whose information you want to view and press **<Enter>**.
- From the Emulex Adapter Configuration Main Menu (Figure 12-3), select **Display Adapter Info** and press **<Enter>**. Information about the selected adapter is displayed.

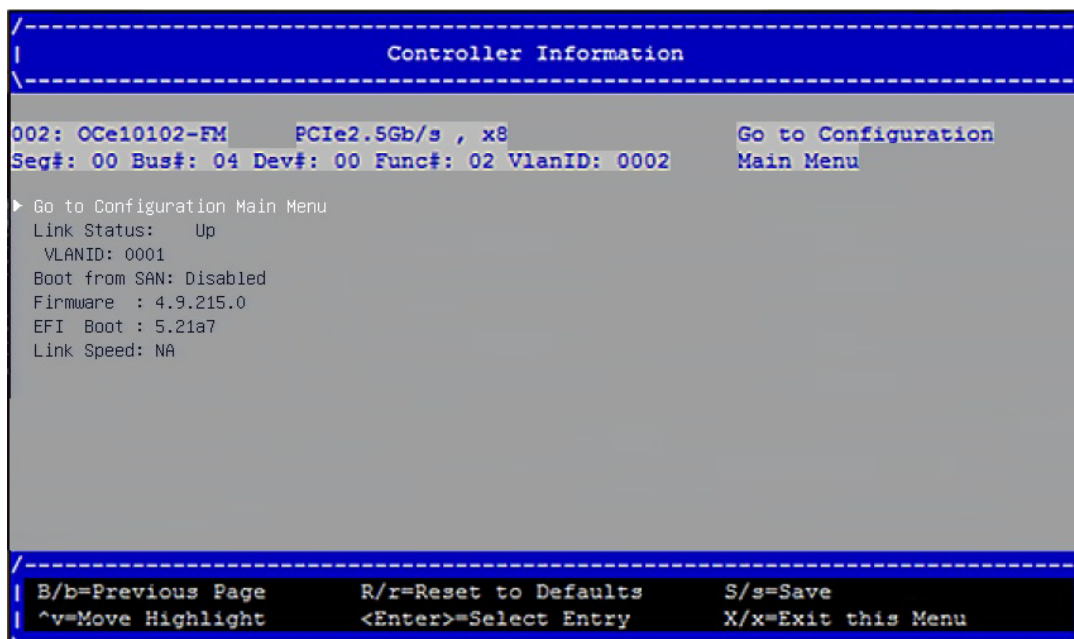


Figure 12-23 Controller Information

13. Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting for the NIC Protocol

Issues During the PXE Boot Process

Situation: If any of the following occur during the boot process:

- The PXE boot ROM sends a DHCP request extended with PXE specific options, but the request is not received.
- The DHCP responses do not contain the DHCP options (DHCP OFFERS) that include the NBP filename and boot server lists.
- The PXE client attempts to download the specified NBP over TFTP from one of the specified boot servers, but fails.
- The PXE client does not execute the downloaded NBP.

Outcome: If any of these issues occur, the boot process continues using the next available device in the boot sequence.

PXE Error Codes

Table 13-1 PXE Error Codes

Error Codes	Possible Reason	Comment/Solution
Init Error Codes		
PXE-E01: PCI Vendor and Device IDs do not match!	The PCI BIOS passes Bus/Device/Function numbers in AX register when it initializes the OptionROM. If the vendor ID & device ID did not match the vendor ID and the device ID in the device's PCI configuration space, with the UNDI device PCI structure defined in UNDI driver initialization code, this error is displayed.	This message should never be seen in the production level BIOS.
PXE-E04: Error reading PCI Configuration space	Any of the PCI BIOS INT 1Ah calls to read the PCI configuration space failed.	This should not happen with any production level motherboard BIOS.
PXE-E07: PXE BIOS calls not supported.	The PCI system BIOS does not support INT 1Ah services.	This should not happen with any PCI BIOS as all PCI BIOS must support these services.

Table 13-1 PXE Error Codes (Continued)

Error Codes	Possible Reason	Comment/Solution
ARP/TFTP Error Codes		
PXE-E11:ARP timeout	An ARP request is tried four times and the client did not receive an ARP reply.	Check the DHCP server settings. If you are connected through a switch, also check the switch settings.
PXE-E32: TFTP Open timeout.	A DHCP address and boot file name has been obtained and attempts to download the file name from a remote server.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the TFTP is configured properly. • Check that the filename is properly placed in the tftpboot directory. • Check that the PXE server is configured for TFTP not MTFTP.
PXE-E35: TFTP read timeout.	A TFTP server is not able to receive the next packet.	Check that the hardware and TFTP server are functioning properly.
PXE-E36: Error received from TFTP server.	A TFTP server sends an error packet.	Check the TFTP server settings and boot file settings.
PXE-E38: TFTP cannot open connection.	A TFTP client is not able to open a TFTP connection with the TFTP server.	Check that the correct boot file is copied into the default TFTP boot path.
PXE-E3B: TFTP error-File not found	A requested boot file is not found on TFTP server.	Check that the correct boot file is copied into the default TFTP boot path.
PXE-E3C: TFTP error - Access violation.	The TFTP server does not have enough access rights to open or read the file.	Check the TFTP server's file permissions.
PXE-E3F: TFTP packet size is invalid	TFTP packet received is larger than 1456 bytes.	Check the MTU on the Server side NIC interface.
Boot/DHCP Error Codes		
PXE-E51: No DHCP or Proxy DHCP offers were received.	The client did not receive any valid DHCP, BOOTP, or Proxy DHCP offers.	Check that the bootfile name is configured correctly for PXE Clients in the DHCP setup.
PXE-E52: Proxy DHCP offers were received. No DHCP offers were received.	The client did receive at least one valid proxyDHCP offer, but did not receive any valid DHCP or BOOTP offers.	Check that the DHCP server and PXE server are configured properly.
PXE-E53: No boot filename received.	The client did receive a valid BOOTP/DHCP offer, but does not have a boot file name to download in the DHCP offer.	Check that the bootfile name is configured correctly for PXEClients in the DHCP setup.

Table 13-1 PXE Error Codes (Continued)

Error Codes	Possible Reason	Comment/Solution
PXE-E55: Proxy DHCP service did not reply to request on port 4011.	The client issued a proxyDHCP request to the DHCP server on port 4011 but did not receive a reply.	Check that the DHCP server and TFTP server are properly configured on different servers. This issue may happen only when both are configured on separate servers.
UNDI Error Codes		
PXE-E60: Invalid UNDI API function number	The underlying UNDI drivers do not support the UNDI API sent from BaseCode/NBP.	Check with the hardware vendor.
PXE-E61: Media test failed, check cable.	There is no physical link on the PXE client port on which the boot is attempted.	Check the cables on the NIC interface.
PXE-E63: Error while initializing the NIC.	There is an issue in initializing the hardware as part of the UNDI_Initialize API.	Check with the hardware vendor.
BaseCode/UNDI Loader Error Codes		
PXE-EC1: BaseCode ROM ID structure was not found.	The UNDI boot module can not find the BaseCode ROM ID structure. This may be caused by a corrupted BaseCode ROM image.	
PXE-EC3: BaseCode ROM ID structure is invalid.	The BaseCode ROM ID structure is invalid. This may be caused by a corrupted BaseCode image in ROM.	
PXE-EC4: UNDI ROM ID structure was not found.	The BaseCode loader module could not locate the UNDI ROM ID structure. The UNDI ROM image is probably corrupted.	
PXE-EC5: UNDI ROM ID structure is invalid.	The UNDI ROM image is probably corrupted.	
PXE-EC8: !PXE structure was not found in UNDI driver code segment.	The UNDI ROM image is probably corrupted.	
Bootstrap and Discovery Error Codes		
PXE-E74: Bad or missing PXE menu and /or prompt information	PXE tags were detected but the boot menu and/or boot prompt were not found or were invalid.	

Table 13-1 PXE Error Codes (Continued)

Error Codes	Possible Reason	Comment/Solution
PXE-E77: Bad or missing discovery server list.	There are two possible reasons. One is that Multicast and Broadcast discovery are both disabled. The other is that Multicast and Broadcast are enabled, but the server list tag is not found or is invalid.	
PXE-E78: Could not locate boot server.		
PXE-E79: NBP is too big to fit in free base memory.	The NBP file size is larger than the free base memory.	Check the NBP file size.
Miscellaneous Error Codes		
PXE-EA0: Network boot cancelled by keystroke	Pressing <Ctrl> and <C> during DHCP discovery.	

Troubleshooting for the iSCSI Protocol

The following section includes troubleshooting information for the iSCSISelect utility. Ensure that you also lookup the readme.txt file located on CD1 for the most current troubleshooting issues.

Table 13-2 Troubleshooting the iSCSISelect Utility

Issue	Answer/Solution
iSCSI BIOS banner is not displayed during system post.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the motherboard BIOS configuration and make sure that the Option ROM is enabled and is set for the PCIe slot into which the adapter is inserted. If the Option ROM is enabled and is set for the PCIe slot into which the adapter is inserted and the issue persists, erase the Controller Configuration. For more information, see "Erasing the Current Configuration" on page 92.

Table 13-2 Troubleshooting the iSCSISelect Utility (Continued)

Issue	Answer/Solution
Unable to ping iSCSI target IP address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check cable connections and make sure they are securely connected at both ends. Make sure the link light is ON at both ends of the cable. • Verify that you have assigned a valid IP address with the correct subnet mask to the interface(s) that are connected to the network. • Check for duplicate IP addresses. • Make sure you are connected to the correct port. • If the IP address is coming from DHCP, check that the DHCP server is up and available. • Is the target on a different subnet? Check the default gateway and make sure that the IP addresses of both the default gateway and the remote host are correct. • Check link status under Network Configuration. If you try changing the initiator link status, you can back out one screen then go back to Network Configuration to see a view of your current link status.
Login to iSCSI target fails or login succeeds, but no LUNs are available.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check initiator IQN name and target IQN name. Verify that they are properly specified. • Check target's ACL settings (if any) to verify that the initiator's IQN name is listed and can be recognized. • Make sure that the target login parameters are compatible with the initiator's. • If this checklist confirms that initiator and target are configured correctly and the issue persists, erase the Controller Configuration. For more information, see "Erasing the Current Configuration" on page 92.
Login to iSCSI target is successful, but iSCSI I/O causes the system to hang or freeze.	<p>Check the jumbo frame settings on the iSCSI target. If enabled, change the frame size to 1514 and retry. This isolates any issues in the network related to jumbo frames. Jumbo frames, when supported by the entire network, provide increased performance.</p> <p>Note: OneConnect adapters support jumbo frames.</p>

Table 13-2 Troubleshooting the iSCSISelect Utility (Continued)

Issue	Answer/Solution
Unable to boot from the iSCSI target.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the target setup. Check the target ACL to verify that the initiator's iSCSI name is listed and can be recognized. Check the initiator name and make sure it is correct. If applicable, verify that you have selected the iSCSI LUN as the boot LUN in your system BIOS setting. Check the system BIOS for boot device priority order. Make sure that the boot device is at the top. <p>If using DHCP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If Boot Support is not enabled, enable it on the iSCSI Initiator menu. (For more information, see chapter 8., "Configuring and Managing the iSCSI Initiator with the iSCSISelect Utility," on page 82.) <p>If DHCP boot support is enabled, check the DHCP setup and also verify that you have added the root path to the DHCP server. For more information, see "Setting Up a Basic iSCSI Boot Configuration" on page 79.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If this checklist confirms that the initiator and target are configured correctly and the issue persists, erase the Controller Configuration. For more information, see "Erasing the Current Configuration" on page 92.
BIOS post shows "BIOS Not Installed" message.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you <i>have not</i> configured an iSCSI boot target, this is proper normal behavior. If you <i>have</i> configured an iSCSI boot target and the BIOS cannot find a bootable LUN, then refer to the solutions provided in the issue <i>Unable to boot from the iSCSI target</i>.
If solutions for issues 1-3 and 5-6 all fail.	<p>Use the iSCSISelect utility to erase the controller configuration. To clear controller configuration:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the Controller Configuration menu, select Erase Configuration and press <Enter>. A message appears asking if you want to erase the current configuration. Press <Y>. You are cautioned that the operation removes any existing configuration permanently. Press <Y>. <p>Note: If you have multiple controllers, you must erase the configuration of each controller separately. For more information, see "Erasing the Current Configuration" on page 92.</p> <p>After you erase the controller configuration, reboot the system and then reconfigure the adapter.</p>
You receive this POST error message: Initiator iSCSI Name mismatch, Please use iSCSISelect to set a single name for all controllers. Press <Ctrl><S> to enter iSCSISelect. (Reboot required)	<p>In the iSCSI BIOS, the iSCSI initiator name may be different if there is more than one Emulex adapter in the system. If the iSCSI initiator name is different on multiple controllers, you receive a POST error message indicating an iSCSI name mismatch. You must enter the iSCSISelect utility and save a new initiator name on the first iSCSISelect utility menu screen so that the iSCSI initiator name on all controllers match. All logins from the multiple controllers use the new name.</p>

Table 13-2 Troubleshooting the iSCSISelect Utility (Continued)

Issue	Answer/Solution
<p>You receive any of the following POST error messages or warnings:</p> <p>Redboot Initialization failed...</p> <p>Firmware Load failed...</p> <p>DDR config failed...</p> <p>DDR callibrate failed...</p> <p>DDR test failed...</p> <p>SEEPROM checksum failed...</p> <p>Secondary firmware image loaded...</p>	<p>These POST messages indicate that you must reload the adapter firmware using OneCommand Manager or one of the Emulex online or offline utilities. If the error(s) persist, contact Technical Support.</p>
<p>You receive this POST error message:</p> <p>Firmware halted. This firmware does not support this controller.</p>	<p>The firmware loaded on this adapter is not supported. Load the appropriate firmware for the controller.</p>

Troubleshooting for the FcoE Protocol

Table 13-3 Troubleshooting the FCoE Protocol

Issue	Answer/Solution
<p>Cisco Nexus switch configuration situations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Windows creates the NTFS partition properly, but then reports that "The hard disk containing the partition or free space you chose has a LUN greater than 0. Setup cannot continue". (Dell 1850 server). Windows reboots successfully, but then gets stuck during the GUI portion of the installation right from the beginning. (HP DL385G2 server). 	<p>Ensure that the FCoE switch ports are configured correctly for the adapter's FCoE settings.</p>

Appendix A. Configuring iSCSI through a DHCP Server using Vendor-Specific Option 43

Overview

An iSCSI initiator requires the following parameters to boot from a target:

- Its IP address
- Its unique node name
- The boot iSCSI target's IP address
- The boot target's name. If not available, this may be discovered using the iSCSI discovery protocol.
- The target's non-default TCP port number (if applicable)
- Header and data digest settings to be used with the target
- Authentication parameters, if applicable

If your boot BIOS allows it, you can configure all of the above parameters from a centrally configured DHCP server using vendor-specific option 43. This appendix documents this method of configuration. For this method, the initiator must be configured (using non-DHCP means) with the appropriate DHCP vendor ID. The method and format for specifying the vendor ID is outside the scope of this document. The initiator offers this Vendor ID to the DHCP server to retrieve data in the format described in the following sections.

Two other methods for configuration are not documented in this appendix:

- Manual configuration using iSCSISelect or SMCLP/MILI
- Pre-boot configuration using CLP /BIOS 3.0

Format of Vendor-Specific Option 43

The format for vendor-specific option 43 is as follows:

```
iscsi:<ipaddress>:<protocol>:<iscsi port number>:<lun>:<target name>
```

Fields enclosed in angular brackets (including the angular brackets) should be replaced with their corresponding values. All fields are case insensitive.

See the example at the end of this document.

Description of Parameters

<ipaddress>

Replace this parameter with a valid IPv4 address in dotted decimal notation. This is a mandatory field.

<protocol>

Replace this parameter with a decimal number indicating the TCP port. The default TCP port is 3260.

<iscsi port number>

Replace this parameter with a decimal number ranging from 1 to 65535 (inclusive). It is an optional field.

<lun>

This parameter is a hexadecimal representation of logical unit number of the boot device. It is an optional field. If not provided, LUN 0 is assumed to be the boot LUN. It is an 8-byte number which must be specified as a hexadecimal number consisting of 16 digits, with an appropriate number of 0's padded to the left, if required.

<target name>

Replace this parameter with a valid iSCSI target 'iqn' name of up to 223 characters. This is a mandatory field.

Example

```
iscsi:010.010.010.001:0:3260:0:iqn.1992-08.com.netap:sn.151729740
```

The above example specifies the following:

- Target IP address: 010.010.010.001
- Target protocol: 0
- Target TCP port: 3260
- Target boot LUN: 0
- Target iqn name: iqn.1992-08.com.netap:sn.151729740

Appendix B. Example for Installing and Configuring Linux or Citrix for PXE Boot and UEFI Boot

Linux and Citrix PXE Server Remote Installation Procedure

PXE configuration requires a PXE server and the PXE client.

Setting up a PXE server requires the following configurations:

- NFS server
- TFTP server
- DHCP server
- PXE boot server

The pxelinux functionality occurs in this order:

1. The client machine boots to PXE which requests a DHCP address.
2. The DHCP server responds with an IP address for the client machine along with the address of a TFTP server and a filename to load (pxelinux.0) from that server.
3. The client downloads pxelinux.0 from the specified TFTP server and executes it.
4. The pxelinux.0 file searches the pxelinux.cfg directory on the server for a configuration file that matches the IP address of the machine. If no matches are found, it attempts to load a file called default.
5. The configuration file loaded by pxelinux.0 has instructions on what to do next. Some of the choices include boot to local hard drive, boot to an image file (floppy image), or load vmlinuz and initrd.img.
6. The client searches for a configuration file with the IP address converted to hexadecimal (for example, 192.168.1.60 becomes C0A8013C) or the MAC address of your PXE boot client's Ethernet card with a prefix of "01". The MAC address should be separated with dashes instead of colons.

In this example, the client looks for the following configuration file names and uses the first one it finds.

```
01-00-00-C9-5B-75-A8
C0A8013C
C0A8013
C0A801
C0A80
C0A8
C0A
C0
C
default
```

7. The default file's contents should look similar to the following:

```
prompt 1
default linux
timeout 100

label linux
kernel vmlinuz
append initrd=initrd.img ramdisk_size=9216 noapic acpi=off
```

PXE Server

NFS Server Configuration Script

```
[root@bglinux156 ~]# mkdir /work
[root@bglinux156 ~]# mount 10.192.194.110:/work /mnt
[root@bglinux156 ~]# cd /mnt/
[root@bglinux156 ~]# cp -r rhel5564/ /work/ #copy the entire
    directory to "/work"
[root@bglinux156 ~]# cd /work/rhel5564
[root@bglinux156 ~]# cp -r images/ /tftpboot/linux-install/
[root@bglinux156 ~]# vim /etc/exports###(Add "/work *(rw, sync)")
[root@bglinux156 ~]# exportfs -a (reflect changes in NFS Server)
```

1. Restart NFS Services.

```
[root@bglinux156 ~]# /etc/rc.d/init.d/portmap restart
Stopping portmap: [ OK ]
Starting portmap: [ OK ]
[root@bglinux156 ~]# /etc/rc.d/init.d/nfslock restart
Stopping NFS locking: [ OK ]
Stopping NFS statd: [ OK ]
Starting NFS statd: [ OK ]
[root@bglinux156 ~]# /etc/rc.d/init.d/nfs restart
Shutting down NFS mountd: [ OK ]
Shutting down NFS daemon: [ OK ]
Shutting down NFS quotas: [ OK ]
Shutting down NFS services: [ OK ]
Starting NFS services: [ OK ]
Starting NFS quotas: [ OK ]
Starting NFS daemon: [ OK ]
Starting NFS mountd: [ OK ]
```

2. Check if the NFS services are running.

```
[root@bglinux156 ~]# rpcinfo -p
    program vers proto port
```

```
100000 2 tcp 111 portmapper
100000 2 udp 111 portmapper
100021 1 udp 56782 nlockmgr
100021 3 udp 56782 nlockmgr
100021 4 udp 56782 nlockmgr
100021 1 tcp 44855 nlockmgr
100021 3 tcp 44855 nlockmgr
100021 4 tcp 44855 nlockmgr
100024 1 udp 766 status
100024 1 tcp 769 status
100011 1 udp 815 rquotad
100011 2 udp 815 rquotad
100011 1 tcp 818 rquotad
100011 2 tcp 818 rquotad
100003 2 udp 2049 nfs
100003 3 udp 2049 nfs
100003 4 udp 2049 nfs
100003 2 tcp 2049 nfs
100003 3 tcp 2049 nfs
100003 4 tcp 2049 nfs
100005 1 udp 828 mountd
100005 1 tcp 831 mountd
100005 2 udp 828 mountd
100005 2 tcp 831 mountd
100005 3 udp 828 mountd
```

TFTP Server Setup

```
[root@bglinux156 ~]# vi /etc/xinetd.d/tftp
```

```
service tftp
{
    socket_type = dgram
    protocol = udp
    wait = yes
    user = root
    server = /usr/sbin/in.tftpd
    server_args = -s /tftpboot/linux-install #This line specifies
#path where the pxe boot searches for
#the images
    disable = no #convert this line from yes to no
    per_source = 11
    cps = 100 2
```



```
flags = IPv4
}
```

```
[root@bglinux156 ~]# /sbin/chkconfig --level 345 xinetd on
[root@bglinux156 ~]# /sbin/chkconfig --level 345 tftp on
[root@bglinux156 ~]# service xinetd restart
```

DHCP Server Configuration

1. Install the following RPMs in the server if not installed:

```
[root@bglinux156 ~]# rpm -qa | grep dhcp
dhcpv6-client-1.0.10-18.el5
dhcp-devel-3.0.5-23.el5
dhcp-3.0.5-23.el5
```

2. Make the following entry in /etc/dhcpd.conf file:

```
#
# DHCP Server Configuration file.
# see /usr/share/doc/dhcp*/dhcpd.conf.sample
#
ddns-update-style interim;
subnet 192.168.1.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    range 192.168.1.50 192.168.1.90;
    default-lease-time 3600;
    max-lease-time 4800;
    option subnet-mask 255.255.255.0;
    option domain-name "pxe_text";
    option time-offset -8;
}

host bglinux45{
    next-server 192.168.1.1;
    hardware ethernet 00:00:C9:5B:75:A8;
    fixed-address 192.168.1.60;
    option host-name "linux-test";

    filename "pxelinux.0";
}

###This sets up a DNS server that will assign IP Address 192.168.1.60
###to the client machine that has MAC Address "00:00:C9:5B:75:A8"
###assigned to a PXE capable NIC
###The only thing that needs to be changed in the above, is the MAC
###Address to match that of the NIC in the client box
###The IP address that follows the next-server option should be the IP
###address of the tftp server

[root@bglinux156 ~]# service dhcpd restart
Shutting down dhcpd: [ OK ]
```

```
Starting dhcpd: [ OK ]
```

PXE Boot Server Configuration

```
[root@bglinux156 ~]# rpm -qa | grep system-config-netboot
system-config-netboot-cmd-0.1.45.1-1.el5
system-config-netboot-0.1.45.1-1.el5
```

Copying Files to the TFTP Server with the Graphical Version of the Network Booting Tool

Copy the files necessary to start the installation to the TFTP server to enable them to be found when the client requests them. Run the Network Booting Tool on the NFS, FTP, or HTTP server. A separate PXE server is not necessary.

To use the graphical version of the Network Booting Tool, you must be running the X Window System, have root privileges, and have the redhat-config-netboot RPM package installed.

To start the Network Booting Tool from the desktop, do one of the following:

- Go to the Main Menu Button (on the Panel) and select **System Settings > Server Settings > Network Booting Service**.
- or-
- Type the command `system-config-netboot` at a shell prompt. (For example, in an XTerm or a GNOME terminal.)

Note: If you are starting the Network Booting Tool for the first time, select **Network Install from the First Time Druid**.

Copy the files necessary to start the installation to the TFTP server.

1. Select **Configure > Network Installation** from the pull-down menu.

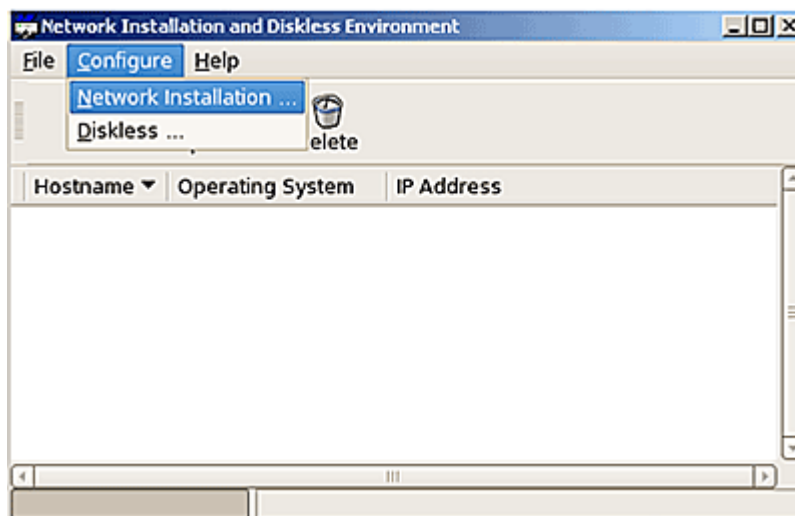


Figure B-1 Network Installation and Diskless Environment Window

2. The Configure Network Installations window is displayed. Click **Add**.

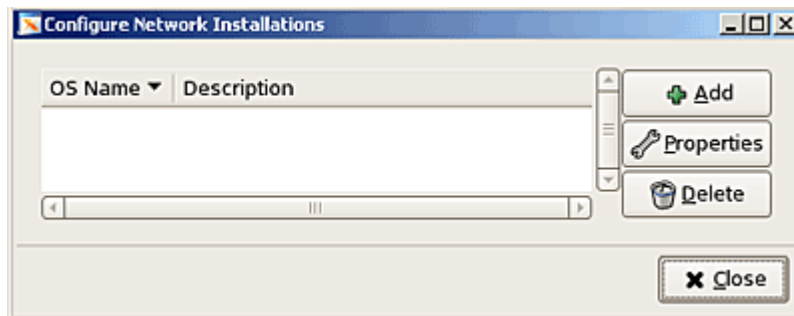


Figure B-2 Configure Network Installations Window

3. The Network Installation Dialog window is displayed.

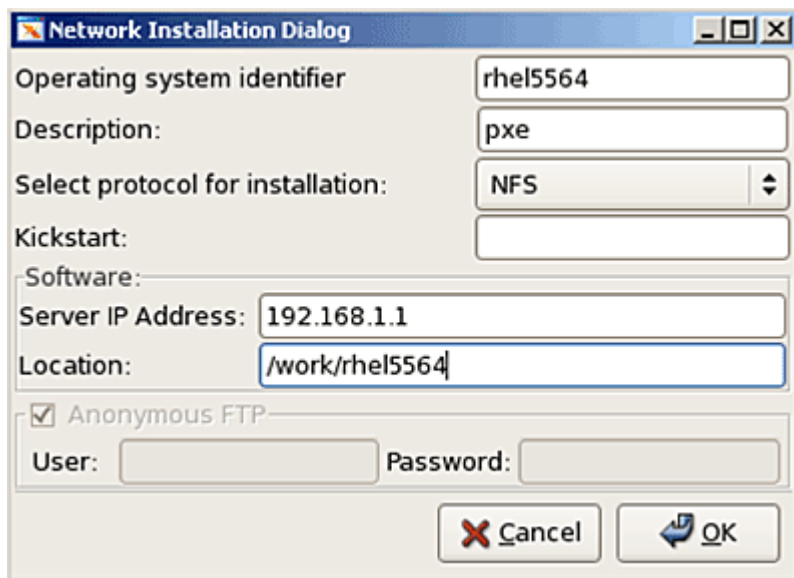


Figure B-3 Network Installation Dialog Window

- Enter the operating system identifier and description.
- Select **pxe** as the protocol for installation.
- Enter the IP address of the TFTP server (as set up in the DHCP server configuration) in the server IP address field.
- Enter a directory location for the server.

The Network Installation and Diskless Environment window shows the IP address of the TFTP server.

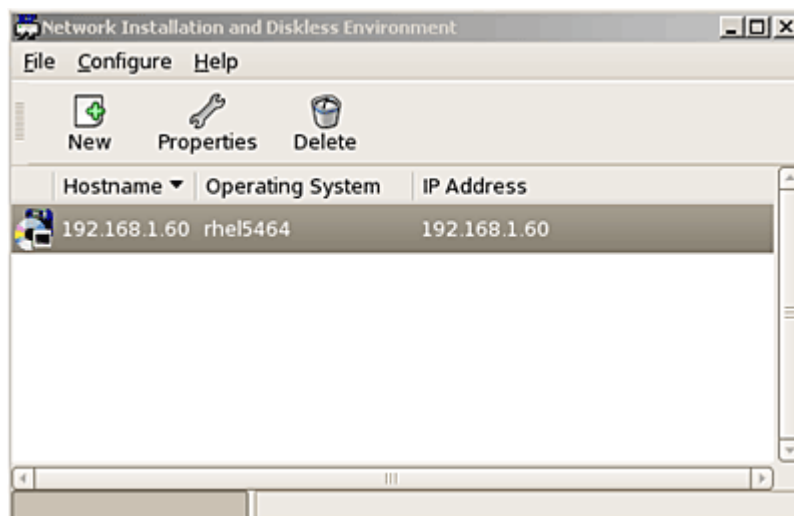


Figure B-4 Network Installation and Diskless Environment Window with IP Address

Configuring the Host

To configure the host:

1. Double-click on the IP address row in the Network Installation and Diskless Environment window (Figure B-4). An edit dialog box is displayed.

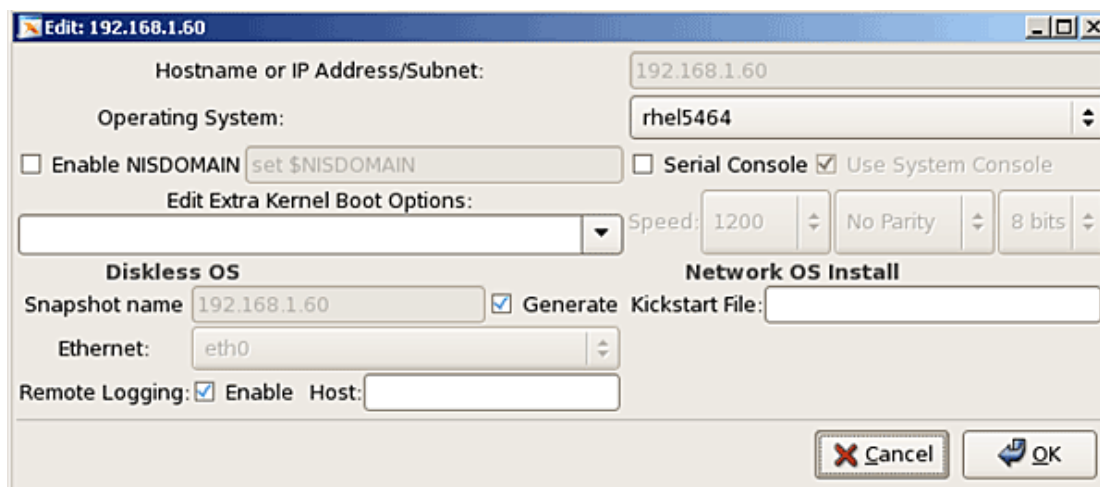


Figure B-5 Edit Dialog Box

2. In the Hostname or IP Address/Subnet field, enter the IP address, fully qualified hostname, or a subnet of systems that should be allowed to connect to the PXE server for installations. In Figure B-5, the Hostname/IP Address is the IP address of the client machine.
3. In the case of a multi-boot environment, select an operating system preference.

4. Select the operating system identifier to install on this client. The list is populated from the network install instances created from the Network Installation dialog box.
 5. If you use a serial console, check the **Serial Console** check box.
 6. Specify the location of a kickstart file, such as `http://server.example.com/kickstart/ks.cfg`. This file can be created with the Kickstart Configuration.
- Note:** Ignore the Snapshot name and Ethernet options. They are only used for diskless environments.
7. Click **OK**. This closes the dialog box and creates configuration files within:
`/tftpboot/linux-install` and `/tftpboot/linux-install/pxelinux.cfg`
 8. Go to `/tftpboot/pxelinux.cfg` and open the file `C0A8013C`. The `C0A8013C` file is created when you assign the client IP using “system-config- netboot”. This is the hexadecimal address of the IP assigned to the client NIC. It is 192.168.1.60 in the example in Figure B-4.

Enabling the PXE Client with a PXE-enabled Adapter

The PXE client must have a PXE-enabled adapter.

1. Power on the PXE client.
2. Press **<F12>** to enable network boot. Pressing **<F12>** accesses the DHCP server IP and the Boot Linux image.

```
CLIENT MAC ADDR: 00 00 C9 5B 37 6C  GUID: 44454C4C-4D00-104C-804C-B9C04F313253
CLIENT IP: 192.168.65.200  MASK: 255.255.255.0  DHCP IP: 192.168.65.100

PXELINUX 3.10 2005-08-24  Copyright (C) 1994-2005 H. Peter Anvin
UNDI data segment at:  00098D10
UNDI data segment size: 2430
UNDI code segment at:  0009B140
UNDI code segment size: 2990
PXE entry point found (we hope) at 9B14:0109
My IP address seems to be C0A841C8 192.168.65.200
ip=192.168.65.200:192.168.65.100:0.0.0.0:255.255.255.0
TFTP prefix:
Trying to load: pxelinux.cfg/01-00-00-c9-5b-37-6c
Trying to load: pxelinux.cfg/C0A841C8
Trying to load: pxelinux.cfg/C0A841C
Trying to load: pxelinux.cfg/C0A841
Trying to load: pxelinux.cfg/C0A84
Trying to load: pxelinux.cfg/C0A8
Trying to load: pxelinux.cfg/C0A
Trying to load: pxelinux.cfg/C0
Trying to load: pxelinux.cfg/C
```

Figure B-6 Enabling Network Boot

Appendix C. Example for Configuring and Booting UEFI NIC

UEFI NIC Server Configuration Script for SLES11 SPx

```
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# ls /root/sles11sp164/
SLES-11-SP1-DVD-x86_64-GM-DVD1.iso
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# mkdir test1
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# mkdir test2
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# mount -o loop
sles11sp164/SLES-11-SP1-DVD-x86_64-GM-DVD1.iso test1
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# ls test1
ARCHIVES.gz COPYING.degpg-pubkey-3d25d3d9-36e12d04.asc media.1
boot COPYRIGHT gpg-pubkey-7e2e3b05-4be037ca.asc NEWS
ChangeLog COPYRIGHT.degpg-pubkey-9c800aca-4be01999.asc pubring.gpg
content directory.yast gpg-pubkey-a1912208-446a0899.asc README
content.ascdocu gpg-pubkey-b37b98a9-4be01a1a.asc suse
content.keygpg-pubkey-0dfb3188-41ed929b.ascINDEX.gz
control.xmgpg-pubkey-1d061a62-4bd70bfa.asclicense.tar.gz
COPYING gpg-pubkey-307e3d54-4be01a65.ascsls-lR.gz
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# mount -o loop test1/boot/x86_64/efi test2
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# ls -lar test2
total 28
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 48 May 20 2010 .packages.boot-efi
drwxr-xr-x 3 root root 2048 May 20 2010 efi
drwxr-x--- 20 root root 4096 Jan 5 14:04 ..
drwxr-xr-x 3 root root 16384 Jan 1 1970 .
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# ls -lar test2/efi/boot/
bootx64.efi elilo.conf initrd linux
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# ls -lar test2/efi/boot/
total 26838
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 3231872 May 20 2010 linux
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 23999623 May 20 2010 initrd
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 512 May 20 2010 elilo.conf
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 241318 May 20 2010 bootx64.efi
drwxr-xr-x 3 root root 2048 May 20 2010 ..
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 2048 May 20 2010 .
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# cp test2/boot/efi/* /tftpboot/linux-install/
```

NFS Server Configuration Script

```
[root@bglinux156 ~]# /etc/rc.d/init.d/portmap restart
Stopping portmap: [ OK ]
Starting portmap: [ OK ]
[root@bglinux156 ~]# /etc/rc.d/init.d/nfslock restart
Stopping NFS locking: [ OK ]
Stopping NFS statd: [ OK ]
Starting NFS statd: [ OK ]
[root@bglinux156 ~]# /etc/rc.d/init.d/nfs restart
Shutting down NFS mountd: [ OK ]
Shutting down NFS daemon: [ OK ]
Shutting down NFS quotas: [ OK ]
Shutting down NFS services: [ OK ]
Starting NFS services:[ OK ]
Starting NFS quotas: [ OK ]
Starting NFS daemon: [ OK ]
Starting NFS mountd: [ OK ]
#### Check if the NFS services are running:
[root@bglinux156 ~]# rpcinfo -p
program vers proto port
100000 2 tcp 111 portmapper
100000 2 udp 111 portmapper
100021 1 udp 56782 nlockmgr
100021 3 udp 56782 nlockmgr
100021 4 udp 56782 nlockmgr
100021 1 tcp 44855 nlockmgr
100021 3 tcp 44855 nlockmgr
100021 4 tcp 44855 nlockmgr
100024 1 udp 766 status
100024 1 tcp 769 status
100011 1 udp 815 rquotad
100011 2 udp 815 rquotad
100011 1 tcp 818 rquotad
100011 2 tcp 818 rquotad
100003 2 udp 2049 nfs
100003 3 udp 2049 nfs
100003 4 udp 2049 nfs
100003 2 tcp 2049 nfs
100003 3 tcp 2049 nfs
100003 4 tcp 2049 nfs
100005 1 udp 828 mountd
```



```
100005 1 tcp 831 mountd
100005 2 udp 828 mountd
100005 2 tcp 831 mountd
100005 3 udp 828 mountd
```

DHCP Server Configuration

```
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# cat /etc/dhcpd.conf
```

1. Install the following RPMs in the server if not installed:

```
[root@bglinux156 ~]# rpm -qa | grep dhcp
dhcpv6-client-1.0.10-18.el5
dhcp-devel-3.0.5-23.el5
dhcp-3.0.5-23.el5
```

2. Make the following entry in /etc/dhcpd.conf file:

```
#
# DHCP Server Configuration file.
#      see /usr/share/doc/dhcp*/dhcpd.conf.sample
#

ddns-update-style interim;
#ignore client-updates;
subnet 192.168.47.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    range 192.168.47.50 192.168.47.100;
    default-lease-time 3600;
    max-lease-time 4800;
    option subnet-mask 255.255.255.0;
    option domain-name "pxe_test";
    option time-offset -8; # Eastern Standard Time
}

# we want the nameserver to appear at a fixed address
host orleansrhel5564 {
    next-server 192.168.47.1; #IP of the NFS Server
    hardware ethernet 00:00:c9:5b:a5:26; #mac address of
    #the client
    #machine

    fixed-address 192.168.47.60; #IP assigned to the
    #client machine
    option host-name "linux-test";
    filename "bootx64.efi"; #Used for UEFI boot
}

###This sets up a DNS server that will assign IP Address 192.168.47.60
###to the client machine that has MAC Address "00:00:c9:5b:a5:26"
###assigned to a PXE(UEFI) capable NIC
###The only thing that needs to be changed in the above, is the MAC
```

```
###Address to match that of the NIC in the client box
###The IP address that follows the next-server option should be the IP
###address of the tftp server
[root@bglinux156 ~]# service dhcpd restart
Shutting down dhcpd: [ OK ]
Starting dhcpd: [ OK ]
```

TFTP Server Setup

```
[root@orleansrhel5564 ~]# cat /etc/xinetd.d/tftp
service tftp
{
    disable = no
    socket_type = dgram
    protocol = udp
    wait= yes
    user = root
    server = /usr/sbin/in.tftpd
    server_args = -s /tftpboot/linux-install
    per_source = 11
    cps = 100 2
    flags = IPv4
```

UEFI NIC Server Configuration Script for RHEL 6.x

Setup Information

PXE client server: Dell R710 with Emulex OneConnect UCNA or Intel X520 card (Test System to do UEFI PXE boot)

PXE server: HP running RHEL 5.5 64 bit

NFS Configuration

```
[root@orleans ~]# mkdir /work
[root@orleans ~]# mount 10.192.194.110:/work /mnt ##### Mounting network drive
[root@orleans ~]# cd /mnt/
[root@orleans ~]# cp -r rhel6364/ /work/ ##### Copying rhel6.1-64 bit os to PXE
server machine
[root@orleans ~]# vim /etc/exports ##### (Add "/work *(rw, sync) "
[root@orleans ~]# exportfs -a ##### (reflect changes in NFS Server)

##### Restart NFS services
[root@orleans ~]# /etc/rc.d/init.d/portmap restart
[root@orleans ~]# /etc/rc.d/init.d/nfslock restart
[root@orleans ~]# /etc/rc.d/init.d/nfs restart
```

```
#### Check if NFS is running fine
```

```
[root@orleans ~]# rpcinfo -p
```

```

program vers proto  port
100000      2    tcp    111  portmapper
100000      2    udp    111  portmapper
100021      1    udp   56782 nlockmgr
100021      3    udp   56782 nlockmgr
100021      4    udp   56782 nlockmgr
100021      1    tcp   44855 nlockmgr
100021      3    tcp   44855 nlockmgr
100021      4    tcp   44855 nlockmgr
100024      1    udp    766  status
100024      1    tcp    769  status
100011      1    udp    815  rquotad
100011      2    udp    815  rquotad
100011      1    tcp    818  rquotad
100011      2    tcp    818  rquotad
100003      2    udp   2049  nfs
100003      3    udp   2049  nfs
100003      4    udp   2049  nfs
100003      2    tcp   2049  nfs
100003      3    tcp   2049  nfs
100003      4    tcp   2049  nfs
100005      1    udp    828  mountd
100005      1    tcp    831  mountd
100005      2    udp    828  mountd
100005      2    tcp    831  mountd
100005      3    udp    828  mountd

```

TFTP Configuration

```
[root@orleans ~]# vi /etc/xinetd.d/tftp
```

```

# default: off
# description: The tftp server serves files using the trivial file transfer \
#               protocol. The tftp protocol is often used to boot diskless \
#               workstations, download configuration files to network-aware printers, \
#               and to start the installation process for some operating systems.
service tftp
{
    disable                = no
    socket_type             = dgram
    protocol                = udp
    wait                   = yes
    user                   = root

```

```

server          = /usr/sbin/in.tftpd
server_args     = -s /tftpboot/linux-install
per_source      = 11
cps             = 100 2
flags           = IPv4
}

```

```
##### Restart TFTP service
```

```

[root@orleans ~]# service xinetd restart
Stopping xinetd:          [ OK ]
Starting xinetd:         [ OK ]
[root@orleans ~]# chkconfig tftp on

```

PXE Configuration

```

[root@orleans ~]# cd /work/rhel6364/

[root@orleans RHEL6364]# cd images/pxeboot/

[root@orleans pxeboot]# cp -r * /tftpboot/linux-install/
##### Copy vmlinuz and initrd to TFTP root directory

[root@orleans pxeboot]# mkdir -p /root/test1

[root@orleans images]# cd /work/rhel6364/images/

[root@orleans images]# mount -o loop efiboot.img /root/test1      ##### Extract
efiboot.img to get bootx64.efi and BOOTX64.conf files

[root@orleans images]# cd /root/test1

[root@orleans test1]# cd efi/boot/

[root@orleans boot]# cp -r * /tftpboot/linux-install/      ##### Copy bootx64.efi
and BOOTX64.conf to TFTP root directory

##### Editing efidefault to the following content

[root@orleans boot]# cat /tftpboot/linux-install/efideault
default=0
timeout 10
splashimage=(nd)/splash.xpm.gz
title RHEL6364
    root (nd)
    splashimage /splash.xpm.gz
    kernel /vmlinuz keymap=us lang=en_US method=nfs:192.168.1.1:/RHEL6364
ip=dhcp noipv6

```

```
initrd /initrd.im
```

Configuring DHCP

```
[root@orleans ~]# cat /etc/dhcpd.conf
#
# DHCP Server Configuration file.
#   see /usr/share/doc/dhcp*/dhcpd.conf.sample
ddns-update-style interim;
ignore client-updates;
#allow booting;
#allow bootp;
subnet 192.168.1.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    range 192.168.1.50 192.168.1.90;
    default-lease-time 3600;
    max-lease-time 4800;
    option subnet-mask 255.255.255.0;
# option router 192.168.1.1;
    option domain-name "pxe_text";
# option name-server 192.168.1.20;
    option time-offset -8;
}

host bglinux45{
    next-server 192.168.1.1;    ##### IP address of PXE server interface connected
back to back to PXE client interface
    hardware ethernet 00:00:C9:BB:C7:8F; ##### MAC address of PXE client interface
    fixed-address 192.168.1.60; ##### IP address to be assigned to PXE client
interface
    option host-name "linux-test";
    filename "bootx64.efi";
}

#### Restart DHCP service
[root@orleans ~]# service dhcpd restart
Shutting down dhcpd:                [ OK ]
Starting dhcpd:                      [ OK ]
```

Note: Reboot your system under test and boot from the PXE client interface.

Configuring the IBM HS22 Blade with e-Raptor MEZZ

To install and update the driver, follow these steps:

1. Press <F1> during the system boot and log into the System Configuration and Boot Management screen.

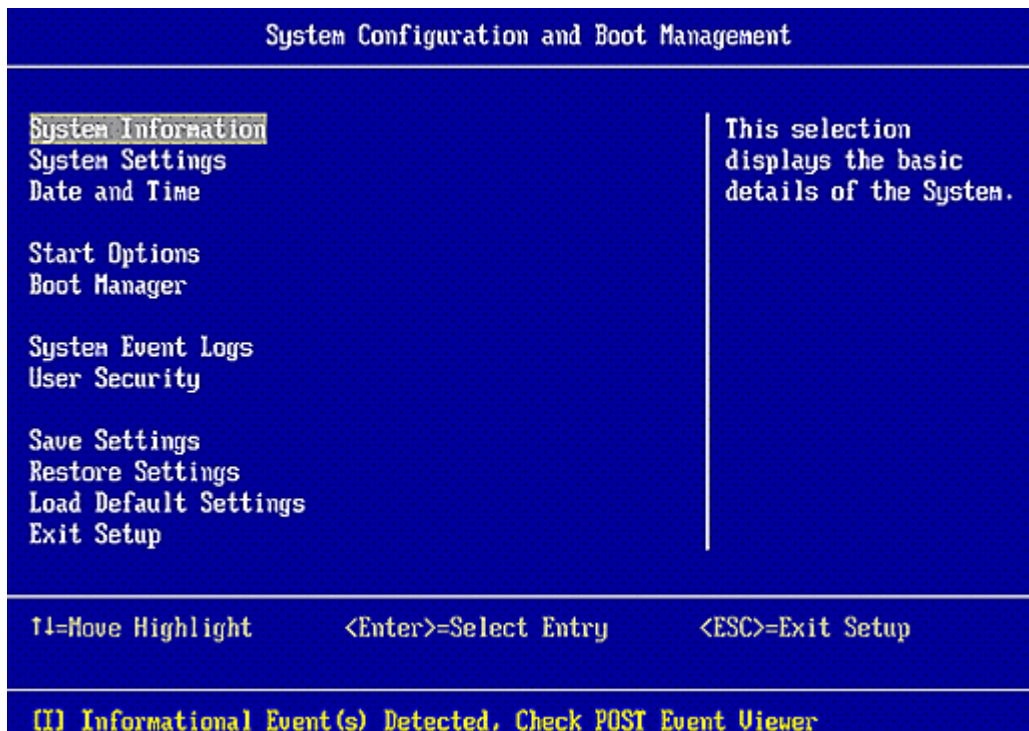


Figure C-1 System Configuration and Boot Management Screen

2. Select **Boot Manager** and press **<Enter>**. The Boot Manager screen is displayed.

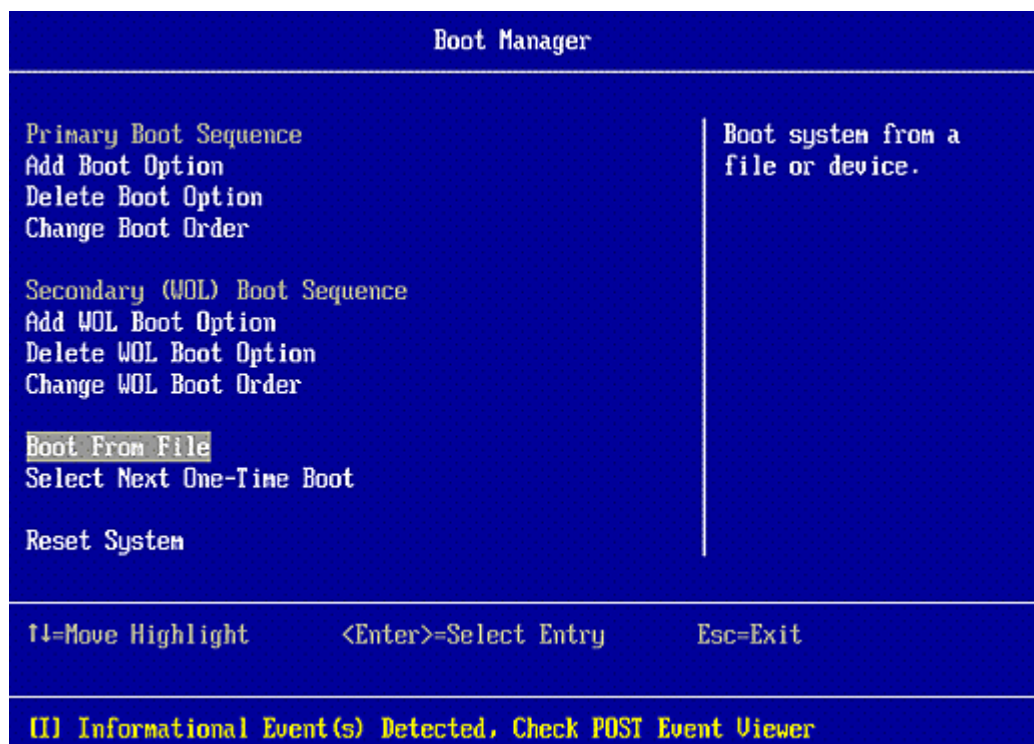


Figure C-2 Boot Manager Screen

3. Select **Boot from File** and press **<Enter>**. The File Explorer screen is displayed.

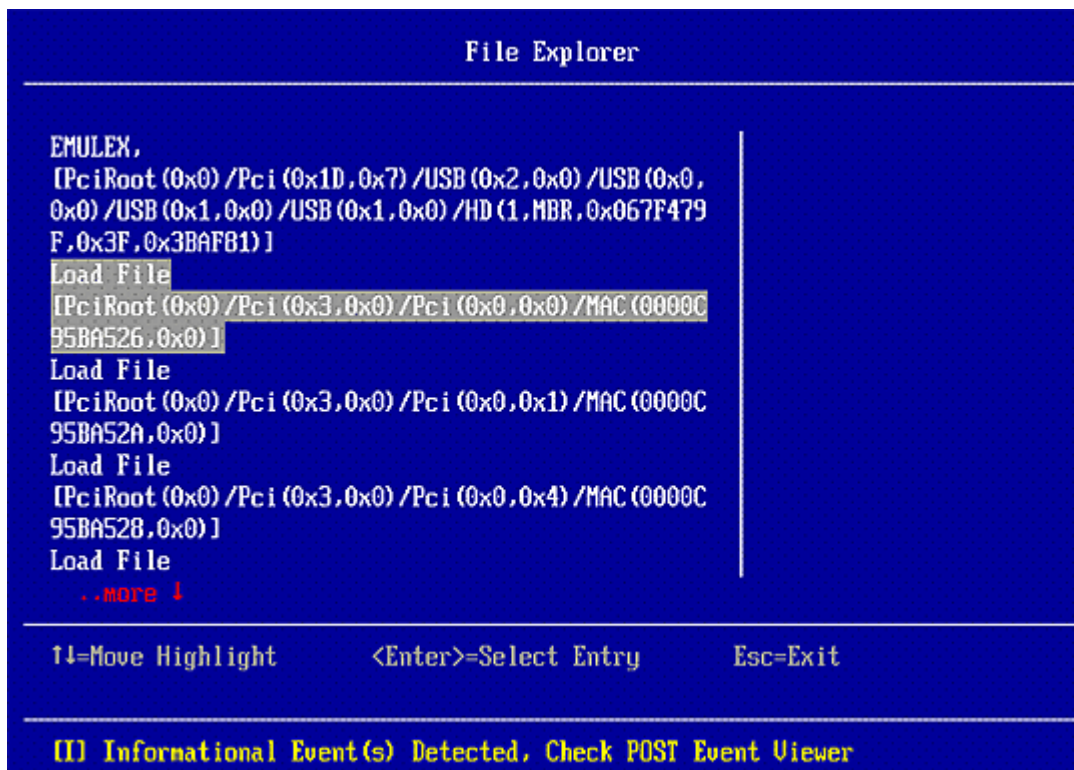


Figure C-3 File Explorer Screen

4. Select the card from which the UEFI NIC boot is to be performed. Press **<Enter>**. A message similar to the following is displayed.

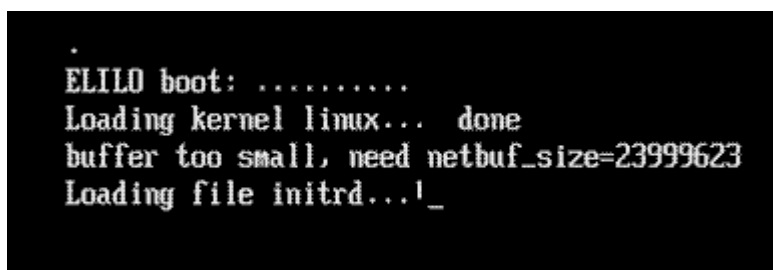


Figure C-4 ELILO Boot Message

5. The Language Selection menu is displayed. Select a language and click **OK**.



Figure C-5 Language Selection Menu

6. The Main menu is displayed. Select **Expert** and click **OK**.

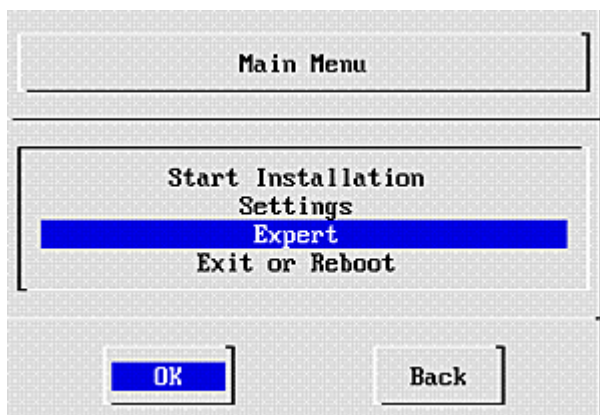


Figure C-6 Main Menu

7. The Expert menu is displayed. Select **Kernel Modules (Hardware Drivers)** and click **OK**.

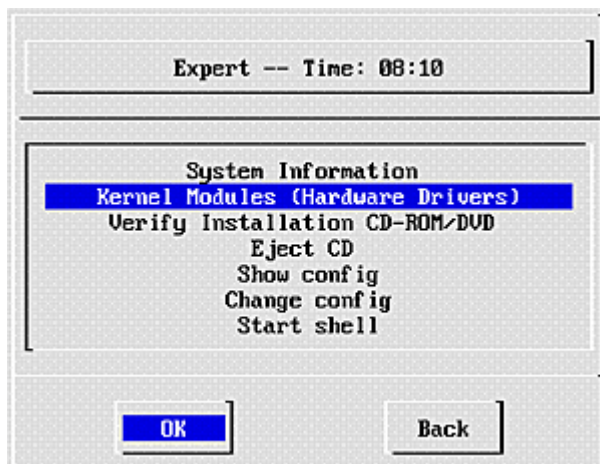


Figure C-7 Expert Menu

8. The Kernel Modules (Hardware Drivers) menu is displayed. Select **Add Driver Update** and click **OK**.

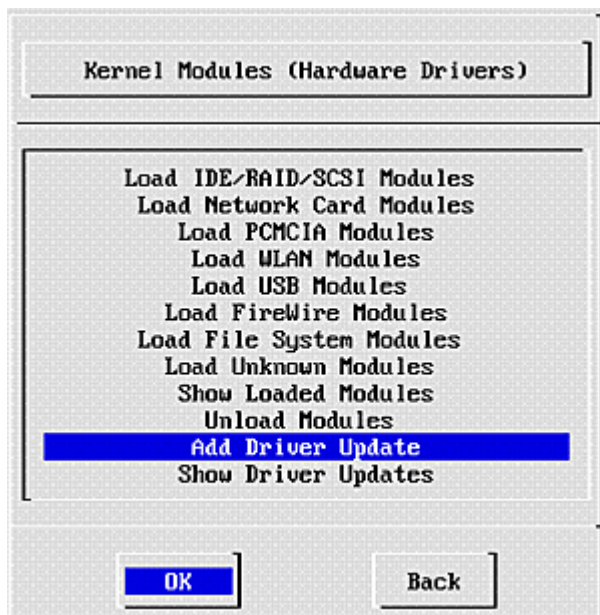


Figure C-8 Kernel Modules (Hardware Drivers) Menu

9. The Driver Update Medium Selection listing is displayed. Select a medium and click **OK**.

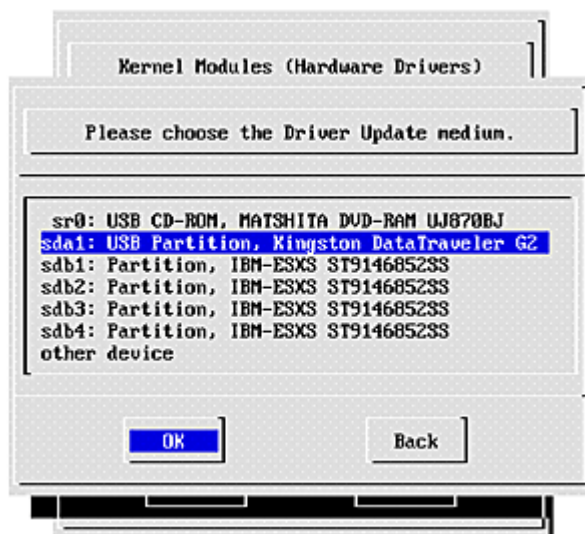


Figure C-9 Driver Update Medium Selection Listing

10. The Driver Update List confirmation dialog box is displayed. Click **OK**.



Figure C-10 Driver Update List Dialog Box

11. The Expert menu (Figure C-7) is displayed. Click **Back**.
12. The Main menu (Figure C-6) is displayed. Select **Start Installation** and click **OK**.
13. The Source Medium Selection menu is displayed. Select **Network** and click **OK**.

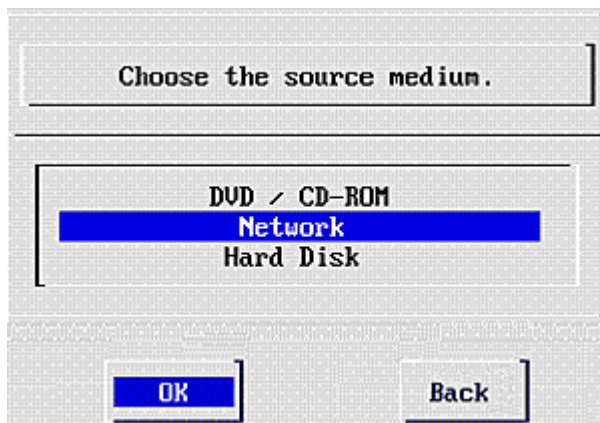


Figure C-11 Source Medium Selection Menu

14. The Network Protocol Selection menu is displayed. Select **NFS** and click **OK**.

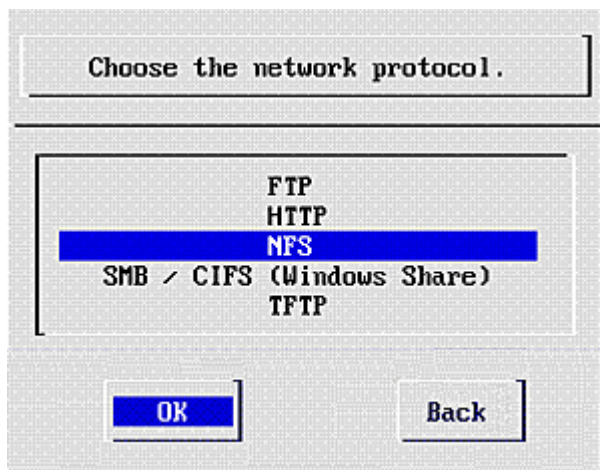


Figure C-12 Network Protocol Selection Menu

15. The Network Device Selection listing is displayed. Select the device and click **OK**.

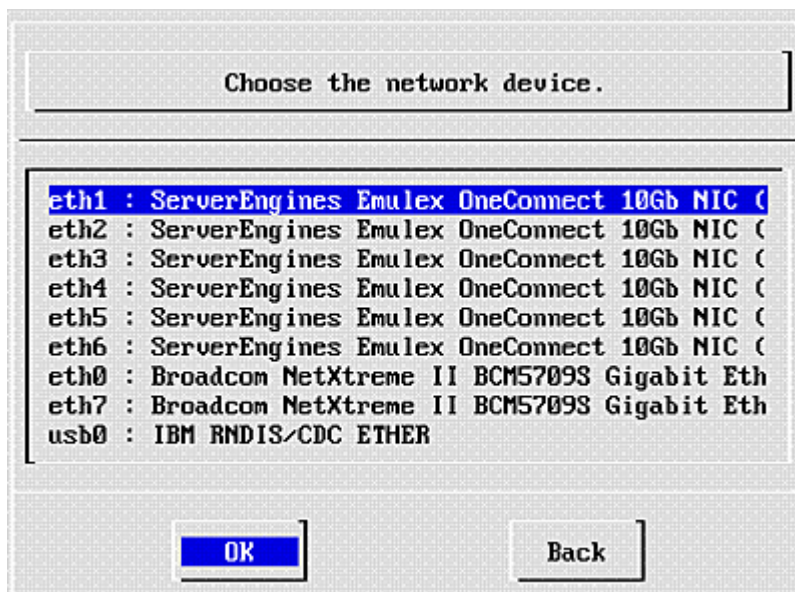


Figure C-13 Network Device Selection Listing

16. The DHCP request is sent. A dialog box prompts you to enter the IP address of the NFS server.

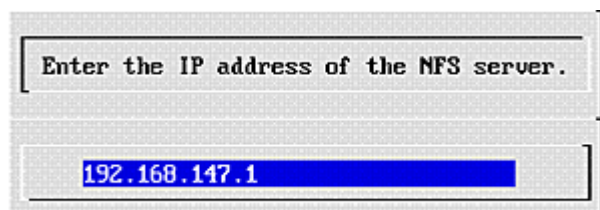


Figure C-14 NFS Server IP Address Dialog Box

17. Enter the IP address and press **<Enter>**. A dialog box prompts you to enter the directory path of the server.

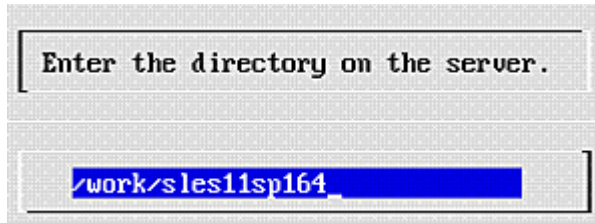


Figure C-15 Server Directory Dialog Box

18. Enter the directory path and press **<Enter>**. Information similar to the following is displayed.

```
starting syslogd (logging to /dev/tty4)... ok
starting klogd... ok
starting yast...
```

Figure C-16 Starting Script

```
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 Installation

- there are shells running on consoles 2, 5, 6, 9
- use 'extend' to load extensions (remove with 'extend -r'); extensions are:
  o bind, gdb, sax2
- network setup: run, e.g. 'dhcpcd eth0'
- sshd: run 'rcsshd start' (don't forget to set a password with 'passwd')

/ # modinfo be2net
filename:      /lib/modules/2.6.32.12-0.7-default/initrd/be2net.ko
supported:    external
license:      GPL
author:       ServerEngines Corporation
description:  ServerEngines BladeEngine 10Gbps NIC Driver 2.103.358.0
version:      2.103.358.0
srcversion:    7382DCFE6EFA5CA10009192
alias:        pci:v000019A2d000000710su*sd*bc*sc*i*
alias:        pci:v000019A2d000000700su*sd*bc*sc*i*
alias:        pci:v000019A2d000000221su*sd*bc*sc*i*
alias:        pci:v000019A2d000000211su*sd*bc*sc*i*
depends:
supported:    yes
vermagic:     2.6.32.12-0.7-default SMP mod_unload modversions
parm:         rx_frag_size:Size of receive fragment buffer - 2048 (default), 4096 or 8192
parm:         num_vfs:Number of PCI VFs to initialize (max 16) (uint)
parm:         msix:Enable and disable the MSIx (By default MSIx is enabled) (uint)
parm:         multi_rxq:Multi Rx Queue support. Enabled by default (uint)
/ #
```

Figure C-17 Driver Update Confirmation

Appendix D. Example for Installing and Booting UEFI FCoE

The following steps use the Linux SLES operating system as an example.

1. Boot to UEFI linux from DVD.
2. Select UEFI boot from the BIOS boot manager or boot to shell and execute `/efi/boot/elilo.efi` from removable media.
3. Follow normal boot instructions from YaST.
4. During the Installation Settings, select **Partitioning**, then select **Custom partitioning (for experts)**.
5. In **SystemViews**, select a hard disk.
6. Select the **Partitions** tab.
7. Delete any old partitions on the disk.
8. To create a GPT disklabel (UEFI does not support booting from disks with an MS-DOS partition table), click **Expert** (above the Accept button).
9. Create a partition table and check GPT (required for UEFI boot).

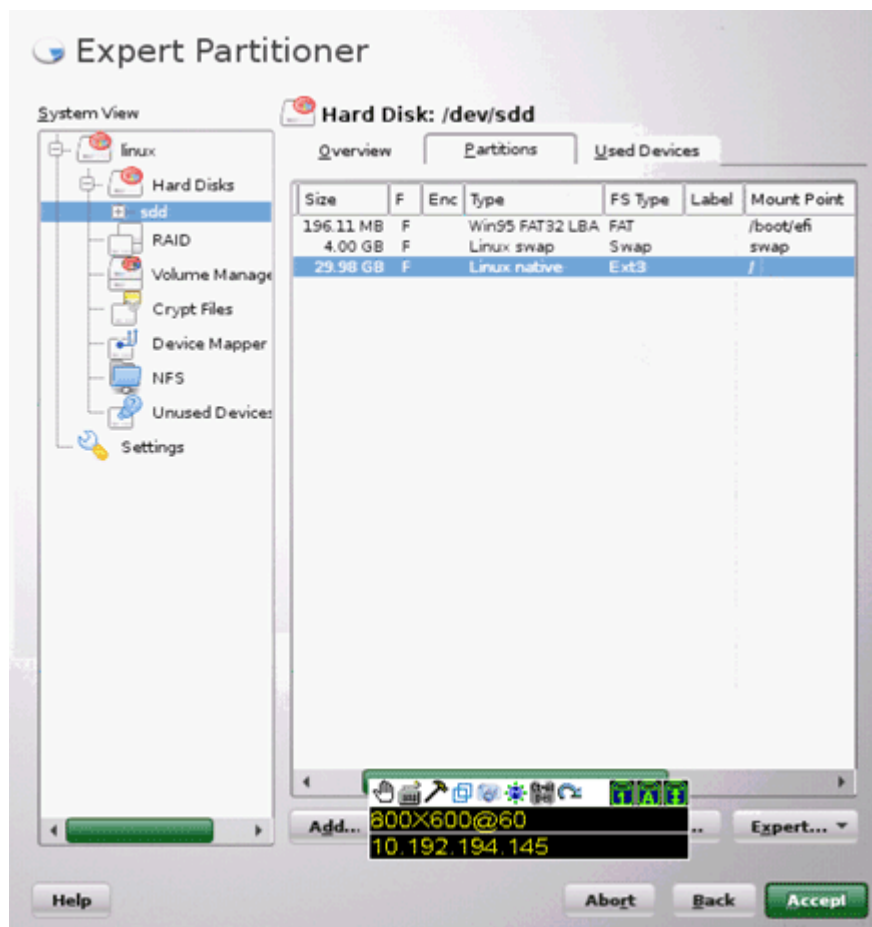


Figure D-1 Partitions Tab

10. To add an UEFI system partition (VFAT or FAT), click **Add**.
11. Select a custom size (100-400MB) depending on what EFI driver and utilities you want to store on the UEFI system partition. In general, using 200 MB is sufficient if the plug-in card detail for UEFI system partition is unknown.
12. In the Formatting options dialog box, select **Format Partition > File system > FAT**.
13. Under Mounting options, select **/boot/efi** and click **Finish**. The boot drive now has a GPT disk label that contains a FAT EFI boot partition.
14. Perform the remainder of the partitioning as with any Linux installation. The remainder of the installation is not unique to UEFI, for example, add a swap partition and an EXT3 partition for root.
15. Once the installation is completed, view the partitions using the `parted -l` command. Information similar to the following is displayed:

```
/ # parted -l
Model : SEAGATE ST336754FC (scsi)
Disk /dev/sdd: 36.7GB
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B
Partition Table: gpt
Number Start      End          Size         File system Name      Flags
1          17.4kB      206MB        206MB        fat16                  primary , , , , , , , , , ,
nsftres
2          206MB      4499MB       4294MB       linux-swap             primary , , , , , , , , , ,
3          4499MB      31.36GB      26.8GB       ext3                   primary , , , , , , , , , ,
```

16. When the system boots, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP1 now shows in the system Start Options screen.

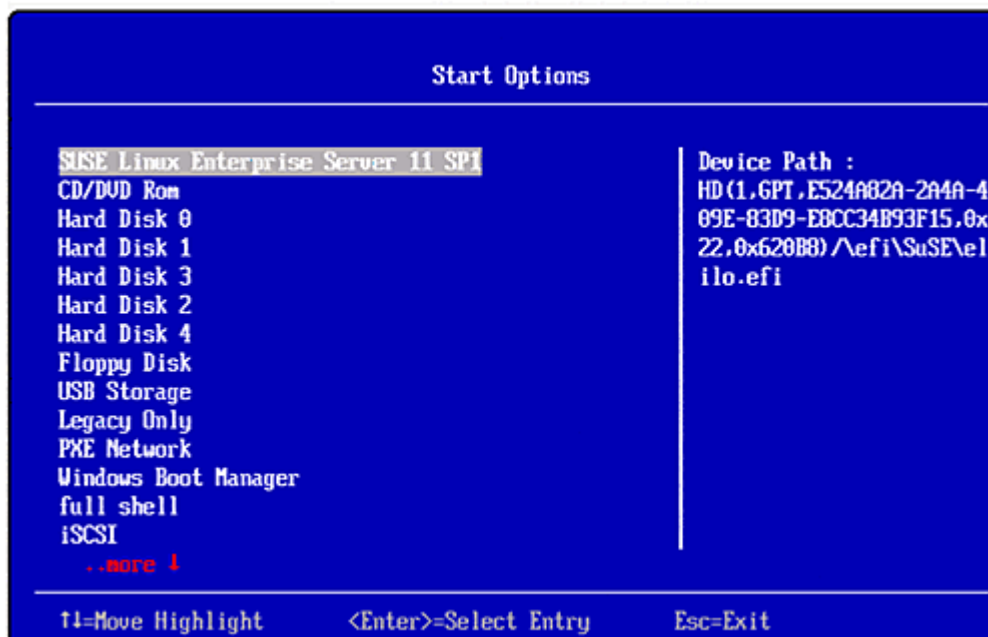


Figure D-2 UEFI FCoE Start Options

Appendix E. Loading and Unloading UEFIBoot from the UEFI Shell

Loading UEFIBoot from the UEFI Shell

The UEFI boot code is distributed with the firmware in a .UFI file. This file may be downloaded to a NIC, iSCSI, or FCoE adapter through the HII interface in the NIC UEFI code.

Unloading UEFIBoot from the UEFI Shell

To unload UEFIBoot:

1. View Emulex driver handle information by typing “drivers” and pressing <Enter> at the shell prompt. A list of drivers is displayed.

```

E1 0000000A B - - 2 3 Partition Driver (MBR/GPT/El Torito) FvFile(43B93232-AF
E2 0000000A B - - 1 4B PCI Bus Driver FvFile(93B80004-9F
E7 0000000A D - - 1 - SCSI Bus Driver FvFile(0167CCC4-D0
E8 0000000A ? - - - - Scsi Disk Driver FvFile(0A66E322-37
EF 00000001 D - - 1 - Vitesse USC452 SIO Driver FvFile(BBA81468-FF
F1 0000000A D - - 4 - Simple Network Protocol Driver FvFile(A2F436EA-A1
F2 0000000A D - - 16 - UEFI PXE Base Code Driver FvFile(3B1DEAB5-C7
F4 0000000A D - - 4 - PXE DHCPv4 Driver FvFile(A46C3330-BE
F5 0000000A B - - 4 12 MNP Network Service Driver FvFile(025BBFC7-E6
F6 0000000A B - - 4 2B IP4 Network Service Driver FvFile(9FB1A1F3-3B
F7 0000000A B - - 4 4 DHCP Protocol Driver FvFile(94734718-0B
F8 0000000A D - - 4 - IP4 CONFIG Network Service Driver FvFile(26841BDE-92
F9 0000000A D - - 4 - Tcp Network Service Driver FvFile(6D6963AB-90
FA 0000000A B - - 24 20 UDP Network Service Driver FvFile(6D6963AB-90
FB 0000000A D - - 4 - ARP Network Service Driver FvFile(529D3F93-E8
FC 0000000A B - - 8 4 MTFTP4 Network Service FvFile(DC3641B8-2F
FD 0000000A ? - - - - UEFI PXE Configuration Driver FvFile(0C086DB5-AA
11C 00050212 B X X 1 1 Broadcom Gigabit Ethernet Driver Offset(12000,231FF
11E 00050212 B X X 1 1 Broadcom Gigabit Ethernet Driver Offset(12000,231FF
122 000221A5 B - X 2 2 Emulex 10G NIC Offset(8000,169FF)
126 000100AF D - - 2 - Emulex iSCSI Boot Driver Offset(10000,1A5FF)
143 030A0001 D X X 1 - LSI Logic Fusion MPT SAS Driver Offset(B200,247FF)
147 00000019 ? - - - - G200eU Matrox Graphics UEFI Driver Offset(8000,D1FF)

```

Figure E-1 Driver Listing

2. Write down the Emulex NIC, FCoE or iSCSI driver handles. For the above case, the Emulex NIC driver handle is 122 and the Emulex iSCSI driver handle is 126.
3. To unload the Emulex NIC driver in the previous example, type “unload 122” and press <Enter>.
4. To unload the Emulex iSCSI driver in the previous example, type “unload 126” and press <Enter>.

Appendix F. Dell UEFI

The following sections define and describe the fields and configuration settings for Dell adapters using the Dell UEFI utility.

The Dell UEFI adapter configuration utility is a unified configuration utility that enables you to configure all of the available protocols through a single GUI interface, unlike individual configuration utilities. The iSCSI and FCoE configuration can be configured using these menus even when those functions are not physically present. The configuration will be applied once those respective functions are enabled.

Accessing the Main Configuration Page

From the System Setup > Device Settings page, select the adapter that you want to view.

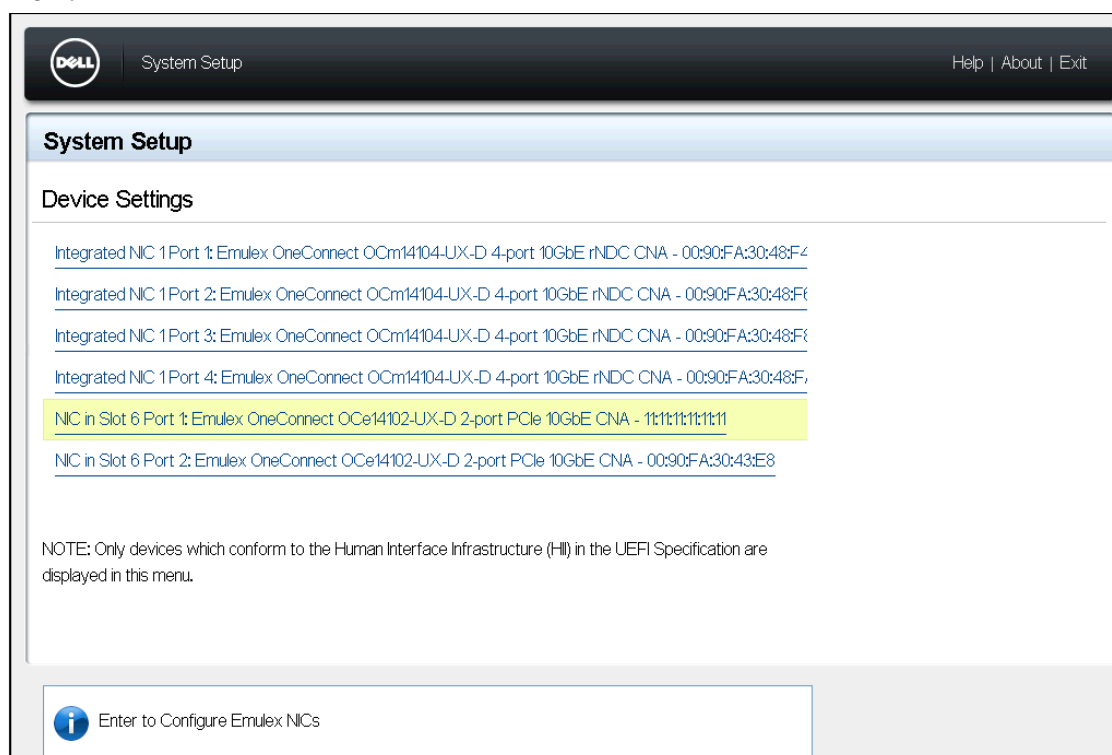


Figure F-1 Device Settings Page

The Main Configuration page for that adapter is displayed.

Main Configuration Page

This page displays device information and enables you to configure device parameters.

Integrated NIC 1 Port 1: Emulex OneConnect OCm14104-UX-D 4-port 10GbE rNDC CNA - 00:90:FA:30:

Main Configuration Page

[Firmware Image Properties](#)

[Fibre Channel Over Ethernet \(FCoE\) Capabilities](#)

[Data Center Bridge \(DCB\) Settings](#)

[FCoE Configuration](#)

[NIC Configuration](#)

[iSCSI Configuration](#)

[Device Level Configuration](#)

[NIC Partitioning Configuration](#)

Virtualization Mode: ☐ None ☒ NPar ☐ SR-IOV

NIC Mode: ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled


 View device firmware version information.

Figure F-2 Main Configuration Page

Table F-1 Main Configuration Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Firmware Image Properties	View adapter firmware version information. See "Firmware Image Properties Page" on page 229 for more information.
Fibre Channel Over Ethernet (FCoE) Capabilities	View information on all FCoE capabilities. See "FCoE Capabilities Page" on page 230 for more information.
Data Center Bridge (DCB) Settings	View available DCB settings for the adapter and configure available adapter settings. See "Data Center Bridge (DCB) Settings Page" on page 231 for more information.
FCoE Configuration	Configure FCoE boot parameters. See "FCoE Configuration Page" on page 232 for more information.
NIC Configuration	Configure boot protocol, Wake on LAN, link speed, and VLAN. See "NIC Configuration Page" on page 235 for more information.
iSCSI Configuration	Configure general, initiator, and target parameters for iSCSI boot. See "iSCSI Configuration Page" on page 237 for more information.
Device Level Configuration	View and configure global device level parameters. See "Device Level Configuration Page" on page 245 for more information.
NIC Partitioning Configuration	Configure functionality of NIC partitions and view assigned addresses. See "NIC Partitioning Configuration Page" on page 246 for more information.

Table F-1 Main Configuration Page Menu Options (Continued)

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Virtualization Mode	Specify the virtualization mode setting of the adapter. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None (default) • NPar • SR-IOV Note: Some menu options are not available when the Virtualization Mode is set to "None".
NIC Mode	Always enabled.
Blink LEDs	Identify the physical port by blinking the port LED for up to 15 seconds. Available settings are 0-15 seconds (default).
Device Name	The name of the adapter.
Chip Type	The name and revision of the chip.
PCI Device ID	The PCI device ID of the port.
BusDeviceFunction	The PCIe Bus:Device:Function ID assigned by the BIOS.
Link Status	The network link status reported by the adapter.
World Wide Node Name	The FC World Wide Node Name ID for FCoE. A maximum of 23 characters is supported. A colon separator (:) must be used between every two characters.
Virtual World Wide Node Name	Specify the FC World Wide Node Name ID for FCoE. A maximum of 23 characters is supported. A colon separator (:) must be used between every two characters.
World Wide Port Name	The FC World Wide Port Name ID for FCoE. A maximum of 23 characters is supported. A colon separator (:) must be used between every two characters.
Virtual World Wide Port Name	Specify the FC World Wide Port Name ID for FCoE. A maximum of 23 characters is supported. A colon separator (:) must be used between every two characters.

Firmware Image Properties Page

This page displays adapter firmware version information.

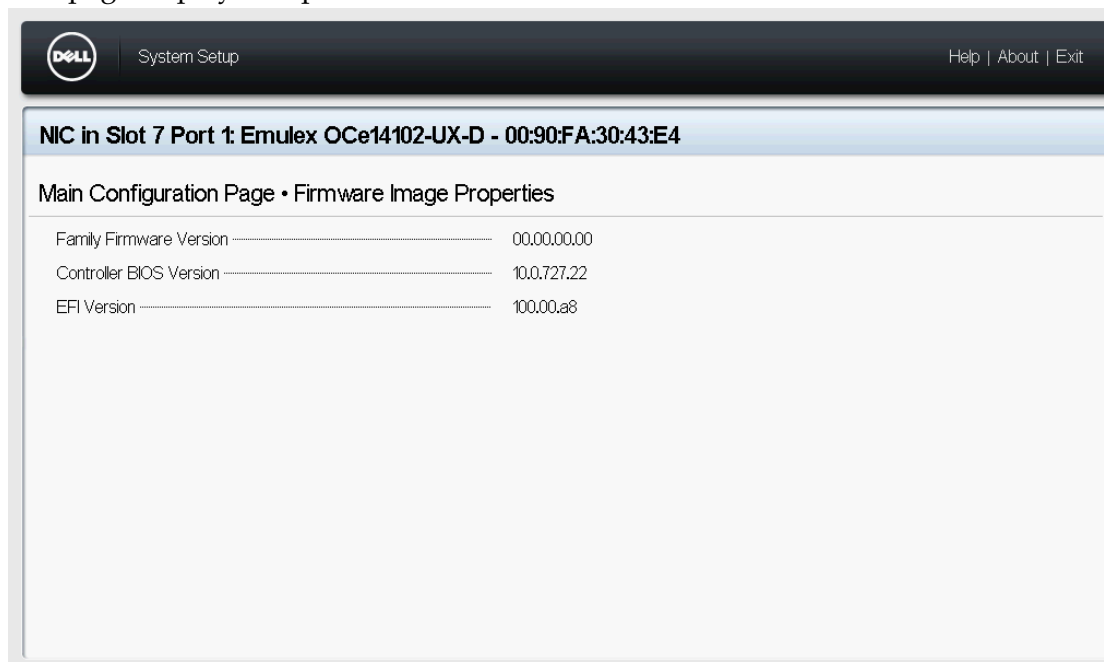


Figure F-3 Firmware Image Properties Page

Table F-2 Firmware Image Properties Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Family Firmware Version	Firmware version information for the installed adapter.
Controller BIOS Version	BIOS version information for the installed adapter.
EFI Version	EFI driver version information for the installed adapter.

FCoE Capabilities Page

This page displays information on all FCoE capabilities.



Figure F-4 FCoE Capabilities Page

Table F-3 FCoE Capabilities Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Maximum Number of FC Targets Supported	Indicate the maximum number of FC targets supported.
MTU Reconfiguration Support	Indicate whether or not the MTU Reconfiguration capability is supported.
FCoE Addressing Mode	Control whether SPMA or FPMA addressing is used for FCoE transactions.
Maximum Frame Size	Indicate the maximum frame size for each FCoE frame.
Maximum IOs per Session Supported	Indicate the maximum number of I/Os supported per session.
Maximum Number of LOGINs per Port	Indicate the maximum number of logins supported per port.
Maximum Number of Exchanges	Indicate the maximum number of exchanges supported.
Maximum NPIV WWN per Port	Indicate the maximum number of NPIV WWN per port.
Maximum Number of Outstanding Commands	Indicate the maximum number of outstanding commands supported across all sessions.

Data Center Bridge (DCB) Settings Page

This page displays available DCB settings for the adapter and allows you to configure available adapter settings.

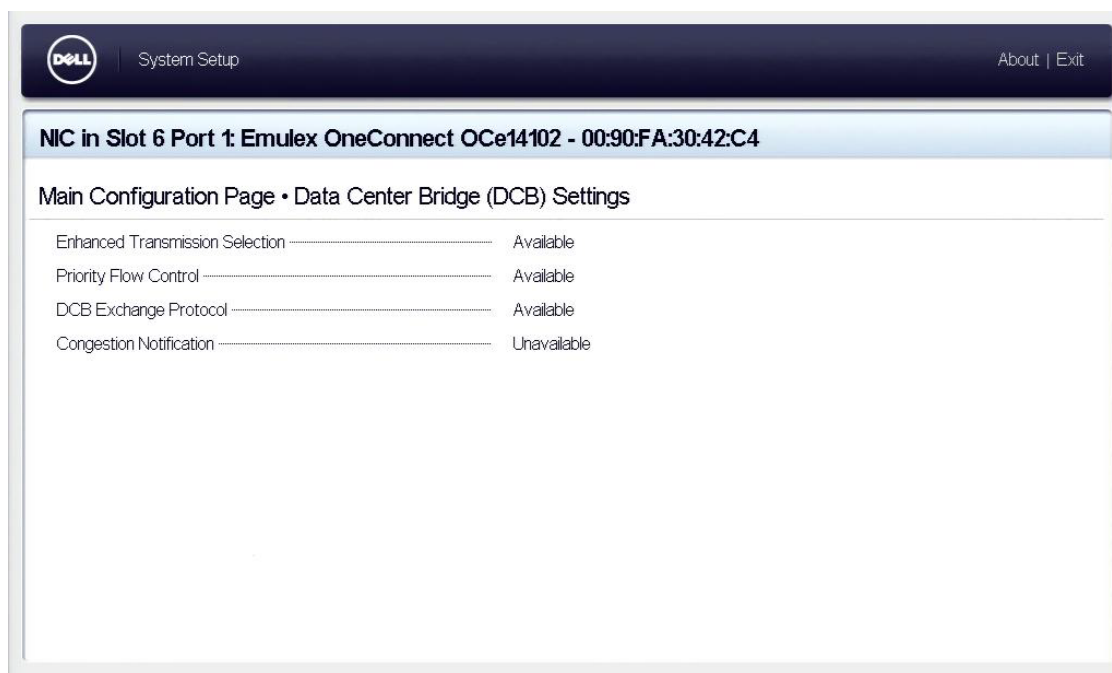


Figure F-5 Data Center Bridge (DCB) Settings Page

Table F-4 DCB Settings Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Enhanced Transmission Selection	Indicate whether or not the Enhanced Transmission Selection capability is supported.
Priority Flow Control	Indicate whether or not the Priority Flow Control capability is supported.
DCB Exchange Protocol	Indicate whether or not the DCB Exchange Protocol capability is supported.
Congestion Notification	Indicate whether or not the Congestion Notification capability is supported.

FCoE Configuration Page

This page allows you to configure FCoE boot parameters.

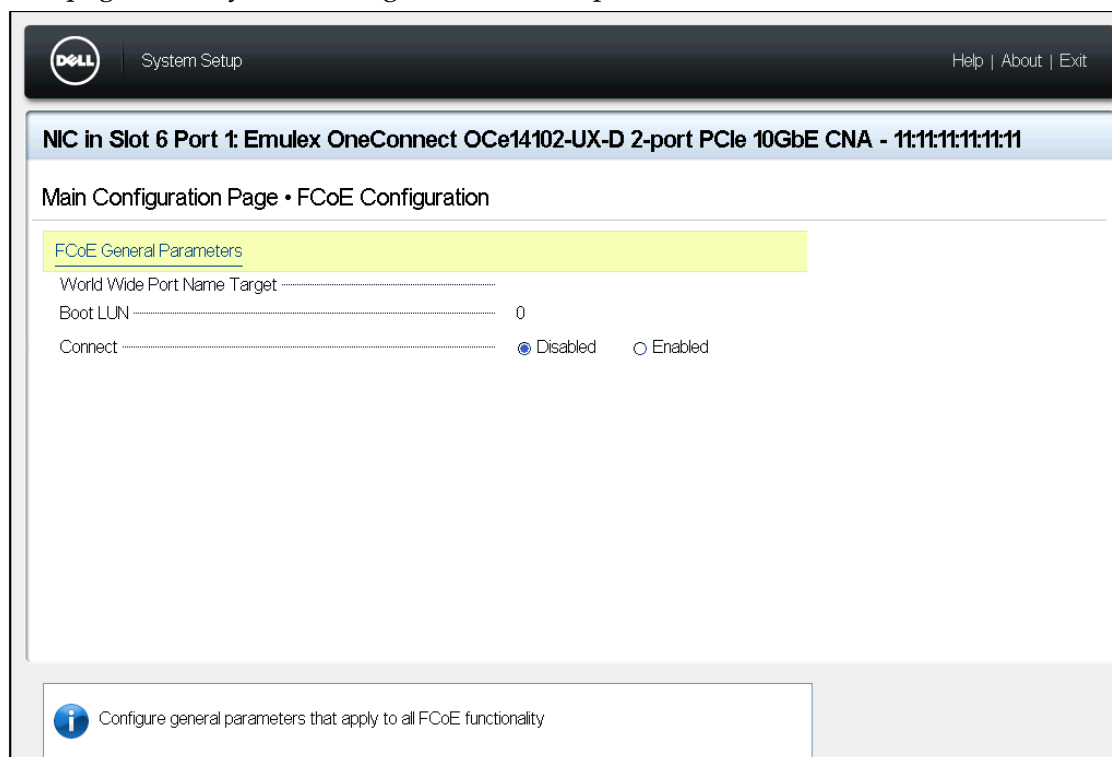


Figure F-6 FCoE Configuration Page

Table F-5 FCoE Configuration Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
FCoE General Parameters	Configure FCoE general parameters. See "FCoE General Parameters Page" on page 233 for more information.
World Wide Port Name Target	Specify the first FCoE storage target's WWPN. A maximum of 23 characters is supported. A colon separator (:) must be used between every two characters.
Boot LUN	Specify the first FCoE storage target's LUN that will be used by the FCoE initiator as the system boot device. The valid range is 0-18446744073709551615.
Connect	Specify whether the FCoE initiator should connect to the first FCoE storage target defined. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled Disabled (default)

FCoE General Parameters Page

This page allows you to configure FCoE general parameters.

NIC in Slot 6 Port 1: Emulex OneConnect OCe14102-UX-D 2-port PCIe 10GbE CNA - 11:11:11:11:11:11

Main Configuration Page • FCoE Configuration • FCoE General Parameters

Link Up Delay Time

LUN Busy Retry Count

Fabric Discovery Retry Count

Boot Scan Selection ☒ Disabled ☐ Specified LUN

Specifies how long the FCoE Initiator waits after an Ethernet link is established before sending any data over the network. Units are in seconds

Figure F-7 FCoE General Parameters Page

Table F-6 FCoE General Parameters Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Link Up Delay Time	Specify how long (in seconds) the FCoE Initiator waits after an Ethernet link is established before sending any data over the network. The valid range is 0-255 seconds.
LUN Busy Retry Count	Specify the number of connection retries the FCoE boot initiator attempts if the FCoE target LUN is busy. The valid range is 0-60.
Fabric Discovery Retry Count	Specify the retry count for FCoE fabric discovery. The valid range is 0-60.

Table F-6 FCoE General Parameters Page Menu Options (Continued)

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Boot Scan Selection	<p>Specify the adapter's initiator behavior for booting the system from specified FC boot target(s) or fabric discovered target(s).</p> <p>Available settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disabled (default) - Initiator does not attempt to boot. • First LUN - Attempt boot from the first bootable LUN of the targets discovered by adapter. • First LUN 0 - Attempt boot from the first bootable LUN 0 of the targets discovered by adapter. • First LUN Not LUN 0 - Attempt boot from the first bootable LUN that is not LUN 0 of the targets discovered by adapter. • Fabric Discovered LUN - Attempt boot based on the LUN assignment provided by the fabric's management infrastructure. • Specified LUN - Initiator attempts to boot to the specified World Wide Port Name and LUN for the first target. If that fails, a boot using the second target parameters is attempted.

NIC Configuration Page

This page allows you to configure the boot protocol, Wake on LAN, link speed, and VLAN.

Integrated NIC 1 Port 1: Emulex OneConnect OCm14104-UX-D 4-port 10GbE rNDC CNA - 00:90:FA:30:4

Main Configuration Page • NIC Configuration

Legacy Boot Protocol	<input type="radio"/> PXE <input checked="" type="radio"/> None
Wake On LAN	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled
Virtual LAN Mode	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled
Virtual LAN ID	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Link Speed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto Negotiated <input type="radio"/> 1 Gbps <input type="radio"/> 10 Gbps
Option ROM	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled
Hide Setup Prompt	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled
Boot Retry Count	<input type="text" value="No Retry"/>
Boot Strap Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto Detect
Banner Message Timeout	<input type="text" value="8"/>


 Select a non-UEFI network boot protocol.

Figure F-8 NIC Configuration Page

Table F-7 NIC Configuration Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Legacy Boot Protocol	Select a non-UEFI network boot protocol. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> PXE iSCSI FCoE None (default)
Wake On LAN	Enable or disable Wake On LAN. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled (default) Disabled
Virtual LAN Mode	Enable or disable virtual LAN mode. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled Disabled (default)
Virtual LAN ID	Specify the ID for VLAN Mode. The VLAN ID's valid range is 0-4095.

Table F-7 NIC Configuration Page Menu Options (Continued)

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Link Speed	Specify the port speed used for the selected protocol. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto Negotiated (default) • 1 Gbps • 10 Gbps
Option ROM	Enable or disable legacy boot protocols in the Option ROM. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled • Disabled (default)
Hide Setup Prompt	Enable or disable the option ROM setup prompt (banner) during power on self test (POST). Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled • Disabled (default)
Boot Retry Count	Control the number of retries in case of boot failure. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No Retry (default) • 1 Retry • 2 Retries • 3 Retries • 4 Retries • 5 Retries • 6 Retries • Indefinite Retries
Boot Strap Type	Control the boot strap method used to boot to the operating system. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto Detect (default)
Banner Message Timeout	Control the number of seconds that the Option ROM banner is displayed during POST. The valid range is 0-14. The default value is 8.

iSCSI Configuration Page

This page allows you to configure general, initiator, and target parameters for iSCSI boot.

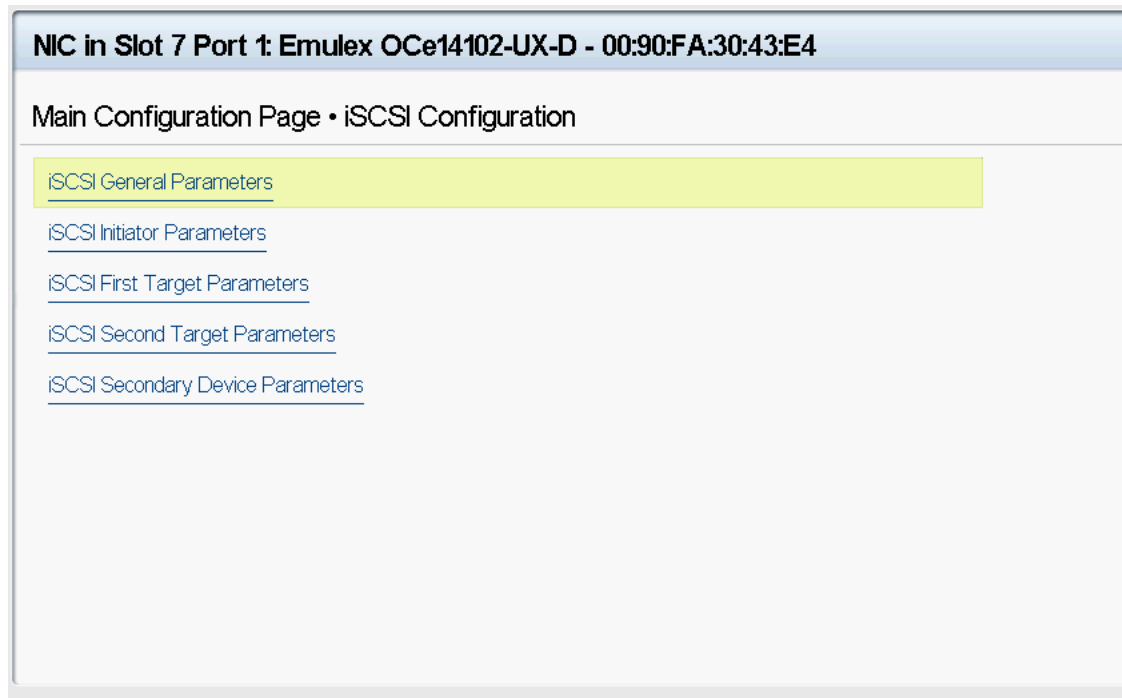


Figure F-9 iSCSI Configuration Page

Table F-8 iSCSI Configuration Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
iSCSI General Parameters	Configure general iSCSI parameters. See “iSCSI General Parameters Page” on page 238 for more information.
iSCSI Initiator Parameters	Configures iSCSI initiator parameters. See “iSCSI Initiator Parameters Page” on page 240 for more information.
iSCSI First Target Parameters	Enable connection and configure parameters for the first iSCSI target. See “iSCSI First Target Parameters Page” on page 241 for more information.
iSCSI Second Target Parameters	Enable connection and configure parameters for the second iSCSI target. See “iSCSI Second Target Parameters Page” on page 243 for more information.
iSCSI Secondary Device Parameters	Configures the iSCSI secondary boot device parameters. See “iSCSI Secondary Device Parameters Page” on page 244 for more information.

iSCSI General Parameters Page

This page allows you to configure the general iSCSI parameters.

NIC in Slot 7 Port 1: Emulex OCe14102-UX-D - 00:90:FA:30:43:E4

Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI General Parameters

TCP/IP Parameters via DHCP	<input type="radio"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled
IP Auto-Configuration	<input type="radio"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled
iSCSI Parameters via DHCP	<input type="radio"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled
CHAP Authentication	<input type="radio"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled
CHAP Mutual Authentication	<input type="radio"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled
IP Version	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IPv4	<input type="radio"/> IPv6 <input type="radio"/> None
Boot to Target	<input type="radio"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled
Virtual LAN Mode	<input type="radio"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled
Virtual LAN ID	<input type="text" value="1"/>	

Figure F-10 iSCSI General Parameters Page

Table F-9 iSCSI General Parameters Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
TCP/IP Parameters via DHCP	Control the source of the initiator IP address: DHCP or static assignment. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled Disabled (default) Note: This option is specific to IPv4.
IP Auto-Configuration	Control the source of the initiator IP address: DHCP or static assignment. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled Disabled (default) Note: This option is specific to IPv6.
iSCSI Parameters via DHCP	Enable the acquisition of iSCSI target parameters from DHCP. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled Disabled (default)

Table F-9 iSCSI General Parameters Page Menu Options (Continued)

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
CHAP Authentication	<p>Enable the ability of the initiator to use CHAP authentication when connecting to the iSCSI target.</p> <p>Available settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled • Disabled (default)
CHAP Mutual Authentication	<p>Setting to enable mutual CHAP authentication between the iSCSI initiator and target.</p> <p>To use mutual CHAP authentication, specify an initiator secret on the Initiator Parameters page and configure that secret on the target.</p> <p>Available settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled • Disabled (default)
IP Version	<p>Control whether IPv4 or IPv6 network addressing is used for the iSCSI initiator.</p> <p>Available settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IPv4 • IPv6 • None (default) - Dual mode
Boot to Target	<p>Control whether the iSCSI initiator boots to the specified iSCSI target after connection.</p> <p>Note: This is only applicable to UEFI iSCSI boot.</p> <p>Available settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled • Disabled (default)
Virtual LAN Mode	<p>Enable or disable iSCSI Virtual LAN mode, which allows a VLAN tag to be used by iSCSI boot.</p> <p>Available settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled • Disabled (default)
Virtual LAN ID	<p>Specify the ID (tag) to be used for iSCSI VLAN Mode. The valid range for the VLAN ID is from 0 to 4095.</p>

iSCSI Initiator Parameters Page

This page allows you to configure the iSCSI initiator parameters.

Integrated NIC 1 Port 1: Emulex OneConnect OCm14104-UX-D 4-port 10GbE rNDC CNA - 00:90:FA:30:

Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI Initiator Parameters

IP Address	0.0.0.0
IPv4 Address	172.40.46.101
IPv6 Address	fd00::1
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Subnet Mask Prefix	::
Default Gateway	0.0.0.0
IPv4 Default Gateway	0.0.0.0
IPv6 Default Gateway	::
iSCSI Name	iqn.1990-07.com.emulex:00-90-fa-30-48-f5
CHAP ID	


 Specifies the initiator iSCSI Qualified Name (IQN).

Figure F-11 iSCSI Initiator Parameters Page

Table F-10 iSCSI Initiator Parameters Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
IP Address	Specify the iSCSI initiator's IP address. The value should be in either IPv4 or IPv6 format and can be 2-39 characters long.
IPv4 Address	Specify the iSCSI initiator's IPv4 address. The value must be in IPv4 format and can be 7-15 characters long.
IPv6 Address	Specify the iSCSI initiator's IPv6 address. The value must be in IPv6 format and can be 2-39 characters long.
Subnet Mask	Specify the iSCSI initiator's IPv4 subnet mask. The value must be in IPv4 format and can be 7-15 characters long.
Subnet Mask Prefix	Specify the iSCSI initiator's IPv6 subnet mask. The value must be in IPv6 format and can be 2-39 characters long.
Default Gateway	Specify the iSCSI initiator's default gateway. The value should be in either IPv4 or IPv6 format and can be 2-39 characters long.
IPv4 Default Gateway	Specify the iSCSI initiator's IPv4 default gateway. The value must be in IPv4 format and can be 7-15 characters long.
IPv6 Default Gateway	Specify the iSCSI initiator's IPv6 default gateway. The value must be in IPv6 format and can be 2-39 characters long.
iSCSI Name	Specify the initiator iSCSI Qualified Name (IQN). The valid range is 0-223 characters.

Table F-10 iSCSI Initiator Parameters Page Menu Options (Continued)

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
CHAP ID	Specify the initiator CHAP ID. The valid range is 0-128 characters in length. If this can be set on a per target basis, then the first target value must be stored here.
CHAP Secret	Specify the iSCSI initiator's CHAP Secret. The valid range is 0 or 12-16 characters in length. If this can be set on a per target basis, the value for the first target must be stored here.

iSCSI First Target Parameters Page

This page allows you to enable a connection for the first iSCSI target and configure parameters.

Integrated NIC 1 Port 1: Emulex OneConnect OCm14104-UX-D 4-port 10GbE rNDC CNA - 00:90:FA:30:4

Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI First Target Parameters

Connect ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

IP Address

TCP Port

Boot LUN

iSCSI Name

CHAP ID

CHAP Secret

IP Version ☒ IPv4 ☐ IPv6


 Specifies the IP address of the first iSCSI target.

Figure F-12 iSCSI First Target Parameters Page

Table F-11 iSCSI First Target Parameters Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Connect	Enable connecting to the first iSCSI target. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled Disabled (default)
IP Address	Specify the first target's IP address. The value should be in either IPv4 or IPv6 format and can be 2-39 characters long.
TCP Port	Specify the first target's TCP port number. The valid range is 1-65535.

Table F-11 iSCSI First Target Parameters Page Menu Options (Continued)

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Boot LUN	Specify the first iSCSI storage target's boot LUN. The valid range is 0-18446744073709551615.
iSCSI Name	Specify the first iSCSI storage target's initiator IQN. The valid range is 0-223 characters.
CHAP ID	Specify the first iSCSI storage target's CHAP ID. The valid range is 0-128 characters in length. If only a single value of the CHAP ID is supported, then it is stored here.
CHAP Secret	Specify the first iSCSI storage target's CHAP Secret. The valid range is 0 or 12-16 characters in length. If only a single value of the CHAP Secret is supported, then it is stored here.
IP Version	Control whether IPv4 or IPv6 network addressing is used for the first iSCSI target. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IPv4 (default) • IPv6

iSCSI Second Target Parameters Page

This page allows you to enable a connection for the second iSCSI target and configure parameters.

Integrated NIC 1 Port 1: Emulex OneConnect OCm14104-UX-D 4-port 10GbE rNDC CNA - 00:90:FA:30:

Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI Second Target Parameters

Connect ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

IP Address

TCP Port

Boot LUN

iSCSI Name

CHAP ID

CHAP Secret

IP Version ☐ IPv4 ☒ IPv6


 Specifies the iSCSI Qualified Name (IQN) of the Second iSCSI storage target.

Figure F-13 iSCSI Second Target Parameters Page

Table F-12 iSCSI Second Target Parameters Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Connect	Enable connecting to the second iSCSI target. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled Disabled (default)
IP Address	Specify the second target's IP address. The value should be in either IPv4 or IPv6 format and can be 2-39 characters long.
TCP Port	Specify the second target's TCP port number. The valid range is 1-65535.
Boot LUN	Specify the second iSCSI storage target's boot LUN. The valid range is 0-18446744073709551615.
iSCSI Name	Specify the second iSCSI storage target's initiator IQN. The valid range is 0-223 characters.
CHAP ID	Specify the second iSCSI storage target's CHAP ID. The valid range is 0-128 characters in length. If only a single value of the CHAP ID is supported for all targets, then it is stored here.
CHAP Secret	Specify the second iSCSI storage target's CHAP Secret. The valid range is 0 or 12-16 characters in length. If only a single value of the CHAP Secret is supported, then it is stored here.

Table F-12 iSCSI Second Target Parameters Page Menu Options (Continued)

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
IP Version	Control whether IPv4 or IPv6 network addressing is used for the second iSCSI target. Available settings include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> IPv4 (default) IPv6

iSCSI Secondary Device Parameters Page

This page allows you to configure the MAC address for a secondary iSCSI boot adapter.

NIC in Slot 7 Port 1: Emulex OCe14102-UX-D - 00:90:FA:30:43:E4

Main Configuration Page • iSCSI Configuration • iSCSI Secondary Device Parameters

Secondary Device MAC Address

Figure F-14 iSCSI Secondary Device Parameters Page

Table F-13 iSCSI Secondary Device Parameters Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Secondary Device MAC Address	Configure the MAC address for a secondary iSCSI boot adapter in case of boot failure. The MAC address may have a maximum of 17 characters with a colon (:) separator between every two characters.

Device Level Configuration Page

This page displays the global device level parameters and allows you to configure them.

Integrated NIC 1 Port 1: Emulex OneConnect OCm14104-UX-D 4-port 10GbE rNDC CNA - 00:90:FA:30:

Main Configuration Page • Device Level Configuration

Flow Control Setting: TX / RX Flow Control

TX:Send Pause on RX Overflow
RX:Throttle TX on Pause Received
TX / RX Flow Control

Configure type of Flow Control used.

Figure F-15 Device Level Configuration Page

Table F-14 Device Level Configuration Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Flow Control Setting	<p>Configure the type of flow control used by the adapter.</p> <p>Available settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto • TX: Send Pause on RX Overflow • RX: Throttle TX on Pause Received • TX / RX Flow Control

NIC Partitioning Configuration Page

This page displays NIC partition information and allows you to configure their functionality.

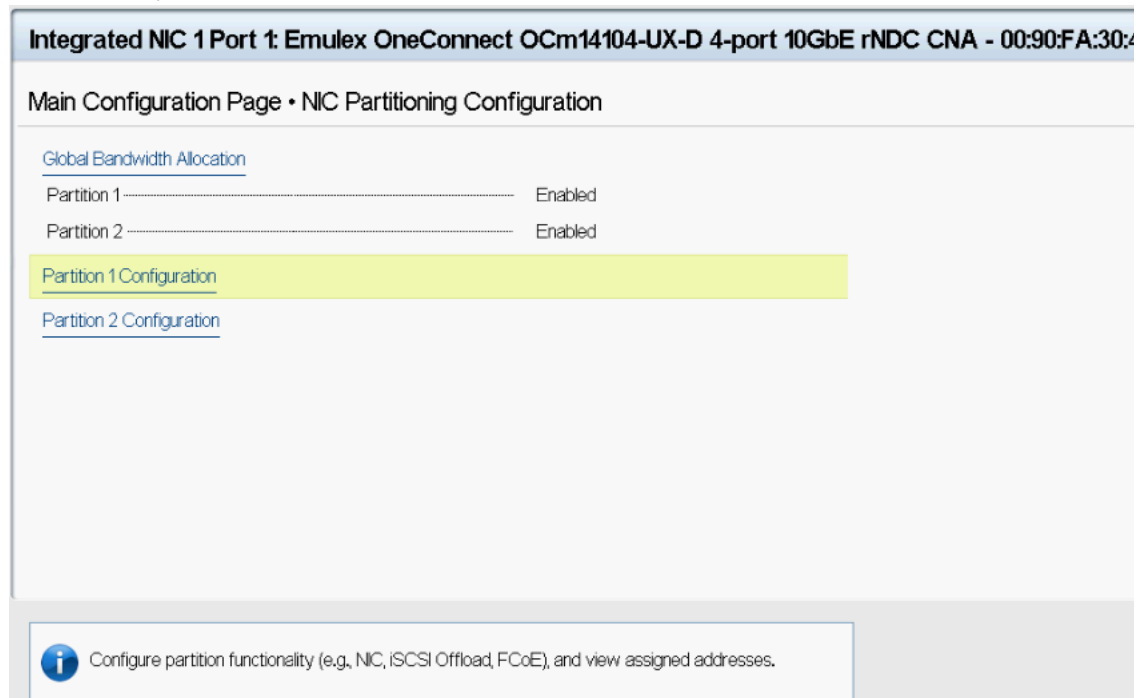


Figure F-16 NIC Partitioning Configuration Page

Table F-15 NIC Partitioning Configuration Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Global Bandwidth Allocation	Assign TX bandwidth allocation across enabled partitions on the port. See "Global Bandwidth Allocation Page" on page 247 for more information.
Partition n	View the current partition state. There is one listing for each partition with "n" representing the number of the partition.
Partition n Configuration	View the partition configuration. There is one listing for each partition with "n" representing the number of the partition. See "Partition Configuration Page" on page 248 for more information.

Global Bandwidth Allocation Page

This page allows you to configure the TX bandwidth allocation across enabled partitions on the port.

Integrated NIC 1 Port 1: Emulex OneConnect OCm14104-UX-D 4-port 10GbE rNDC CNA - 00:90:FA:30:

Main Configuration Page • NIC Partitioning Configuration • Global Bandwidth Allocation

Partition 1 Minimum TX Bandwidth (range 0-100 percent)	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Partition 2 Minimum TX Bandwidth (range 0-100 percent)	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Partition 1 Maximum TX Bandwidth (range 0-100 percent)	<input type="text" value="100"/>
Partition 2 Maximum TX Bandwidth (range 0-100 percent)	<input type="text" value="100"/>


 Minimum Bandwidth represents the minimum transmit bandwidth of the partition as a percentage of the full physical port link speed. The Minimum Bandwidth range is 0-100 percent for each enabled

Figure F-17 Global Bandwidth Allocation Page

Table F-16 Global Bandwidth Allocation Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
Partition n Minimum TX Bandwidth	<p>Set the minimum transmit bandwidth of the partition as a percentage of the full physical port link speed. There is one listing for each partition with “n” representing the number of the partition.</p> <p>The valid range is 0-100 percent for each enabled partition. The minimum bandwidth across all partitions on a port must add up to 100.</p>
Partition n Maximum TX Bandwidth	<p>Set the maximum transmit bandwidth of the partition as a percentage of the full physical port link speed. There is one listing for each partition with “n” representing the number of the partition.</p> <p>The valid range is 0-100 percent for each enabled partition.</p>

Partition Configuration Page

This page displays information for a particular partition and allows you to configure some partition parameters. There is a separate page for each available partition.

Note: There can be only one storage function on each port. Once a storage function is enabled on a partition, the storage protocols are greyed out (that is, not available) on the other partitions.

Integrated NIC 1 Port 1: Emulex OneConnect OCm14104-UX-D 4-port 10GbE rNDC CNA - 00:90:FA:30:48:F5

Main Configuration Page • NIC Partitioning Configuration • Partition 2 Configuration

NIC Mode	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled
iSCSI Offload Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled
FCoE Mode	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled
PCI Device ID	0722
Bus:Device:Function	01:00:04
iSCSI Offload MAC Address	00:90:FA:30:48:F5
Virtual iSCSI Offload MAC Address	00:90:FA:30:48:F5

Figure F-18 Partition Configuration Page

Table F-17 Partition Configuration Page Menu Options

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
NIC Mode	<p>Enable or disable the NIC personality on the partition.</p> <p>Available settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled • Disabled <p>The default setting is “Enabled” on all partitions.</p> <p>Note: The NIC Mode setting cannot be changed on Partition 1 of each port.</p>
iSCSI Offload Mode	<p>Enable or disable the iSCSI offload personality on the partition.</p> <p>Available settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled • Disabled (default)

Table F-17 Partition Configuration Page Menu Options (Continued)

Menu Option	Description and Available Settings
FCoE Mode	<p>Enable or disable the FCoE personality on the partition.</p> <p>Available settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled • Disabled (default)
PCI Device ID	The PCI device ID for the partition.
BusDeviceFunction	The PCIe Bus:Device:Function ID for the partition. This value is assigned by the system BIOS.
iSCSI Offload MAC Address	The permanent MAC address for iSCSI offload assigned at the factory.
Virtual iSCSI Offload MAC Address	<p>Configure the MAC address for iSCSI offload.</p> <p>The setting may have a maximum of 17 characters with a colon (:) separator between every two characters.</p>

Appendix G. Configuring PXE Boot for the NIC Protocol on Dell Systems

This section describes how to use the PXESelect utility to set up a PXE bootable network by configuring your Dell controllers.

For more information on the PXE protocol, the PXE Boot process, and remotely installing with PXE on different operating systems, see chapter 2, “Configuring PXE Boot for the NIC Protocol,” on page 22.

Running the PXESelect Utility

To run the PXESelect utility, start or restart your computer. When prompted, hold down <Ctrl> and press <P>. If you are running the PXESelect utility with multiple controllers, all your controllers are displayed when you start the utility. For example:

```
Press <Ctrl><P> for PXESelect (TM) Utility
```

```
Controller#0 Port#0 Base 0xFCE60000 at Bus:05 Dev:00 Fun:00
Controller#0 Port#1 Base 0xFCEA0000 at Bus:05 Dev:00 Fun:01
Controller#1 Port#0 Base 0xFC920000 at Bus:01 Dev:00 Fun:00
Controller#1 Port#1 Base 0xFC960000 at Bus:01 Dev:00 Fun:01
- Initializing ...Done.
```

The PXE Configuration menu appears after the boot BIOS initializes to begin your PXE configuration.

Note: A UEFI-capable system typically does not display the prompt for running the PXESelect utility unless it is configured for legacy booting. See your system configuration manual for information on performing a legacy boot. All configuration that can be performed in the PXESelect utility can instead be performed in the UEFI configuration utility. See appendix F, “Dell UEFI,” on page 226 for more information.

Navigating the PXESelect Utility

Use the following methods to navigate the PXESelect utility:

- Press the up/down arrows on your keyboard to move through and select menu options or configuration fields. When multiple adapters are listed, use the up/down arrows to scroll to the additional adapters.
- Press <Tab> to move to the next field or to select a row in a configuration screen. Use <Shift> <Tab> to move to the previous field.
- Press <Enter> to accept a selection, select a menu option, or to change a configuration default.
- Press <Esc> to return to the previous menu or page, cancel a selection or dialog box, or exit the utility.

Setting Up a PXE Bootable Network

After the PXE boot BIOS initializes, you can use the PXESelect utility to set up a PXE bootable network by configuring your controllers.

To configure controllers for PXE boot:

1. At the Controller Selection Menu, use the <Tab> key to select the controller you want to configure and press <Enter>.



Figure G-1 Controller Selection Menu

Note: The Controller Selection Menu only appears if there are two or more adapters connected.

The Controller Configuration menu appears.



Figure G-2 Controller Configuration Menu

Depending on the adapter, one or more of the following options will be displayed:

- NPar Support – when NIC partitioning (NPar) is enabled, you can access up to eight virtual network interfaces (all partitions are set to NIC by default. When NPAR is disabled, there is only one NIC function on each port and there are no storage functions.
- For additional information on NPar support, see “Configuring NPar Support” on page 256.

Note: A reboot will occur when you exit the PXESelect utility if the NPar Support mode has changed since the last boot.

2. Once you have set the options in the Controller Configuration menu, select **Save** and press <Enter>.
3. To proceed, select **Continue** and press <Enter>.

The Port Selection Menu appears.

4. Select the port you want to configure and press <Enter>.

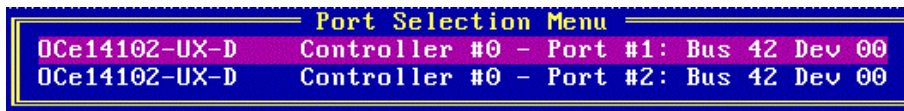


Figure G-3 Port Selection Menu

Note: The Port Selection Menu only appears if there are two or more ports connected.

Depending on your installed adapter and if NPar support is enabled, proceed to the following sections:

- If NPar support is disabled, refer to “Configuring Ports When NPar Support is Disabled” on page 252 for additional configuration information.
- If NPar support is enabled, refer to “Configuring NPar Support” on page 256 for additional configuration information.

Configuring Ports When NPar Support is Disabled

Note: If your adapter has NPar support enabled, refer to “Configuring NPar Support” on page 256.

When NPar support is disabled, the Port Configuration screen appears after you select a port in the Port Selection Menu.

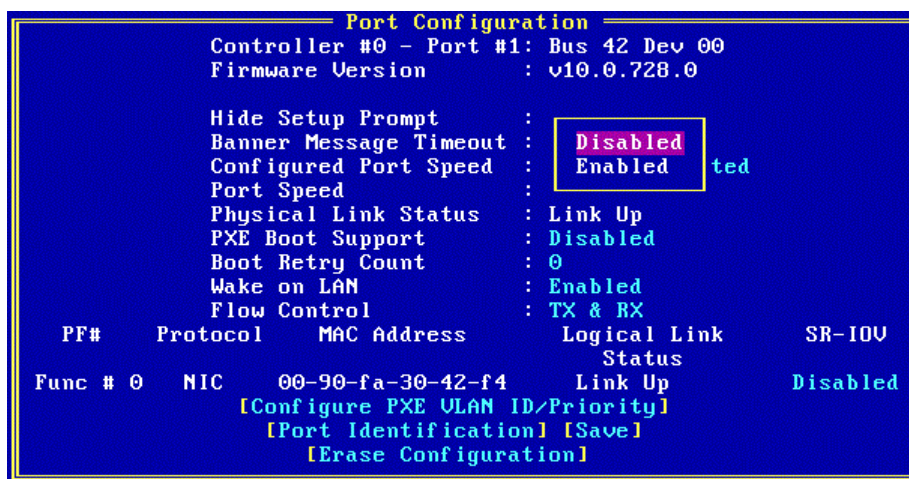


Figure G-4 Port Configuration Screen

The Port Configuration screen enables you to perform the following tasks:

- Configure the Hide Setup prompt
- Configure the banner message timeout
- Set the configured port speed
- Configure PXE boot support
- Configure the boot retry count
- Configure Wake on LAN (WoL)
- Configure flow control
- Configure SR-IOV
- Configure PXE VLAN ID and Priority
- Identify ports
- Erase the port and adapter configuration

Configuring the Hide Setup Prompt

This setting enables or disables the CTRL<P> setup prompt (banner) during power on self test (POST).

To configure the Hide Setup prompt:

1. On the configuration screen, use the <Tab> key to select the Hide Setup Prompt setting and a drop-down menu appears.
2. From the drop-down menu, select **Enabled** or **Disabled** and press <Enter>.
3. Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

Configuring the Banner Message Timeout

This setting controls the number of seconds that the PXE banner message is displayed during POST. The valid range is 0–14.

To configure the banner message timeout:

1. On the configuration screen, use the <Tab> key to select the Banner Message Timeout setting and a prompt appears.
2. Enter the desired amount of time (in seconds) and press <Enter>.
3. Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

Setting the Configured Port Speed

To set the port speed:

1. On the configuration screen, use the <Tab> key to select the Configured Port Speed setting and a drop-down menu appears.
2. From the drop-down menu, select **Auto Negotiated**, **10G**, or **1G** and press <Enter>.
3. Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

Configuring PXE Boot Support

To configure PXE boot support:

1. On the configuration screen, use the <Tab> key to select the PXE Boot Support setting and a drop-down menu appears.
2. From the drop-down menu, select **Enabled** or **Disabled** and press <Enter>.
3. Select **Save** and press <Enter>.

Note: During system startup, PXE contacts the DHCP server for an IP address to boot from the network.

Configuring the Boot Retry Count

This setting specifies the number of boot retry attempts before control is returned to the system BIOS. Valid values include:

- 0 (no retry)
- 1–7

To configure the boot retry count:

1. On the configuration screen, use the **<Tab>** key to select the Boot Retry Count setting and a prompt appears.
2. Enter the desired number of retries and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring Wake on LAN

To configure Wake on LAN:

1. From the configuration screen, use the **<Tab>** key to select the current Wake on LAN setting and a drop-down menu appears.
2. From the drop-down menu, select **Enabled** or **Disabled** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring Flow Control

This setting allows you to configure the type of flow control used by the adapter.

To configure flow control:

1. From the configuration screen, use the **<Tab>** key to select the current Flow Control setting and a drop-down menu appears.
2. From the drop-down menu, select one of the following settings and press **<Enter>**.
 - TX & RX
 - TX (Send Pause on RX Overflow)
 - RX (Throttle TX on Pause Received)
 - Disabled
3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring SR-IOV

If your system BIOS supports SR-IOV, you can enable it. SR-IOV support can only be enabled when NPar support is disabled. For more information on SR-IOV configuration, see the appropriate Emulex driver manual.

1. On the configuration screen, use the **<Tab>** key to select the SR-IOV setting and a drop-down menu appears.
2. From the drop-down menu, select **Enabled** or **Disabled** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

Configuring the PXE VLAN ID and Priority

To configure a PXE VLAN ID and set the priority level:

1. On the configuration screen, select **Configure PXE VLAN ID/Priority** and press **<Enter>**. The Configure PXE VLAN ID/Priority menu is displayed.

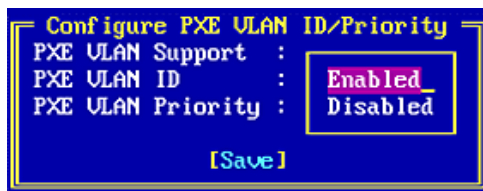


Figure G-5 Configure PXE VLAN ID/Priority Menu

2. Use the **<Tab>** key to select the PXE VLAN Support setting and a drop-down menu appears.
 - c. For PXE VLAN Support, from the drop-down menu, select **Enabled** and press **<Enter>**.
 - d. For the PXE VLAN ID, enter a number from 0-4094 and press **<Enter>**.
 - e. For the PXE VLAN Priority level, enter a number from 0-7 and press **<Enter>**. This unique value assigns a priority to outbound packets containing a specified VLAN ID. Valid values range from 0-7, with 0 the highest priority level.
3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

After you exit the PXESelect utility, the system will reboot for the configuration to take effect.

Physically Identifying the Port

To physically determine which port you are configuring by blinking the link and activity LEDs of that port:

1. On the configuration screen, select **Port Identification** and press **<Enter>**. The Port Identification screen appears.

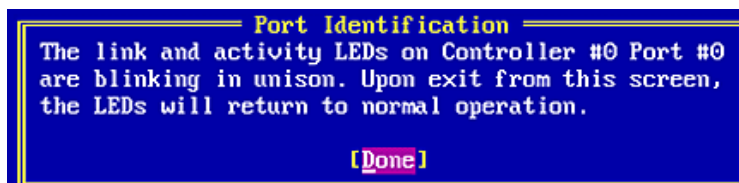


Figure G-6 Port Identification Screen

2. The LEDs on your controller begin blinking. The selected port's LED status indicators blink on your controller until you select **Done** on this screen and press **<Enter>**.

Note: Not all controllers have LEDs that are visible externally. If you are using an add-in card in a blade server environment, the port identification or beaconing capability does not work.

Erasing Ports and Controller Configuration

Note: When selecting this setting, all previous configuration settings are returned to their factory default settings including the current protocol selection. Emulex recommends performing this action to provide a clean environment for new configuration settings to take effect.

To erase the ports and controller configuration:

1. On the configuration screen, select **Erase Configuration** and press **<Enter>**. A warning appears asking if you want to erase the current configuration for all ports of the controller.
2. Press **<Y>** to delete the configuration. You will receive another warning asking you to confirm the permanent removal of the controller configuration.
3. Press **<Y>** to delete the configuration.

To exit the PXESelect utility after erasing the ports and controller configuration:

1. Follow the instructions on the bottom of the individual menu screens until you are prompted to exit.
2. Press **<Y>** to exit. Depending on what settings were changed, a reboot may be necessary.

Note: For older systems, depending on the memory allocation method supported, the PXESelect utility automatically reboots even when there are no changes made to the system.

Configuring NPar Support

Note: NPar support is only available on OCe14000-series adapters.

Note: If NPar support is disabled, refer to “Configuring Ports When NPar Support is Disabled” on page 252.

NPar support provides the ability to configure multiple PCI functions or I/O channels for each physical adapter port.

Note: When NPar support is enabled, you must configure the NPar settings (minimum and maximum bandwidths) for iSCSI and FCoE storage functions in the NIC BIOS before they can be configured further from their respective utilities (iSCSI or FCoE BIOS). Otherwise, the Logical Link for that function will still show as down, and you will not be able to log into targets or find LUNs behind those targets.

Note: NPar is only supported on OneConnect adapters running in 10 Gb mode. The 1 Gb mode does not support NPar.

To view the NPar Configuration screen:

1. From Port Selection Menu (Figure G-3), select the port you want to configure and press **<Enter>**. The NPar Configuration screen appears.

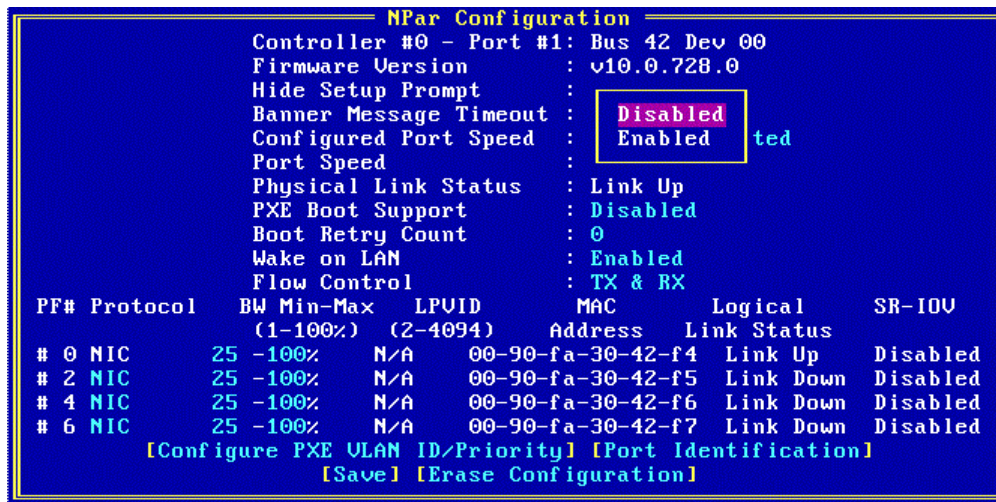


Figure G-7 NPar Configuration Screen

Notes:

- Logical Link Status is displayed as "N/A" for storage functions.
 - LPVID is set to "N/A" for Dell adapters.
 - SR-IOV support can only be enabled if NPar support is disabled.
 - If your system does not support some of the NPar options, those unavailable options show as N/A on the NPar Configuration screen.
2. From the NPar Configuration screen, you can perform the following tasks:
 - Configure the Hide Setup prompt - see "Configuring the Hide Setup Prompt" on page 253 for instructions.
 - Configure the banner message timeout - see "Configuring the Banner Message Timeout" on page 253 for instructions.
 - Set the configured port speed - see "Setting the Configured Port Speed" on page 253 for instructions.
 - Configure PXE boot support - see "Configuring PXE Boot Support" on page 253 for instructions.
 - Configure the boot retry count - see "Configuring the Boot Retry Count" on page 254 for instructions.
 - Configure Wake on LAN (WoL) - see "Configuring Wake on LAN" on page 254 for instructions.
 - Configure flow control - see "Configuring Flow Control" on page 254 for instructions.
 - Select the protocol for each function, except for PF #0 and PF #1.
 - Configure the minimum and maximum bandwidth for each channel

- Configure PXE VLAN ID/Priority – see “Configuring the PXE VLAN ID and Priority” on page 255 for instructions.
- Identify ports – see “Physically Identifying the Port” on page 255 for instructions.
- Erase the port and adapter configuration – see “Erasing Ports and Controller Configuration” on page 256 for instructions.

Note: Your adapter or system may not support all NPar configuration options.

Selecting the Protocol

This option specifies a list of available protocols that can be configured on the adapter. Depending on the protocols for which the adapter is licensed, one of the following selections appears:

- NIC
- iSCSI
- FCoE
- Disabled

The menu only displays the available personalities, including both free and licensed personalities.

The NIC personality implies that all the enabled functions provide NIC/TOE functionality.

iSCSI and FCoE personalities are enabled on one function per adapter port and include NIC functionality on the other enabled functions. There can be only one storage protocol on each port.

The Disabled selection allows you to disable that particular function (0–7).

To select the protocol:

1. From the NPar Configuration menu, use the <Tab> key to select the current protocol and a drop-down menu appears.

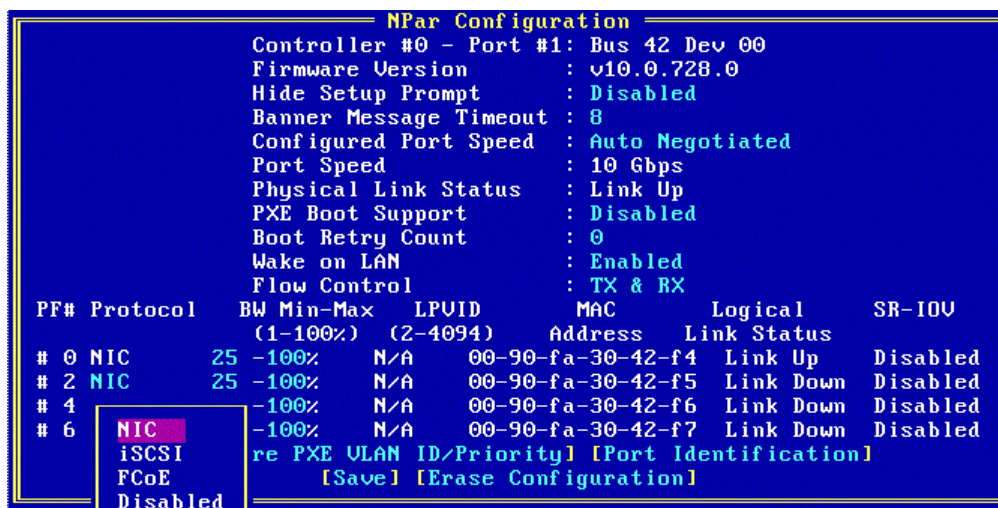


Figure G-8 NPar Configuration Menu – Protocol Selection

2. From the drop-down menu, select **NIC, iSCSI, FCoE, or Disabled** and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

Note: Changing the protocol setting requires a reboot before the change will take effect. A reboot will occur when you exit the PXESelect utility if the protocol selection has changed since the last boot.

Configuring Minimum and Maximum Bandwidth

To configure bandwidth:

1. On the configuration screen, use the **<Tab>** key to select **Minimum Bandwidth** or **Maximum Bandwidth**.
 - The Minimum Bandwidth value is the least amount of bandwidth that the function can provide. It is represented as a percentage. The Minimum Bandwidth value must be less than or equal to the Maximum Bandwidth value. The total of the Minimum Bandwidth values for all enabled functions on that port must be equal to 100.

Note: A Minimum Bandwidth value of 0 is a valid value. When all of the partitions' Minimum Bandwidth values are zero, the bandwidth is distributed equally among the current active partitions. If a specific partition's Minimum Bandwidth value is 0, that partition's logical link will be brought down.

 - The Maximum Bandwidth value is the greatest amount of bandwidth that the function can provide. It is represented as a percentage.
2. Enter the value for the specified option and press **<Enter>**.
3. Select **Save** and press **<Enter>**.

PXE Boot Parameters Default Values

The default settings for the PXE Boot parameters are listed in the following table.

Table G-1 PXE Boot Parameter Default Values

Parameter	Default Value	Valid Values
Hide Setup Prompt	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
Banner Message Timeout	8	0-14
Port Speed	Auto Negotiated	Auto Negotiated 10G 1G
PXE Boot Support	Disabled	Enabled Disabled

Table G-1 PXE Boot Parameter Default Values (Continued)

Parameter	Default Value	Valid Values
Boot Retry Count	0	0 (no retry) 1-7 Retries
Wake on LAN	Enabled	Enabled Disabled
Flow Control	TX & RX	TX & RX TX RX Disabled
SR-IOV	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
VLAN Support	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
VLAN ID	0	1-4094
VLAN Priority	0	0-7
NPar Support	Disabled	Enabled Disabled
Protocol Selection	NIC	NIC FCoE iSCSI Disabled
Minimum Bandwidth	25%	The total bandwidth is distributed evenly across all the enabled partitions.
Maximum Bandwidth	100%	From the minimum bandwidth value up to 100% (inclusive).